



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NEDL TRANSFER



HN 3FX8 D

W. A. B. Hall

PRACTICAL SYSTEM
OF
MODERN GEOGRAPHY;
WITH A
VIEW OF THE PRESENT STATE OF THE
WORLD.

SIMPLIFIED AND ADAPTED TO THE CAPACITY OF YOUTH.
EMBELLISHED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS OF
MANNERS, CUSTOMS, &c.



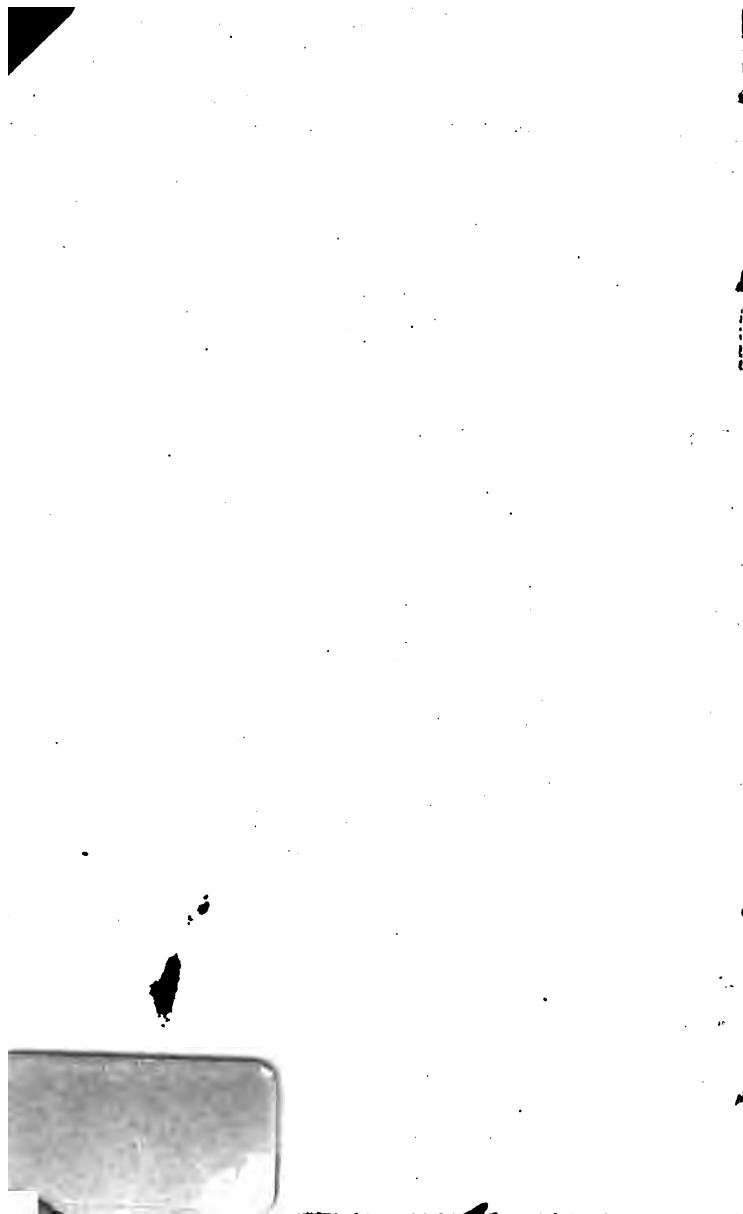
ACCOMPANIED BY A NEW AND IMPROVED ATLAS.

BY J. OLNEY, A. M.

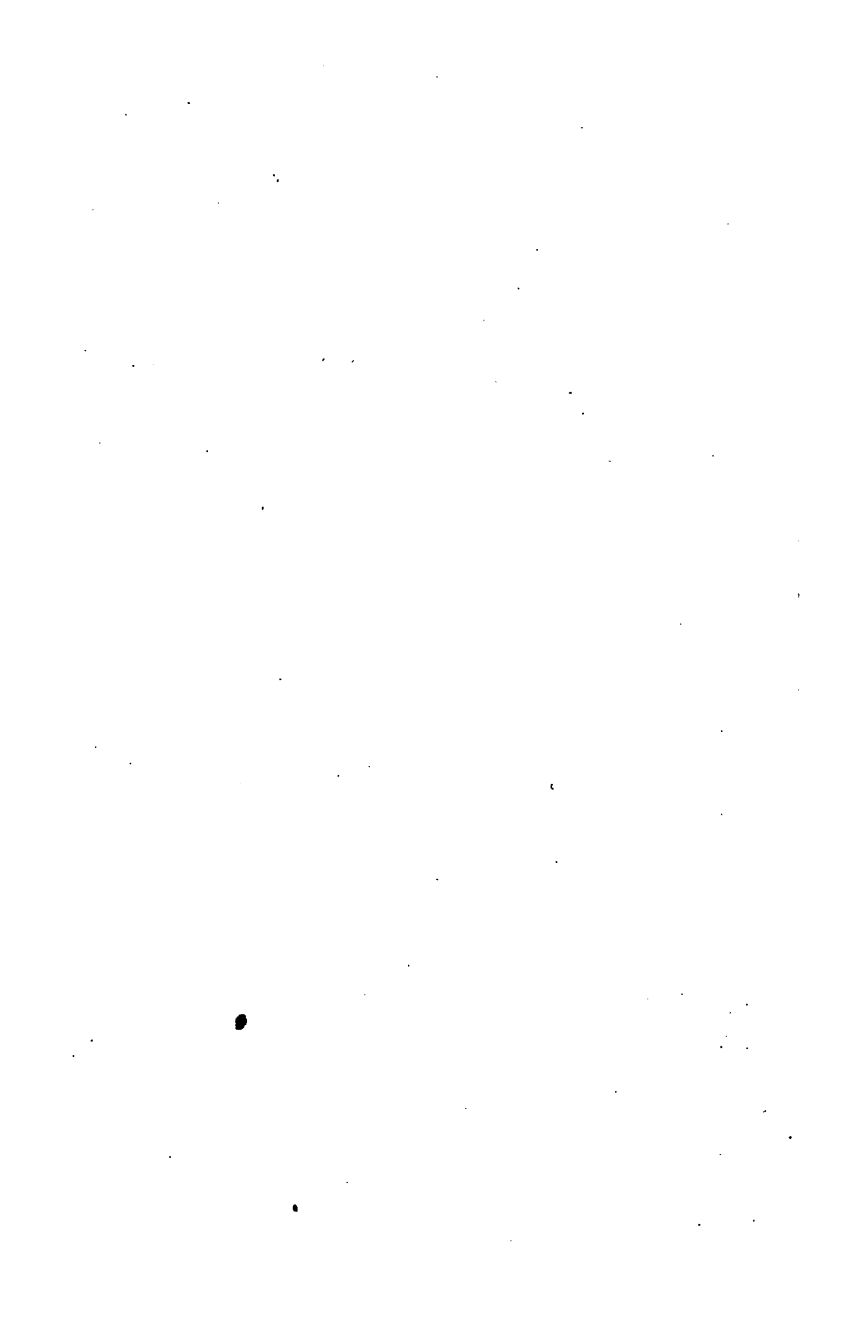
NEW YORK.

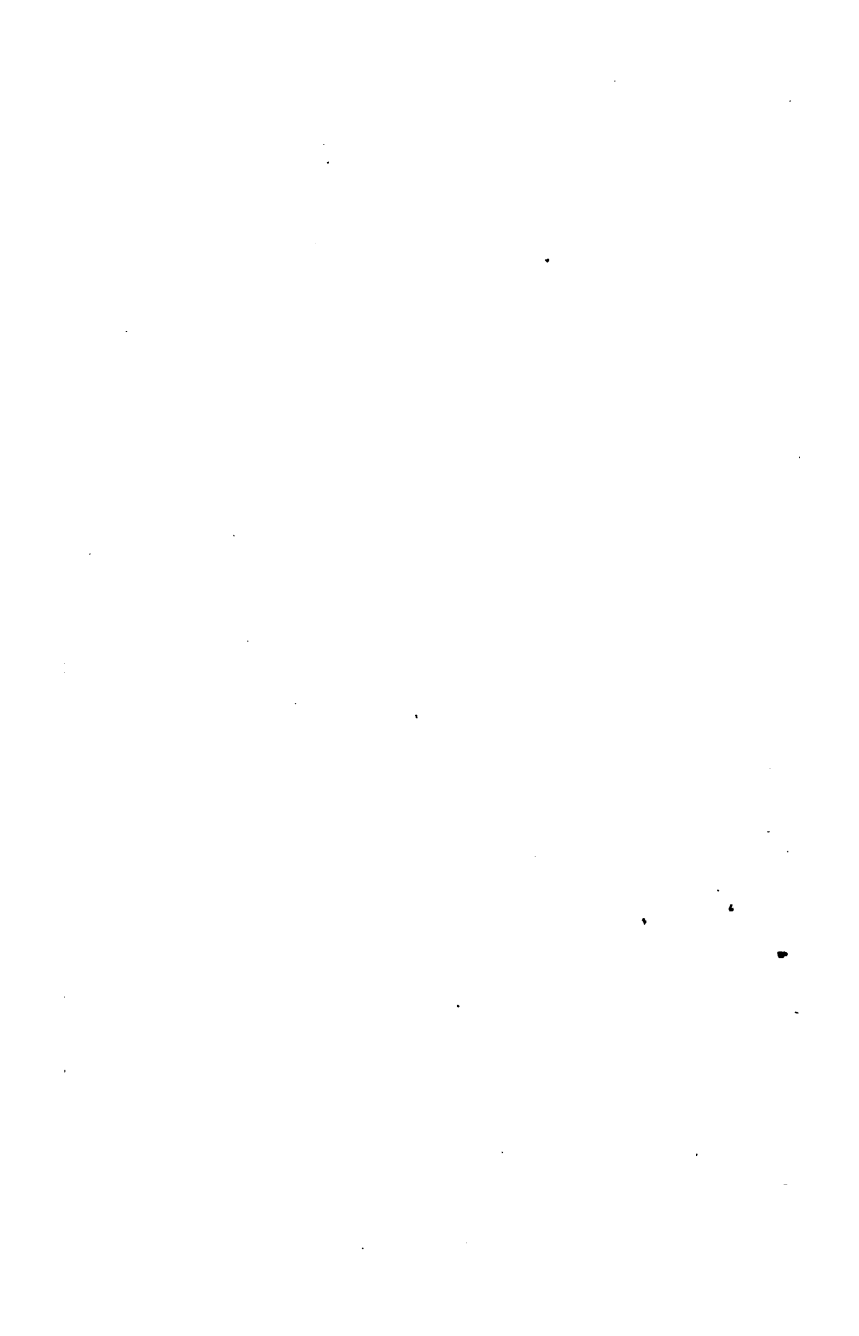
ROBINSON, PRATT & CO., 63 WALL STREET.

Sold by all the principal Booksellers in the United States.



Gift G.S. Wright, Sept. 29, 1924.





European.



Asiatic.



African.



American.

A
PRACTICAL SYSTEM
OF
MODERN GEOGRAPHY;
OR A
VIEW OF THE PRESENT STATE OF THE
WORLD.

SIMPLIFIED AND ADAPTED TO THE CAPACITY OF YOUTH.

CONTAINING NUMEROUS TABLES, EXHIBITING THE
DIVISIONS, SETTLEMENT, POPULATION, EXTENT, LAKES, CANALS,
AND THE VARIOUS
INSTITUTIONS OF THE UNITED STATES AND EUROPE,
THE DIFFERENT FORMS OF GOVERNMENT AND PREVAILING RELIGIONS.

EMBELLISHED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS OF
MANNERS, CUSTOMS, &c.



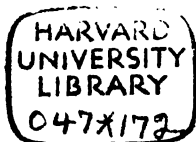
ACCOMPANIED BY A NEW AND IMPROVED ATLAS.

By J. OLNEY, A. M.

Thirty-fifth Edition.

NEW YORK.
ROBINSON, PRATT & CO., 63 WALL STREET.
Sold by all the principal Booksellers in the United States.
1841.

KC 11169



DISTRICT OF CONNECTICUT, SS.

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the sixteenth day of December, in L. S. the fifty-third year of the Independence of the United States of America, D. F. Robinson & Co. of the said District have deposited in this office the title of a Book, the right whereof they claim as Proprietors, in the words following, to wit:

"A practical system of modern Geography, or a view of the present state of the world, simplified and adapted to the capacity of youth; containing numerous tables, exhibiting the divisions, settlement, population, extent, lakes, canals, and the various institutions of the United States and Europe; the different forms of government, the prevailing religions, the latitude and longitude of the principal places on the globe, embellished with numerous engravings of manners, customs, &c. accompanied by a new and improved Atlas. By J. Olney, A. M."

In conformity to the act of Congress of the United States, entitled, "An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned."—And also of the act, entitled, "An act supplementary to an act, entitled An act for the encouragement of learning, by securing the copies of maps, charts, and books, to the authors and proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned, and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of designing, engraving, and etching historical and other prints."

CHARLES A. INGERSOLL,

Clerk of the District of Connecticut.

A true copy of Record, examined and sealed by me

CHARLES A. INGERSOLL,

Clerk of the District of Connecticut.

CASE, TIFFANY & CO.—PRINTERS,
PEARL STREET, HARTFORD.

PREFACE.

THE introduction of Geography into common schools, as a regular branch of education, has of late years become nearly universal. Formerly this science was taught only to the higher classes, it being thought by most teachers that the pupil must be well advanced in other branches before he could study this with advantage. Experience has however taught, that children can learn Geography at a very early age, and hence its introduction into the younger classes at the present time.

But among the books which have been published on this subject, although many of them are works of great merit, there are none suited to the capacities of young beginners. Most of them begin with definitions, which, to be understood, require a degree of knowledge on the subject, never possessed by the new beginner. Children, instead of being made to commit definitions to memory, should, as much as possible; at the beginning, be taught by means of the eye; and hence the use of maps, pictures, and diagrams, in teaching infants. The map is to Geography, what orthography is to the art of reading. The scholar must not only understand its use, but must have an intimate knowledge of all its parts, before he can undertake the study of descriptive geography with advantage. When he has acquired a practical and thorough knowledge of the map of a country, he has then laid the ground work for understanding its description, and not before. Suppose a child should learn by heart every thing about the climate, scenery, and productions of Switzerland, for instance, and suppose him to be intimate with the names of all its mountains, lakes, and forests, how much knowledge of the geography of that country would he possess? It is obvious that without knowing also the relative situation of these mountains, lakes, and forests, in respect to each other, together with their distances and bearings, such knowledge never could be applied to any practical use. The map, then, ought to be the first lesson in geography, for by its means, the child can locate his ideas, and can see, at a single glance, the situation of the places, the names of which he learns.

Having been for a number of years occupied in the instruction of youth, and principally in the science of Geography, I have, in common with others, long regretted that no work well adapted to the instruction of youth on this subject could be obtained, and my excuse for offering the present volume to the public is founded on that fact. A *practical* knowledge of geography, instead of requiring years, I am taught by experience to believe, may be obtained in a few months; and I cannot but hope that others will find this opinion well founded.

In preparing this work, I have endeavored to adapt it to the natural progress of the youthful mind. Instead of introducing the beginner at once into Astronomical Geography, and requiring him to spend weeks in learning definitions, and the description of the heavenly bodies, I have commenced with the town in which he lives. From the town, the sphere of his observation is extended to the county, from the county

to the state, &c. This I am confident will be found not only the natural, but the philosophical method of teaching Geography; for on all subjects the learner must make himself master of simple things, before he can understand those which are complex.

In the present instance, the pupil begins with confidence and alacrity, because he not only knows something about his own town, but the subject itself is highly interesting to him. From these simple descriptions, the pupil is gradually led on, by a series of the plainest and most important questions, to a knowledge of the grand divisions of the globe. When he has become familiar with these divisions, and can without hesitation point them out on the map, he is qualified to commence the *Second part*. In this part, after a few general observations on the divisions, he is required to learn on the map, the boundaries, names of rivers, towns, &c., and then he commences with a description of the several countries which it contains. In every department of description, great care has been taken to select what is most important for the pupil to know, and to commit to memory, and to reject whatever is of little use; for experience has taught me that long descriptions, however judiciously arranged, do not fail to tire and discourage the young pupil. Some of the more prominent features of the country are therefore all that should be required of the beginner.

This work will be found to possess some peculiarities. The use of initial letters, in particular, I consider of much consequence in enabling the pupil to determine the correct answers; so that it is believed in going through the entire work, he will seldom require any assistance from his teacher.

The *Third part* treats of Latitude and Longitude; and perhaps no part of the work is of more importance than this, and particularly as most books of this kind are deficient in this respect.

The *Fourth part* contains an introduction to Astronomy and Physical Geography, together with problems on the Globes, and a Table of Latitude and Longitude of all the principal places on the earth.

The numerous tables which the work contains, it is hoped will be found useful and correct. Some of them have been copied with little variation from Morse and Malte Brun, and others have been arranged with much care and considerable labor, expressly for the work.

In giving this little volume to the public, I cannot but entertain the hope that I shall contribute in some degree to our improved method of teaching a science so necessary and popular as that of Geography. But how far I shall have the satisfaction of seeing this hope realized, the public must determine.

J. OLNEY

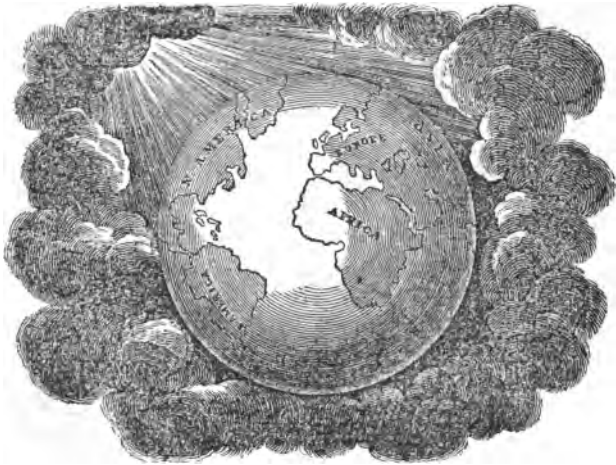
HARTFORD, Dec. 1828.

PART FIRST.

Geographical Definitions

Q. What is Geography ?*

A. A description of the earth's surface.



Q. Of what is the surface of the earth composed ?

A. Of land and water.

Questions.—What does the above picture represent ? **A.** One half of the earth's surface. The dark part represents land ; the white part water. Does this portion of the earth's surface contain more land or water ? From the above picture what should you imagine the shape of the earth to be ? Can you mention any thing that

* The word Geography is derived from two Greek words, viz. *Ge*, the earth ; and *graphs*, to write about, or describe.

resembles the earth in shape? The circumference* of the earth is about twenty-five thousand miles; now if a man should travel one thousand miles in a month, how long would it take him to travel round it? The diameter† of the earth is about eight thousand miles; if it were possible to pass through the centre of it, how long would a man be at the above rate in travelling that distance? Did you ever hear of a person who had sailed round the earth or world? How much of the earth's surface is covered with water? A. About two thirds.

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF LAND.

Q. How is the Land divided?

A. Into Continents, Islands, Peninsulas, Isthmuses,



* Circumference, distance round the outside of a thing.

† Diameter, distance through a thing.



Capes, Promontories, Mountains, Shores or Coasts, &c.

Q. What is a Continent ?

A. It is a vast extent of land not separated by water ; as America.

Can you show me America on the map of the World ? What is the northern part of it called ? What is the southern part called ?

Q. What is an Island ?

A. It is a portion of land surrounded by water ; as Australia,* Borneo, Iceland, Cuba, &c.

Did you ever see an Island ?

Q. What is a Peninsula ?

A. It is a portion of land almost surrounded by water ; as Africa, South America, &c.

Can you show me Africa ? Is it entirely surrounded by water ? What is the narrow neck of land called which connects it with Asia ?

A. Isthmus of Suez.

Q. What is an isthmus ?

A. It is a neck of land which joins a peninsula to a continent, or unites two parts of a continent ; as the Isthmus of Suez, Isthmus of Darien, &c.

Can you tell me where the isthmus of Darien is ? What does it unite ? What body of water is north of the isthmus of Darien ? What body of water is south of it ?

Q. What is a Cape ?

A. It is a point of land extending into the sea ; as Cape Horn, Cape Farewell, Cape of Good Hope, &c.

Can you show me a Cape on the map ?

Q. What is a Promontory ?

A. It is a high point of land extending into the sea ; as the southern part of South America, Hindoostan, &c.

If a mountain extended into the sea, what would you call the end of it ? Why ?

Q. What is a Mountain ?

A. It is a vast elevation of land ; as the Andes, Alps, White Mountains.

* Australia has, until recently, been called New Holland.



When the land rises to a small height, it is called a Hill. Spaces between mountains, or between hills, are called Valleys. Level portions of land are called Plains. Did you ever see a Mountain? Did you ever see a Hill? Can there be a Valley on the top of a Mountain? Why? Can there be a Plain on the side of a Mountain or Hill?

Q. What is a Volcano?

A. It is a mountain that sends forth fire and smoke from its top; as Mount Etna, Vesuvius, Hecla.



The opening on the top of the mountain is called the crater. When fire and smoke burst forth, it is called an eruption. The melted matter which is thrown out of a volcano is called Lava. What would you call a burning mountain?

Q. What is a Shore, or a Coast?

A. It is the edge of land bordering on a sea, lake, or river; as the coast of Guinea, &c.

Did you ever see a Shore or Coast?

Q. What is a Desert?

A. It is a vast sandy plain destitute of vegetation; as the Sahara, or Great Desert, in the northern part of Africa.



Sometimes the word Desert is applied to an uneven tract of country, which has streams of water, and produces a few small trees; but has a soil incapable of being rendered productive by cultivation; as the great American Desert. The Sahara, or Great Desert, contains a few fertile spots and springs of water.

Are Deserts thickly inhabited? Why not? Have they large rivers, trees, &c.?

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF WATER.

Q. How is the water divided?

A. Into Oceans, Seas, Archipelagos,* Gulfs or

* Pronounced Ar-ke-pel-a-goes.

Bays, Lakes, Straits, Channels, Sounds, Rivers, Firths or Friths, Harbors and Roads.

Q. What is an Ocean?

A. It is a vast collection of salt water, not separated by land; as the Atlantic, Pacific, Indian ocean.

Did you ever see the Atlantic ocean? How do people go across an ocean? Can you show me the Atlantic ocean on the map? The Pacific? Indian ocean?

Q. What is a Sea?

A. It is a large collection of salt water, mostly surrounded by land; as the Mediterranean, Black Sea. Which do you think largest, an Ocean or a Sea?

Q. What is an Archipelago?

A. It is a sea filled with islands; as the Grecian Archipelago, east of Greece, Archipelago of Chonos, west of Patagonia.

If a Sea contain two or three islands, would you call it an Archipelago? Why not? If you should find a sea nearly full of Islands, what would you call it?

Q. What is a Gulf, or Bay?

A. A part of the sea extending into the land; as the Gulf of Mexico, Baffin's Bay, &c.

Small bays are called Creeks, Coves, Havens, Harbors, &c. Did you ever see a Bay? Can you show me a Bay or Gulf on the map? Is the water of a Gulf or Bay salt or fresh? Why?

Q. What is a Lake?

A. It is a collection of fresh water surrounded by land; as Lake Superior, Erie, Ontario, Ladoga.

Salt lakes are called Seas, as the Caspian Sea, Aral Sea. Small lakes are called Ponds. Have you ever seen a Lake? Have you ever seen a Pond? How do the waters of the Caspian Sea differ from those of Lake Superior?

Q. What is a Strait?

A. It is a narrow passage of water leading into some sea, gulf, or bay; as the Strait of Gibraltar, Bhering's Strait, Davis' Strait, &c.

Can you show me a Strait on the map?

Q. What is a Channel?

A. It is a passage of water wider than a Strait; as the English Channel, St. George's Channel, &c.

What is the difference between a Strait and a Channel?

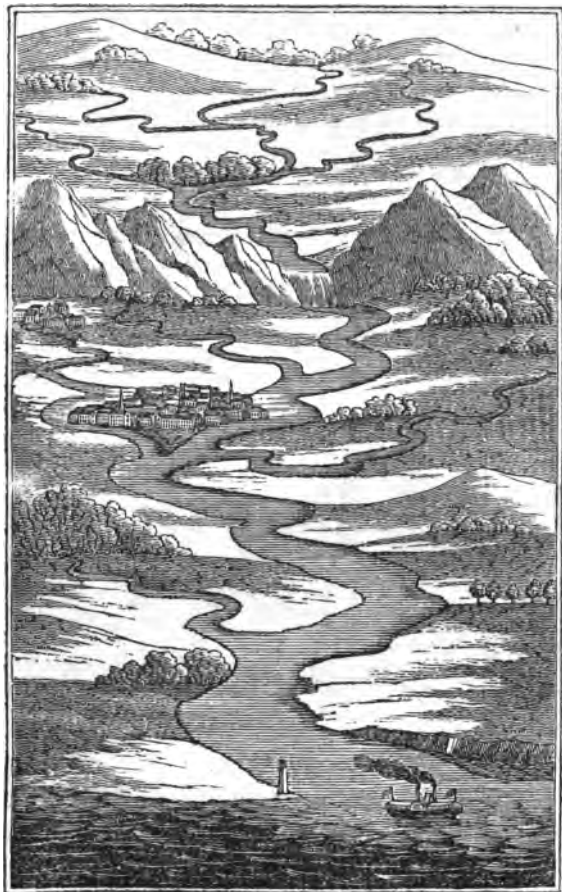
Q. What is a Sound?

A. It is a strait so shallow that its depth may be

measured with a lead and line ; as Long Island Sound, Albemarle Sound, Pamlico Sound.

If Long Island Sound were so deep that its depth could not be measured, or sounded, with a lead and line, what would you call it ? Why ?

Q. What is a River ?



A. It is a large stream of water, formed by numerous branches, flowing from mountains or high land into an ocean, sea, lake, gulf, or bay ; as the Connecticut, Hudson, Volga, &c.

The place where a river *rises*, is called its *source* or *head*; the place where it *empties*, its *mouth*. Small streams are called brooks, rivulets, rills, creeks, &c. Did you ever see a River? Is the water of a River *fresh* or *salt*?

Q. What is a Firth or Frith?

A. It is the widening of a river towards its mouth into an arm of the sea, as the Firth of Forth, Murray Firth in Scotland.

Can you show me a Firth or Frith, on the map of Europe? On the map of the United States?

Q. What is a Harbor or Haven?

A. It is a small part of the sea almost surrounded by land, where ships may lie in safety, as Boston Harbor, New York Harbor, New Haven Harbor, &c.



Are there any Harbors in the middle of the ocean? Why not? What would you call a small Bay, where ships can lie in safety during storms and tempests?

Q. What is a Road?

A. It is a place where ships may lie at anchor, at some distance from the shore ; as Hampton Roads at the mouth of James River in Virginia.



Are our roads *here*, the same as those Roads where ships lie at anchor? Why not? Can you explain to me the difference?

Q. What is a Canal?

A. It is a channel or ditch dug through a part of the country, and filled with water, to afford an easy and cheap conveyance of goods in boats and vessels, from one place to another; as the Grand Western or Erie Canal, Middlesex Canal, Farmington Canal.



Did you ever see a Canal? Is a Canal the same as a river? What is the difference between a Canal and a River?

EXPLANATIONS NECESSARY TO THE USE OF MAPS.

Q. What names are applied to the earth?

A. The Earth, on which we live, is called the Globe, the World, the Sphere, &c.



The earth is round, or of a globular form, as is represented above. This is proved in various ways. 1st. When a ship goes out to sea, we first lose sight of the hull, or the body of the ship; then of the sails, and lower rigging, and lastly, of the upper part of the masts. If the earth were not round, or spherical, the hull, or largest part would be last seen. 2d. In an eclipse of the moon, when the moon's surface is darkened by the shadow of the earth, the boundary of the shadow is always circular or round. 3d. Many navigators have sailed entirely round the earth and arrived at the same port from which they commenced their voyage, by an opposite course. These are convincing proofs that the earth is round.

Q. What is a Hemisphere?

A. It is half a globe.

The word *hemisphere* is formed of two words, viz. *hemi* and *sphere*. *Hemi* means *half*, and *sphere* means a *globe* or *ball*; consequently when applied to the earth it means half of it. As the map of the world represents the whole of the earth's surface, what will one half of this map be called? Why will it be called a hemisphere? Of how many hemispheres does the map of the world consist? Why?

When the earth is divided into two equal parts from pole to pole, these parts are called the **EASTERN** and **WESTERN HEMISPHERES**, as you

will see by looking on the map of the world. If the earth is divided into *two* equal parts from East to West at the Equator, they are called NORTHERN and SOUTHERN HEMISPHERES, as you will perceive by examining the map of the world, exhibiting the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. Will you show me the map of the world? How many Hemispheres are there on it? What is a Hemisphere? Which is the Eastern Hemisphere? Which is the Western Hemisphere? What do both Hemispheres exhibit a view of? Show me the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. Which is the Northern Hemisphere? Which is the Southern Hemisphere? What do *these* Hemispheres exhibit a view of?

Q. What is the Equator or Equinoctial line?

A. It is an imaginary line or circle drawn round the earth, at an equal distance from each pole.

Can you show me the Equator on the map of the world? How much farther is it from the Equator to the North Pole, than to the South Pole? Why?

This *line* or *circle*, is called the *Equator* or *Equinoctial line*, because when the sun is on it, the days and nights are of equal length to all the inhabitants of the earth.

CIRCLES.

Q. What are the Tropics?

A. They are circles drawn parallel* to the Equator, at the distance of twenty-three and a half degrees north and south of it.

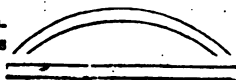
The circle north of the Equator is called the Tropic of Cancer; the one south of the Equator, the Tropic of Capricorn.

Can you show me the Tropic of Cancer on the map of the world? The Tropic of Capricorn? Which of the Tropics is nearest to the Equator? Why?

The word Tropic signifies a return, because when the sun is on either of these lines, it appears to stop, and retrace its steps. The Tropics show the sun's limits north and south of the Equator. On the 21st of March, the sun crosses the equator, and arrives at the Tropic of Cancer on the 21st of June, which is called the Summer Solstice. It then returns gradually towards the equator, which it crosses on the 21st of September, and arrives at the Tropic of Ca-



* Parallel, a line which is equally distant from another line throughout its whole length, thus



pericor on the 21st of December, which is called the Winter Solstice. When the sun crosses the equator on the 21st of March, it is called the *Vernal Equinox*; when it crosses it on the 21st of September, it is called the *Autumnal Equinox*. From the 21st of March to the 21st of September, you will perceive that the sun is north of the equator, and our days are *more* than 12 hours long; and from the 21st of September to the 21st of March, the sun is south of the equator, and our days are *less* than 12 hours long. Is the sun *north* or *south* of the equator *to-day*? Is the sun coming towards us *to-day*, or going from us? Is *to-day* *more*, or less than 12 hours long? Which are the longest *now*, the *days*, or the *nights*?

Q. What are the Polar Circles?

A. They are circles drawn parallel to the tropics, at the distance of twenty-three and a half degrees from the poles.

Can you show me the Arctic Circle on the map of the world? Can you show me the Antarctic Circle? Which of these circles is nearest the equator?

On the 21st of June, when the sun is at the tropic of Cancer, all of that part of the earth north of the Arctic Circle has constant day, and that part south of the Antarctic Circle has constant night. The reverse of this takes place when the sun is at the tropic of Capricorn on the 21st of December.

Do the Equator, Tropics, and Polar Circles extend *north* and *south*, or *east* and *west*? Do you see other lines besides *these*, that extend *east* and *west*? These lines are called PARALLELS OF LATITUDE.

Q. What are Parallels of Latitude?

A. They are *circles* or *lines* that pass round the globe parallel to the Equator.

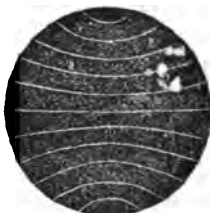
Do you see any lines on the map that extend *north* and *south*? These lines are called Meridians.

Q. What are Meridians?

A. They are circles passing from pole to pole, cutting the equator at right angles.

Meridian is derived from a Latin word, which signifies *mid-day* or *noon*. These lines are called *meridians*, because as the earth turns towards the sun in its *diurnal* or *daily motion*, all places through which the same meridian passes, have *noon* or *mid-*

PARALLELS.



MERIDIANS.



day at the time the sun is over that meridian. Which has the greatest number of meridians drawn on it, the Eastern or Western Hemisphere?

Q. What is the use of the different Lines or Circles on the Map?

A. To point out the situation of places, and show the effect of the earth's motions.

Q. Why are the Parallels and Meridians curved on the Map?

A. To represent circles on the globe, and thus give as true a picture as possible of a round body on a flat surface of paper.

Did you ever see an artificial globe? In what direction do parallels of latitude extend? Meridians?

LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE.

Q. What is Latitude?

A. It is distance from the equator, either *north* or *south*.

Places that are under the equator have *no latitude*. All places *north* of the equator, are in *north latitude*; all places *south* of the equator are in *south latitude*.

Do we live *north*, or *south* of the equator? Are we then in *north*, or *south* latitude? Can you point with your hand towards the equator? Can you show a place on the Map of the World that is in *south* latitude? Why is it in *south* latitude? Do we ever say a place is in *east* latitude or *west* latitude? Why not?

Q. What is Longitude?

A. It is distance from any given meridian, either *east* or *west*.

Most nations reckon the longitude from the metropolis of their own country, or from the national observatory near it. Thus, the French reckon from the meridian of Paris,—the English from the observatory of Greenwich near London. In the United States we sometimes reckon from the meridian of Washington, but generally from that of Greenwich, the same as the English.

Places under the first meridian—marked $^{\circ}$ on the map—have no longitude, it being there that the Longitude begins. The greatest longitude that a place can have is 180 degrees. Places that lie on the right hand side of any given meridian, or from which the longitude is reckoned, are in *east* longitude; those that lie on the left hand side, are in *west* longitude. Or, if the figures on the top and bottom of the map increase from left to right, the longitude is *east*; if from right to left, the longitude is *west*. Point to the meridian that passes through Washington, on the Map of the United States, and

tell me how this is marked on the top of the map. Why is it marked °? A. Because it is the *first* meridian, or the one from which we often reckon our longitude. How is this line or meridian marked on the bottom of the map? Why is it marked 77? A. Because it is 77 degrees west of the meridian of Greenwich from which the English reckon their longitude. Can you show me the meridian of Greenwich, or the one that appears to pass through London? What longitude have places that are on this meridian? Why have they no longitude? In what longitude is Ireland? Why is it in west longitude? In what longitude is Russia? Why is it in east longitude? Do we ever say a place is in North or South longitude? Why not? Is this place in *east* or *west* longitude, reckoning from the meridian of Greenwich? In which is it if we reckon from the meridian of Washington?

Q. How is Latitude and Longitude reckoned?

A. In degrees, minutes, and seconds.

Q. How many miles make a degree?

A. Sixty geographic miles, or sixty-nine and a half English miles.

In geography miles are called minutes. Sixty seconds make one minute, and sixty minutes or miles, make one degree. How many degrees of latitude are there? A. There are 90; because we reckon latitude from the equator to the poles which is one quarter of the distance round the globe, which is 360 degrees in circumference. And as we reckon longitude from one given meridian, both *east* and *west* half way round the globe, there are but 180 degrees of longitude. If you know the number of degrees between any two places, by multiplying them by sixty-nine and a half, you will have the distance in English miles.

How many degrees is it from the Equator to the first parallel of latitude north of it? If it is *ten degrees*, how many English miles is it? How many geographic miles? How many English miles in two degrees? In four degrees?

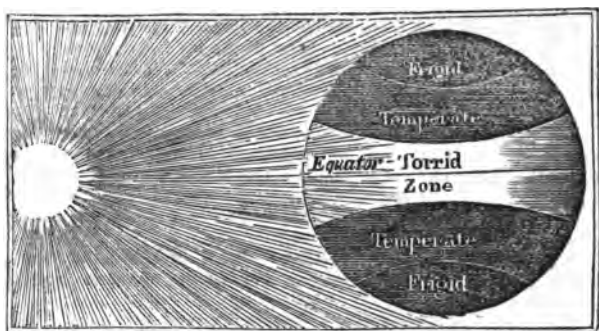
At the equator a *degree of longitude* is as long as a *degree of latitude*; but as you go from the equator, either *north* or *south*, the degrees of longitude become shorter and shorter, till at the poles they terminate at a point, as you will see by examining the map of the world. A *degree of latitude* is as long at the poles as at the equator.

ZONES.

Q. What are Zones?

A. They are divisions of the earth's surface, made by the *tropics* and *polar circles*.

GEOGRAPHICAL DEFINITIONS.



The word *zone* signifies a *belt* or *girdle*; and these divisions are called *zones*, because they encompass the earth like a *girdle*.

Q. How many Zones are there?

A. There are five zones—one *torrid*,—two *temperate*,—and two *frigid* zones.

Q. What part of the earth's surface does the Torrid Zone embrace?

A. That part of it which lies between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.

This zone is called *the torrid*, or *burning zone*, because of the great and continued heat of the sun, which passes over it twice during the year.



In the Torrid Zone there are but *two seasons*, the *wet* and *dry*. During the *wet season*, it rains almost constantly for six months;— and during the other six months, it seldom rains. There is no *spring* or *autumn*. The *dry* season is termed *summer*, and the *wet* season *winter*.

The Torrid Zone is distinguished for its productions, both *animal* and *vegetable*. Among the animals found in the Torrid Zone, the most remarkable are the *elephant*, *rhinoceros*, *lion*, *tiger*, *leopard*, *hyena*, *crocodile*, the *camel*, *zebra*, *antelope*, *lama*, &c. *Serpents* and *insects* of enormous size abound in the Torrid Zone, many kinds of which are extremely venomous.

Among the vegetable productions of the Torrid Zone, the most noted are *tea*, *coffee*, *sugar-cane*, *bread-fruit*, *oranges*, *spices*, *gums*, &c.

The forests are clothed with a perpetual green, and many of the trees grow to a larger size than those of any other part of the globe.

The inhabitants of the Torrid Zone are distinguished for the blackness of their skins, and for their feebleness, both of body and mind.

Can you show me the Torrid Zone on the map of the world? Between what two circles or lines does it lie? Can you tell me how many degrees wide the Torrid Zone is? Do you live in the Torrid Zone? Is the Torrid Zone north of us or south of us? In what zone are the countries that lie between the Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn?

Q. What part of the earth's surface do the Temperate Zones embrace?

A. Those parts which lie between the Tropics and Polar Circles.



The Zone which lies between the Tropic of Cancer and the Arctic circle is called the NORTH TEMPERATE ZONE; and the one lying between the Tropic of Capricorn and the Antarctic circle, the SOUTH TEMPERATE ZONE. These Zones are called *Temperate*, because they are situated between the two extremes of heat and cold, which renders the air temperate and salubrious.

In the Temperate Zones there are four seasons; viz. *Spring, Summer, Autumn and Winter.*

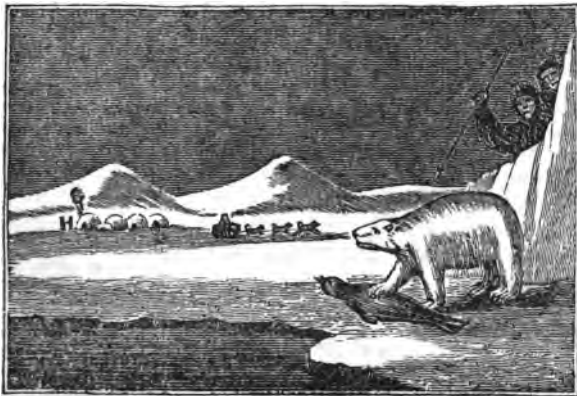
The *vegetable* productions of the Temperate Zones are not so numerous or luxuriant as those of the Torrid Zone; the principal are *grains*, of different kinds, *cotton, apples, pears, peaches, nuts, vines, grasses*, and a great variety of plants.

The *animals* of the Temperate Zones are less numerous and ferocious than those of the Torrid Zone. The most noted among them are *bears, wolves, panthers, foxes, bison, deer, elks, &c.* But they abound with animals which are useful for food or labor, as the *horse, the ox, the cow, the sheep, the mule.*

The inhabitants of the Temperate Zones have fair complexions, and are distinguished for strength, both of body and mind, and for industry, intelligence and enterprise.

Can you point out the Temperate Zones on the map? How many Temperate Zones are there? In what Zone are *we* now? Is the Northern Temperate Zone north or south of the Equator? Between what two circles is the Northern Temperate Zone? In what Zone are all the countries that lie between the Tropic of Cancer and the Arctic Circle?

Q. What part of the earth's surface do the Frigid Zones embrace?



A. Those parts which lie between the polar circles and the poles.

These are called *Frigid*, or *Frozen Zones*, because the cold is so severe, that nearly the whole of these regions is covered with perpetual snow and ice.

In the Frigid Zones there are but two seasons—a long cold winter, and a short summer.

In the Frigid Zones there are no trees, and but few vegetables of any kind, except moss.

The principal animals are the *white bear* and *reindeer*, the *sable*, and the *ermine*.

The inhabitants of these regions are distinguished for their diminutive size, dark complexions, and for their ignorance and imbecility.

Can you show me the Frigid Zones? What is the Zone called that surrounds the North Pole? Which way from us is the North Frigid Zone? Should you like to live in the North Frigid Zone? Why? Do the inhabitants raise corn, wheat, rye, &c. in the North Frigid Zone? Why not?

Questions on the different Zones.—In what Zone do you live? If you were to go to the countries that lie in the Torrid Zone, should you find snow and ice? Which Zone produces the greatest number of animals? Did you ever see an animal that was brought from the Torrid Zone? Did you ever see an animal that was brought from the Frigid Zone? For what are the inhabitants of the Torrid Zone distinguished? For what are the inhabitants of the Temperate Zones distinguished? Of the Frigid Zones? Which Zones produce the greatest number of useful animals? In which zone do you imagine the people are most happy? Why? Which zone do you think produces the greatest abundance of vegetables, suitable for food? Which the greatest number of animals proper for food? Do the people of the torrid zone, probably, eat more vegetable or animal food? How many animals can you mention in the torrid zone, that are proper for food? How many in the temperate zones? In the frigid zones? Do you suppose each zone furnishes such food as is best calculated for the health of its inhabitants?

POINTS OF COMPASS.

Questions.—In what direction from us did the sun rise this morning? In what direction from us did it set last evening? Can you point to the North? To the East? To the South? To the West? What do the initials, or first letters of the words North, East, West, and South spell? NEWS. Can you point to the North-east? South-east? South-west? North-west?

Q. What are these different directions called?

A. Points of compass.

Q. Why are they so called?

A. From the mariner's compass,* an instrument used by seamen to point out their course at sea.

Q. Which are the principal, or cardinal points of the compass?

A. North—East—South—West.

What is represented by the cut? What can you tell me about the mariner's compass? Is the compass used by any except sailors? Did you ever see a compass of any kind? Is there any difference between a compass used by surveyors and that used by sailors?



MAPS.



Q. What is a Map?

A. It is a picture, or representation of a part, or of the whole of the earth's surface.

The top of a Map represents the *north*; the right hand *east*; the bottom *south*; the left hand *west*.

* The Mariner's Compass consists of a circular box, containing a paper card marked with the 32 points of direction fixed on a magnetic needle that always points north and south, except slight variations. The invention of this important instrument is ascribed to Flavius Gioia of Naples, in 1302. We can hardly imagine the in-
 queres

A collection of Maps is called an Atlas. Latitude is expressed on maps by figures on the sides, and longitude by figures on the top and bottom. On the Map of the world, however, the degrees of longitude are found at the equator, and those of latitude round the sides of the map.

Questions.—Is a Map of the world a picture of a part, or of the whole of the earth's surface? Is a Map of the United States a picture of a part or of the whole of the earth's surface? Which part of a Map is North? East? South? West? Point to the North-eastern part of a Map. South-eastern. South-western. North-western. If convenient, how should a scholar always hold his map in studying geography, so that it may correspond to the natural situation of the country it is intended to represent? A. The top of the map should lie to the north. As a map is a picture of that portion of the earth's surface it is intended to represent, what would you call a picture of this school-room?

Political Geography.

Q. What is a village?

A. A small collection of houses.

Is this place a village?

Q. What is a city?

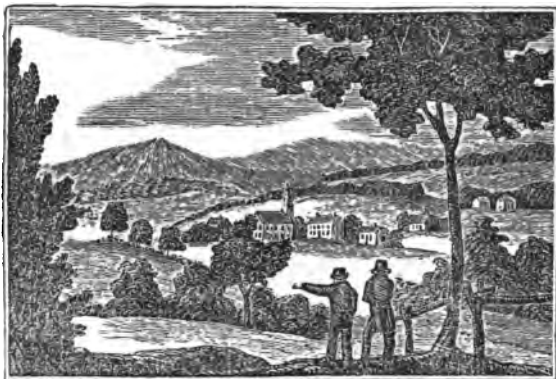


the compass has exerted on navigation. It has enabled the mariner to quit his timid course along the shore, and steer boldly across the unknown deep; has opened to him the dominion of the sea, and put him in possession of the terrestrial globe, by enabling him to visit every part of it.

A. A large collection of houses, usually situated on a river, or near the sea.

Is this place a city? How many cities can you mention?

Q. What is a Town?



A. A tract of land generally several miles in extent, and not so thickly inhabited as a village, or a city.

What is the name of this Town? Can you tell me how many churches there are in this Town? How many school-houses? Is there any large brook or river in this Town? Any high hill or mountain? Any pond or lake? What is the principal employment of the people of this town?

Q. Of what does a County consist?

A. Of several towns.

What is the name of this County? How many Towns can you mention in this county? What is the town called in which the courts for the county are held? **A.** The Shire, or County-town. Which is the shire-town of this county? The Shire-town contains a court house, in which the courts are held, and a jail in which criminals are confined. When there are two towns in a county in which the courts are held, they are called *half-shire* towns. Are the courts in this county held in one town, or in two?

Q. Of what does a State consist?

A. Of several counties united under one government.

What is the name of this State? Of what does the government of a state consist? A. Of a governor, a senate and house of representatives, who are chosen by the people. They assemble usually once or twice a year to make laws, and attend to other business of the state, and when thus assembled they are called the legislature. What is the capital of this state? What is meant by the capital? A. The town or city in which the legislature meets. What is the building called in which they assemble? A. The State House, or capitol.



Can you tell me which is the largest city in this state? Who is the governor of this state? For what length of time does he hold his office? Can you tell me how many counties there are in this state?

Q. Of what do the United States consist?

A. Of several states united under one general government.

Can you tell me how many states there are at the present time that are thus united? What is the capital of the United States? What is the chief ruler of the United States called? Who is the President of the United States at this time? Who is Vice President? By what name are the United States often called? A. The republic of the United States. They are so called because they are under a republican form of government, or a government in which the people choose their own rulers. The divisions that we have noticed above are all found in our own country.* But as we pursue the

* Country, a general term signifying any division, state, kingdom or region, as distinguished from another; as we say the countries of Europe, Asia, Africa, &c.

study, we shall find in distant countries other divisions, as kingdoms, empires, &c.

Q. What is a kingdom?

A. A country ruled by a king.

Can you mention a kingdom?

Q. Of what does an empire consist?

A. Of several countries, ruled by an emperor.

Can you mention an empire?

When we look on a map we see two kinds of divisions marked on its surface. One kind are those formed by the Creator, and consist of land and water, as islands, seas, continents, &c. These are called Natural Divisions. The other kind are those formed by man, and consist of boundaries between nations, states, &c. These are called Political, or Civil Divisions.

Q. What are Political or Civil Divisions?

A. They are portions of the earth's surface which usually contain men of one nation, speaking one language, and subject to the same laws.

Q. Of what then does Political or Civil Geography treat?

A. Of the various governments, institutions, manners, customs, &c. of the different nations of the earth.

Which do you think is the most interesting, Physical Geography, which describes the continents, islands, oceans, seas, rivers, climates, productions, &c. of the earth, or Political Geography, which treats of the various governments and institutions formed by man?

What is Statistical Geography? A. A description of states and kingdoms, with their extent, population and resources. Are Physical, Political and Statistical Geography usually treated of separately, in our systems of geography, or in connection? A. In connection. How many different nations can you mention? Which of these do you think is most happy? What makes a nation happy? If all persons were disposed to do right; or, "do to others as they wish others to do to them," what would be the consequence? Which nation do you think is the most learned? Which the most ignorant? If we could travel among all the different nations, do you suppose we should find much difference in the complexion, dress and manners of the people? Do all nations speak the same language? Are the animals in all countries alike? The trees and other vegetables? Should you like to travel through the different countries of the earth, and see the mountains, rivers, and lakes; the trees, fruits, flowers and grain; the men, the animals and birds, &c.? Can you acquire a knowledge of these without going from home? How?

+ Introductory Lessons.

What is the name of this Town ?
 What Town is north of this ?
 What Town is east of this ?
 What Town is south of this ?
 What Town is west of this ?
 Is this Town level, or hilly ?
 What is the chief occupation of the people ?
 How many churches in this Town ?
 How many public schools ?
 Have you ever been in any City or Town besides this ?

What is the name of this County ?
 How many Towns in this County ?
 Which is the Shire Town ?*
 Is this County level or hilly ?
 What River in this County ?
 What manufacturing establishment in this County ?
 Do vessels sail into this County ?
 Is there any Canal in this County ? Any Rail-Road ?
 Who is the Chief Judge of this County ?
 Who are the Associate Judges of this County ?
 Who is the Sheriff† of this County ?
 Have you ever been in any County besides this ?

What is the name of this State ?
 How many Counties in this State ?
 What bounds this State on the north ?
 What bounds it on the east ?
 What bounds it on the south ?
 What bounds it on the west ?
 What is the capital of this State ?
 Which is the largest town or city in this State ?
 What Canals in this State ?
 Are there any Rail-Roads in this State ?
 What Colleges in this State ?
 Who is the Governor of this State ?
 Who is the Lieutenant Governor of this State ?
 Have you ever been in any State besides this ?

-
- What is the name of this Country ?
 - What is the Capital of the United States ?
 - Who is the President of the United States ?
 - Who is the Vice President of the United States ?

* Shire town, the town or city in which the courts are held ?

† Sheriff, a man appointed in each county to execute the laws.

In which Grand Division of the globe are the United States?
 With what is N. America connected? A. With S. America.
 What do N. and S. America constitute? A. A continent?
 What is a continent?

MAP OF THE WORLD.

How many Continents are there? What are they called?
 How is the Eastern Continent divided?
 How is the Western Continent divided?
 In what part of the Eastern Continent is Europe? N. W.
 What sea separates Europe from Africa? M.
 What sea separates Africa from Asia? E.
 What ocean lies between Asia and America? P.
 What is an Ocean? Did you ever see the Atlantic ocean?
 What ocean separates America from Europe and Africa? A.
 What ocean south of Asia?
 What ocean surrounds the north pole?
 What ocean surrounds the south pole?
 Which is the largest, the Arctic or Antarctic Ocean?
 Is there more land north or south of the Equator?
 Which is the largest, the Eastern or the Western continent? E.

What large Island south-east of Asia? A.*
 Between what two oceans is Australia? I. and P.
 What islands between North and South America?
 A. West India Islands.
 What Islands between Asia and New Holland?
 A. East India islands.
 Does the eastern or western continent extend farther south?
 Which extends farther north?
 Which extends farther south, Europe or Asia? A.
 Does Africa or South America extend farther north? A.
 Which extends farther south, North America or Europe? N.-A.
 What Isthmus connects North and South America?
 What Isthmus connects Africa and Asia? A. Suez.

How many Grand Divisions of the Globe are there?
 What are they called? E. A. A. N.-A. S.-A.
 Which is the largest Division? Asia.
 Which is the second in size? Africa.
 Which is the third? North America.
 Which is the fourth? South America?
 Which is the smallest? Europe.
 In which Grand Division of the Globe are we?
 What Grand Divisions does the Equator cross?
 What Grand Divisions are crossed by the Tropic of Cancer?

* New Holland is now called Australia. The eastern part is named New South Wales, and the western New Holland

What by the Tropic of Capricorn? S.A. A. N.H.
 Through what divisions does the Arctic Circle pass?
 On which side of the Equator does most of South America lie?
 On which side of the Equator does most of Africa lie?
 Is Asia in north or south latitude?
 Why in north latitude?
 Is Africa in north or south latitude?
 Why is it in both north and south latitude?
 In what direction from North America is South America? Europe?
 Africa? Asia? Atlantic ocean?
 In what direction from Africa is Asia? Europe? North America?
 South America? New Holland? Greenland?
 In what direction from us is Europe? Africa? South America?

What ocean lies between North America and Europe? Between Africa and South America?

What ocean between Africa and Australia or New Holland?
 What ocean east of Asia and west of America?

What ocean south of South America, Africa and New Holland?

What ocean north of North America, Europe and Asia?

How many oceans are there?

Which is the largest ocean? Pacific.

Which is the second in size? Atlantic.

Which is the third? Indian. (In'-je-an.)

Which is the fourth? Southern or Antarctic.

Which is the smallest ocean? Northern or Arctic?

How many degrees from the equator to each pole?

How many degrees from one pole to the other?

How many degrees is it round the globe?

How many geographic miles make a degree?

How many English miles make a degree?

MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

In which hemisphere is North America?

Does North America lie in north or south latitude?

Why in north latitude?

What ocean bounds it on the north?

What ocean lies east of it?

What gulf on the south?

What ocean bounds it on the west?

How is North America divided?

In what part is British America? Northern part.

In what part are the United States? Middle.

Where is Mexico? South-western part.

In what part is *Guatemala? Southern part.
Where are the †Russian possessions? N.W.
What division between the U. S. and Mexico? T.

What is the capital of British America? Q.
What is the capital of the United States? W.
What is the capital of Mexico? M.
What is the capital of Guatemala? G.
What is the capital of Texas? A.

In what direction from us is Greenland?
To whom does it belong? A. To Denmark.
What Bay and Straits separate Greenland from North America?
What Gulf south of the United States? N.
What Gulf in the western part of Mexico? C.
What Gulf east of Lower Canada? St. L.
What is a Gulf or Bay?

What Bay west of Greenland?
What Bay in the northern part of British America? H.
What Bay north of Hudson's Bay? R.
What Bay south of Hudson's Bay? J.
What Bay east of Yucatan? H.
What Bay west of Yucatan? C.

What is a Mountain? What Mountains extend from Mexico to the Arctic Ocean? R. In what direction do they run?
What Mountains extend through the eastern part of the United States? A. What is their course?

What is a Cape?
What Cape south of Greenland? F.
What Cape south of Nova Scotia? S.
What Cape west of Cuba? A.
What Cape south of California? St. L.
What Cape east of Bhering's Straits? P.W.
What is the most southern Cape of the United States? S.

What Island east of Greenland? I.
To whom does it belong? A. To Denmark.
What large island east of the gulf of St. Lawrence? N.
What islands between North and South America? W.L.
Which is the largest of these islands? C.
Which is the second in size? H.
Which is the third? J. Which is the fourth? P.R.
What cluster of isles east of the United States? B.

* Gwah-te-mah'-la.

† Roo'-shan.

What is a Lake ? What is a Pond ?

What six Lakes lie between the United States and British America ? w. s. e. c. e. o. Which is the most eastern ? o. Which is the most western ? w.

Which of these Lakes is the smallest ? St. c. Which is the largest ? s.

What large Lake lies N. W. of Lake Superior ? w.

What two Lakes N. W. of Lake Winnipeg ? e. and s.

What Lake in Guatemala ? n.*

What river runs from Lake Ontario into the Gulf of St. Lawrence ?
What is its course ? n.-e.

What two rivers empty into the Arctic Ocean ? m. and c.

What large river empties into the Pacific ? c.

What two into the Gulf of California ? e. and c.

Where does the Mississippi empty ?

What is a Strait ? What is a Channel ?

What Strait leads into Baffin's Bay ? n.

What Strait is the entrance to Hudson's Bay ? e.

What Strait between Newfoundland and Labrador ? e.

What Strait between North America and Asia ? e.

In what direction from us is the Gulf of St. Lawrence ?

In what direction from the Gulf of St. Lawrence is Hudson's Bay ?
Gulf of California ? Baffin's Bay ?

Which way from Hudson's Bay is the Gulf of Mexico ?

In what direction from the Gulf of Mexico is the Caribbean Sea ?

Which way from the Caribbean Sea is the Gulf of California ?

In what direction from the Gulf of California is Baffin's Bay ?

Which way from Baffin's Bay is Bhering's Strait ?

In what direction from Bhering's Strait is the Isthmus of Darien ?

What is an Isthmus ?

What does the Isthmus of Darien connect ?

How many oceans border on North America ?

What three large Gulfs in North America ? m. l. c.

Through what part of North America does the Tropic of Cancer pass ? Through what part the Arctic Circle ?

In what Zones does North America lie ?

In what Zones are the West India Islands ?

In what part of North America do you live ?

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What is the name of this State ? Its capital ?

In what direction is this State longest ?

* Pronounced Nic-ar-aw'-gua.

How many States are there ? Territories ?
 What Division bounds the United States on the north ? **E.-A.**
 What Ocean lies east of the United States ? **A.**
 What Gulf south of the United States ? **M.**
 What Ocean west of the United States Territory ? **P.**

In what direction does the coast of the United States run ? **N.-E.**
 and **S.-W.**

What is a Shore or Coast ? Point it out on the map ?

What six Lakes lie between the United States and Upper Canada ? **W. S. H. C. E. O.**

What seven States and three Territories are bounded south by these Lakes and British America ?

What thirteen States border on the Atlantic Ocean ?

What three States and Territory lie on the Gulf of Mexico ?

What States and Territories lie on the Mississippi river ?

What States lie entirely west of the Mississippi river ?

What State lies on both sides of the Mississippi river ?

How many Territories west of the Mississippi ?

Which is the most western Territory ?

Which is the most north-eastern State ?

Which is the most south-western State ?

What part of the United States Territory extends farthest south ?

What three States border on Lake Erie ?

What State lies on Long Island Sound ?

* In what direction from Connecticut is Maine ? Vermont ? New York ? Rhode Island ? Ohio ?

In what direction from Ohio is New York ? Georgia ? Louisiana ? Illinois ? New Jersey ? Vermont ? Indiana ? Maryland ? Tennessee ?

In what direction from us is the Gulf of Mexico ? Lake Ontario ? Missouri Territory ? Lower Canada ?

What is a Sound ?

What two Sounds east of North Carolina ? **A. and P.**

What Sound south of Connecticut ?

What two harbors east of New Jersey ?

What Bay east of Massachusetts ? **M.**

What Bay between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick ? **P.**

What Bay on the north-western part of Lake Michigan ?

What large river empties into the Gulf of Mexico ? **M.**

* In answering the following questions, let the pupil point out the direction with his hand, as he gives the answer.

† Ill-e-noy.

‡ In-je-an'-na.

Which are the three largest western branches of the Mississippi river? *M. A. R.*

Which is the largest eastern branch of the Mississippi? *O.*

What two rivers unite and form the Ohio? *A. M.*

What two unite and form the *Mobile river? *A. Tombigbee and Alabama.*

What two rivers unite and form the Appalachicola? *A. Chatahooche and Flint.*

What river forms the boundary line between South Carolina and Georgia? *S.*

What river separates Virginia and Kentucky, from Illinois, Indiana and Ohio? *O.*

What river forms the boundary between Maryland and Virginia? *P.*

What between New Jersey and Pennsylvania? *D.*

What river in the eastern part of New York? *H.*

What is the principal branch of the Hudson? *M.*

What is the largest river in the Eastern States? *C.*

What river empties into Green Bay? *F.*

What river forms the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick? *St. C.*

What river forms the boundary between Louisiana and Texas? *S.*

What Cape south of Nova Scotia? *S.*

What three Capes east of Massachusetts? *A. C. M.*

What is the eastern point of Long Island called? *M.*

What Cape east of New Jersey? *A. Sandy Hook.*

What two at the entrance of Delaware Bay? *M. H.*

What two at the entrance of Chesapeake Bay? *C. and M.*

What three east of North Carolina? *H. L. F.*

What two east of Florida? *C. and F.*

What Cape south of Florida? *S.*

What Island south of Connecticut?

To what State does Long Island belong? *A. To New York.*

What is the principal range of Mountains in the United States? *A.*

What is a Mountain?

What seven States are intersected by the parallel of 40° N. latitude?

What State by the parallel of 30° N. latitude?

How many States are longer from east to west, than from north to south?

*Through what States would you pass in travelling in a straight line from Connecticut to Maine?

From Maine to New York?

From New York to Virginia?

From Virginia to Louisiana?

From Louisiana to Ohio?

From Ohio to Georgia?

From Georgia to Louisiana?

From Louisiana to Maine?

Through what States would you pass in travelling on the coast from Louisiana to Maine?

What is the capital of the United States? w.

What is the capital of Maine? a. Of New Hampshire? c. Of Vermont? m. Of Massachusetts? n. Of Rhode Island? r. Of Connecticut? n. and n-n. Of New York? a. Of New Jersey? t. Of Pennsylvania? n. Of Delaware? d. Of Maryland? a. Of Virginia? n. Of North Carolina? n. Of South Carolina? c. Of Georgia? m. Of Alabama? t. Of Louisiana? n-o. Of Mississippi? j. Of Tennessee? n. Of Arkansas? l-n. Of Missouri? j-c. Of Kentucky? r. Of Illinois? s. Of Indiana? i. Of Ohio? c. Of Michigan? d.

Which is the largest State? v.

Which is the smallest State? n-i.

In what Zone are the United States? Why?

The initials of certain rivers in the United States spell HART-FORD; what are their names, and where do they empty?

In what direction from *this place* is South America?

Can we go to South America by land?

Can we go any other way? How?

Which is the shortest route, by land or water?

Would you prefer to go there by land or water?

What Islands shall we pass in sailing from New York to South America? w-i.

MAP OF SOUTH AMERICA.

In what direction from us is South America?

What Sea north of South America?

What Ocean bounds it on the east?

What Strait on the south?

What Ocean bounds it on the west?

In which hemisphere is South America?

* In learning the following questions, the scholar should extend a rule from the centre of one of the given States to the centre of the other.

What Isthmus connects it with North America ? d.
 What is an Isthmus ?
 What are the Divisions of South America ?
 Which is the most northern Division ? n-g.
 Which is the most southern Division ? s.
 Which is the most eastern Division ? e.
 Which is the most western Division ? w.
 What Divisions lie on the Atlantic Ocean ?
 What Divisions lie on the Pacific ?
 What Divisions on the Caribbean Sea ? n-g. and v.
 What name has been given to the interior of South America ? a.
 Which is the largest Division of South America ? b.
 What Division extends from the Atlantic to the Pacific ? f.
 What Desert between Chili and Peru ? a.
 In what Division is the Desert of Atacama ? b.
 Which is the smallest division of South America ?

What is a River ?
 Which is the largest River in South America ? a.
 Which is the second largest ? f.
 What two Rivers unite and form the La Plata ? f. and v.
 Which is the third River in South America ? o.
 What River empties into the Caribbean Sea ? m.

What is an Island ?
 What Island at the mouth of the Amazon ? j.
 What Island south of Patagonia ? t-d-f.
 What Strait separates Terra del Fuego from Patagonia ? m.
 What is a Strait ?
 What Island south of Chili ?* c.
 What Island west of Chili, remarkable for the residence of Alexander Selkirk, or Robinson Crusoe ? j-f.

Which is the most northern Cape of S. America ? v.
 Which is the most eastern Cape ? e.
 Which is the most southern Cape ? s.
 Which is the most western Cape ? w.

If we were on the island of Joannes, in what direction from us would Cape Vela be ? Cape St. Roque ? Cape Horn ? Cape Blanco ? Isthmus of Darien ? Strait of Magellan ? Bolivia ? Colombia ? Patagonia ? Guiana ? Peru ? Chili ? Brazil ?

Through what Divisions does the Equator pass ?
 Through what does the tropic of Capricorn pass ?

* Chee'-le.

† Geo-an'-na.

‡ Bra-zee.

In what Zones is South America ?

What are Zones ? How many are there ?

Through what Divisions does the 70th meridian of west longitude pass ? What are meridians ?

Which is the principal chain of Mountains ?

Which is the highest peak of the Andes ? A. Chimborazo ; it is four miles high above the level of the sea ?

Which is the next highest peak ? A. Cotopaxi ; 3½ miles high. It is a volcano.

What is a Volcano ? What is a Mountain ?

Between what two capes is South America the longest ?

Between what two the widest ? St. R. and B.

What is the Capital of New Grenada ? B. Of Venezuela ? C. Of Guiana ? G. P. C. Of Ecuador ? Q. Of Peru ? L. Of Bolivia ? C. Of Brazil ? R. J. Of Buenos Ayres ? B. Of Paraguay ? A. Of Uruguay ? M. Of Chili ? S. Of Patagonia ?

Why are there no towns in Patagonia ? A. Because it is inhabited by Indians in a savage state ?

To whom does Guiana belong ? A. To the English, Dutch and French. Spanish Guiana is included in Colombia ; and Portuguese Guiana in Brazil.

Can we go from South America to Europe by land ? Why not ? How must we then go ?

What ocean must we cross, and in what direction must we sail in going from South America to Europe ?

MAP OF EUROPE.

In what direction from us is Europe ?

What ocean lies north of Europe ? A.

What Grand Division of the Globe east of Europe ? A.

What sea south of Europe ? M.

What ocean bounds Europe on the west ? A.

In which hemisphere is Europe ?

Is Europe connected with Asia or Africa ?

What sea separates it from Africa ?

What large empire in the eastern part of Europe ? R.

What is an empire ? What is a kingdom ?

What kingdom in the south-western part ? P.

What four Divisions of Europe lie on the Mediterranean ? S. F. I. G.

What five Divisions encompass the Baltic Sea ? G. D. S. R. P.

Which is the largest Division of Europe ? R.

Which is the second largest Division ? A.

Which is the third Division ? T.

Which is the smallest Division ? S.

What Divisions are intersected by the parallel of 40° N. latitude ?

F. S. I. T.

What by the parallel of 50° ? F. B. G. A. R.

What by the parallel of 60° ? N. S. R.

Through what Divisions does the first meridian of longitude pass ?

E. F. S.

Through what the 10° of E. longitude ? N. D. F. G. S. A. I.

Through what Divisions does the 20° of E. longitude pass ? N. S.

F. R. A. T.

The 30° E. longitude ? R.

Which is the largest Island in Europe ? G. R.*

What large Island west of Great Britain ? I.

What large Island west of Norway ? I.

What two large Islands west of Italy ? S. C.

What small Island between Corsica and Italy ? R.

For what is Elba remarkable ? A. For being the place to which Bonaparte was banished in 1814.

What large Island south of Italy ? S.

What small Island south of Sicily, on which St. Paul was shipwrecked ? M.

What Island south of the Archipelago ? C.

What is an Archipelago ?

What large Island in the eastern part of the Mediterranean ? C.

What three Islands near Spain ? I. M. M.

What four clusters of Islands north and west of Scotland ? F. S. O.

W. What is an Island ?

What three Divisions constitute the kingdom of Great Britain ?

A. England, Wales and Scotland.

What does the kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland constitute ?

A. The British Empire.

What Sea east of Great Britain ? N.

What Sea between Great Britain and Ireland ? I.

What Sea between Sweden and Russia ? B.

What Sea in the northern part of Russia ? W.

What three Seas south of Russia ? C. A. B.

What three Seas east of Turkey ? B. M. A.

There are ten Seas in and around Europe ; what are their names ?

C. A. B. M. A. M. I. N. B. W.

What Gulf north of the Baltic ? B.

What two Gulfs east of the Baltic ? F. and R.

What Gulf east of Italy ? V.

* The island comprising England, Wales and Scotland, is called Great-Britain.

What Gulf south-east of Italy ? *r.*

What Gulf south of France ? *l.*

What Bay west of France ? *b.*

What Channel between France and England ? *e.*

What Channel between Wales and Ireland ? *st. g.*

What Channel south of Wales ? *b.*

What Channel between Ireland and Scotland ? *n.*

What Channel between Denmark and Norway ? *s.*

What Channel between Denmark and Sweden ? *c.*

What Strait between England and France ? *d.*

What Strait at the entrance of the Mediterranean ? *g.*

What Strait between Corsica and Sardinia ? *b.*

What Strait between Sicily and Italy ? *m.*

What Strait at the entrance of the Gulf of Venice ? *o.*

What Mountains between Norway and Sweden ? *d.*

What Mountains between France and Spain ? *p.*

What Mountains in Switzerland ? *A. The Alps.*

Which is the highest peak of the Alps ? *A. Mont Blanc, the highest mountain in Europe.*

What Mountains in Italy ? *a.*

What Mountains in Austria ? *c.*

What Mountains in Turkey ? *n.*

What Mountains between Russia and Asia ? *v.*

What Mountain in Sicily ? *e.*

What Mountain near Naples ? *v.*

What Mountain in Iceland ? *n.*

What is a Cape ? What is a Promontory ?

What Cape north of Norway ? *n.*

What Cape south-west of Norway ? *n.*

What Cape south-west of England ? *l-e.*

What Cape South of Ireland ? *c.*

What Cape north of France ? *C. La Hogue.*

What Cape north-west of Spain ? *o.*

What Cape west of Spain ? *p.*

What Cape south-west of Portugal ? *st. v.*

What Cape south of Italy ? *s.*

What Cape south of Greece ? *m.*

What large River rises in Russia, and empties into the Caspian Sea ? *v.*

What River empties into the sea of Azof ? *d.*

What river rises in Germany and empties into the Black Sea ? *d.*

What two Rivers rise in Switzerland ? *r.* and *r.*
 What two Rivers empty into the Bay of Biscay ? *e.* and *L.*
 What River empties into the English Channel ? *s.*
 What five Rivers rise in Spain and empty into the Atlantic ? *e.* *e.*

T. D. M.

Which is the principal River in England ? *r.*
 Which is the largest River in Ireland ? *s.*
 Which is the principal River in Norway ? *e.*
 What is a River ? What is a Lake ?

What two Lakes in Russia ? *o. L.*
 What three Lakes in Sweden ? *w. w.* and *Ma-la'r.*
 What two Lakes in Switzerland ? *A. Constance* and *Geneva.*

What is the Capital of England ? *L.* Of Portugal ? *L.* Of Spain ?
m. Of France ? *r.* Of Holland ? *A.* Of Belgium ? *B.* At what
 place in Germany does the Federative Diet hold its sessions ? *A.* At
 Frankfort-on-the-Maine. What is the Capital of Denmark ? *C.* Of
 Switzerland ? *B.* Of Italy ? *R.* Of Austria ? *V.* Of Turkey ? *C.*
 Of Greece ? *A.* Of Prussia ? *B.* Of Russia ? *St. r.* Of Sweden ?
S. Of Norway ? *B.*

In what direction from us is England ? In what direction from
 England is Norway ? Prussia ? Italy ? Spain ? Ireland ? Rus-
 sia ? Portugal ? In what direction are we from Portugal ?
 Does Europe lie in north or south latitude ? Why ?
 In what Zones is Europe ? What are Zones ?
 In what direction from Europe is Asia ?

~~MAP~~ MAP OF ASIA.

In what direction from us is Asia ?
 What Ocean lies north of Asia ? *A.*
 What Ocean bounds it on the east ? *P.*
 What Ocean on the south ? *I.*
 What Grand Division west of Asia ? *E.*
 In which hemisphere is Asia ?

What Isthmus connects Africa and Asia ? *S.*
 What Division embraces the northern part ? *S.*
 What extensive Empire south of Siberia ? *C.*
 What two Divisions south of the Chinese Empire ? *E.* and *P. I.*
 What Division in the south-western part of Asia ? *A.*
 What Division north of Arabia ? *T.*
 What Division east of Turkey ? *P.*
 What two Divisions east of Persia ? *A.* and *B.*
 What Division north of Afghanistan ? *I-T.*
 What Division between the Caspian and Black seas ?

What Sea between Asia and Africa ? *z*.
 What Sea between Arabia and Hindoostan ? *a*.
 What Sea or Bay between Hindoostan and Farther India ? *z*.
 What Sea east of Farther India ? *c*.
 What Sea east of China ? *b*.
 What Sea between China and Corea ? *y*.
 What Sea between Corea and Nippon ? *c*.
 What Sea in the eastern part of Siberia ? *o*.
 What Sea east of Kamtchatka ? *x*.
 What Sea in the northern part of Siberia ? *o*.
 What Sea between Nova Zembla and Siberia ? *x*.
 What Sea west of Independent Tartary ? *c*.
 What Sea in Independent Tartary ? *a*.

What Gulf between Arabia and Persia ? *p*.
 What Gulf between Malacca and Cambodia ? *s*.
 What Gulf east of Tonquin ? *t*.
 What Gulf in the northern part of Australia ?

[*See Map of the World.*]

What Gulf between Cey-lon' and Hindoostan ? *A*. Gulf of Ma-
 naar'.
 What Gulf at the northern extremity of the Red Sea ? *A*. Gulf
 of Suez.

What Mountains between Siberia and the Chinese Empire ?
 What Mountains between the Chinese Empire and Hindoostan.
 Which is the highest peak of the Himmaleh Mountains ? *A*. Da-
 wal-a-ge'ri. It is five miles high above the level of the sea ; being
 the highest mountain on the globe.
 What chain unites the Altay and Himmaleh Mountains ? *b-t*.
 What Mountains in the southern part of Hindoostan ? *a*.
 What Mountains in the western part of Turkey ? *t*.
 What Mountains in the northern part of Arabia ? *z*.
 What Mountains separate Siberia from Russia in Europe ? *v*.
 What is a Mountain ?

What is a Peninsula ?
 What Peninsula in the southern part of Farther India ? *x*.
 What Peninsula between the Yellow Sea and the Sea of Corea ? *c*.
 What Peninsula between the Sea of Okhotsk and the Sea of Kamt-
 chatka ? *x*.

What Cape north of Siberia ? *t*.
 What Cape south of Kamtchatka ? *l*.
 What Cape south of Malacca ? *z*.
 What Cape south of Hindoostan ? *c*.

What is a Strait? What is a Channel?

What Strait between Asia and North America? *z.*

What Strait between Malacca and Sumatra? *x.*

What Strait between Sumatra and Java? *a.*

[See the Map of the World.]

What Strait between Borneo and Celebes? *x.*

What Strait between New Holland and New Guinea? *r.*

[See the Map of the World.]

What Strait between the Persian Gulf and the Gulf of Ormus?

A. The Strait of Ormus?

What Strait is the entrance to the Red Sea? *z.*

What two Rivers unite and empty into the Persian Gulf? *x.* and *r.*

What large River rises in the Chinese Empire and empties into the Sea of Arabia? *i.*

What two Rivers unite and empty into the Bay of Bengal? *e.* *z.*

What River empties into the China Sea? *c.*

What River passes through the middle of China and empties into the Pacific? *x.*

What River empties into the Yellow Sea? *h-h.*

What River empties into the channel of Tartary? *a.*

What River empties into the Sea of Anadir? *a.*

What three Rivers empty into the Arctic Ocean? *L.* *o.* *r.*

What River empties into the Sea of Obi? *o.*

What River from Europe empties into the Caspian Sea?

What is an Island?

What Island south of Hindoostan? *c.*

What Island south of Malacca? *s.*

What Island south-east of Sumatra? *j.*

[See Map of the World.]

What large Island east of Malacca? *z.*

What large Island east of Borneo? *c.*

What large Island south-east of Asia? *a.*

[See Map of the World.]

What Island south of Australia? *v.* *D.* *L.*

What large Island north of Australia? *N-G.*

What cluster of Islands east of Farther India? *r.*

What Island in the Gulf of Tonquin? *h.*

What large Island east of Corea? *n.*

What two Islands east of the channel of Tartary? *J.* *a.*

What Island north-west of Siberia? *N-X.*

What Oceans border on Asia? *A.* *P.* *I.*

What seven Seas east of Asia? *A.* *X.* *O.* *C.* *Y.* *E.* *C.*

What Division between the Caspian and Black seas?

What is the Capital of Turkey ? c. Of Arabia ? m. Of Persia ? t. Of Afghanistan ? c. Of Beloochistan ? k. Of Hindoostan ? c. Of the Birman Empire ? u. Of the Chinese Empire ? r. Of Independent Tartary ? b. Of Siberia ? A. Tobolsk.

Where is the Empire of Japan ? A. In the east of Asia ; including the islands of Nippon, Kiusiu, Ximo and Sikoke, besides several smaller ones. Its capital is Jedo.

What three Islands does the Equator cross ? s. b. c.

Through what Divisions does the Tropic of Cancer pass ? A. E. F-I. c.

Through what Division the Arctic Circle ? s.

What Divisions are intersected by the parallel of 10° N. latitude ?

H. F-I.

What by the parallel of 20° ? A. H. F-I.

What by the parallel of 30° ? A. P. B. A. E. C-E.

What by the parallel of 40° ? T. C. I-T. C-E.

Through what Divisions does the 80th meridian of east longitude pass ? s. c-E. H.

In what Zones does Asia lie ?

At what place is Asia connected with Africa ? s.

What is an Isthmus ?

In what direction from Asia is Africa ?

If you travel out of Asia into Africa, what is the first Division you will enter ? z.

MAP OF AFRICA.

In what direction from us is Africa ?

What Sea lies north of Africa ? m.

What Sea and Ocean east of Africa ? z. and i.

What Ocean bounds it on the west ? A.

On which side of the Equator does most of Africa lie ?

With which of the other Grand Divisions is Africa connected ?

In which hemisphere is Africa ?

What States in the northern part ? z-s.

What are their names ? M. A. T. T. B.

Which is the most western of the Barbary States ? m.

What does Morocco include ? A. The former kingdoms of Tafi-let and Fez.

Which is the most eastern of the Barbary States ? z.

What Division in the north-eastern part of Africa ? z.

What Division south of Egypt ? n.

What Division south-west of Nubia ? d.

What Division east of Darfur ? A.

What extensive Desert south of the Barbary States ? s.

What large Division south east of the Desert ? s. or n.

What Division west of Nigritia ? s

What two small Divisions south of Senegambia ? s. L. and L.

What name has been given to the coast between Senegambia and the Equator ? c.

What names have been given to the coast between the Equator and the Tropic of Capricorn ? L. C. A. E. C.

What name has been given to the southern part of Africa ? s. a.

What Colony in the southern part of South Africa ? c.

What small Division in the eastern part of South Africa ? c.

What is the interior of the southern part of Africa called ? E.

What do we know respecting Ethiopia ? A. Nothing except its name, as it has never been explored by any except those who inhabit it.

What names have been given to the coast between South Africa and Abyssinia ? M. E. A.

What Division in the eastern part of the Desert ? F.

Which is the most northern Cape ? E.

Which is the most eastern Cape ? G.

Which is the most southern Cape ? G. E.

Which is the most western Cape ? V.

What is a Cape ? What is an Island ?

Which is the most northern group of the African Islands ? A.

In what direction from Morocco are the Azores ?

What Islands west of Morocco ? M.

What cluster of Islands south-west of Morocco ? C.

What Islands west of Senegambia ? C. V.

What Island west of Cimbébas ? St. H.

For what is St. Helena distinguished ?

A. For being the place to which Napoleon Bonaparte was banished in 1815. He was detained on this island a prisoner of war, till his death, May 5, 1821. In August, 1840, the French government sent a ship, the Belle Poule, to St. Helena, for the purpose of bringing the remains of Napoleon to France. It arrived there October 8th. On the 15th, his tomb was opened, and his body conveyed on board the ship; and on the 19th of October, 1840, the Belle Poule sailed for France, where she arrived early in December, and on the 15th of the same month his body was deposited in the church of the Hospital of Invalids in Paris, with all the honors due to the greatest warrior of modern times.

In what direction from France is St. Helena ?

In what direction from us is St. Helena ?

What large Island south-east of Africa ? M.

What Islands in the northern part of the Channel of Mozambique ?

c. What is a Channel ?

What two Islands east of Madagascar ? F. E.

What Island near Cape Guardafui ? S.

What Isthmus unites Africa and Asia ? S.

How wide is the Isthmus of Suez ? A. 60 miles.

What Strait at the entrance of the Red Sea ? E.

What Strait at the entrance of the Mediterranean ?

How wide are each of these Straits ? A. They are in the narrowest part about 15 miles wide.

What Channel between Madagascar and Mozambique ? M.

What Gulf east of Tunis ? C.

What Gulf north of Tripoli ? S.

What Gulf at the northern extremity of the Red Sea ? A. The Gulf of Suez.

What Gulf south of Guinea ? G.

What Bay near the Cape of Good Hope ? T.B.

What River rises in the Mountains of the Moon and runs north through Abyssinia, Nubia and Egypt into the Mediterranean ? N.

What large River in Nigritia ? N.

Where does the Niger empty ?

What three Rivers in Senegambia ? S. G. G.

What River separates Senegambia from Guinea ? M.

What River separates Loango from Congo ? Z.

What River in South Africa runs west into the Atlantic ? O.

What River empties into the channel of Mozambique ? Z.

What Mountains in the Barbary States ? A.

What Mountains extend through the middle of Africa ? M.

What Mountains north of Guinea ? K.

What is the Capital of Egypt ? C.

What is the Capital of Barca ? D.

What is the Capital of Tripoli ? T.

Of Tunis ? T. Of Algiers ? A. Of Morocco ? M.

What is the principal Town in the Cape Colony ? C.Z.

What is the Capital of Congo ? St. S.

What is the Capital of Abyssinia ? A.

In what direction from us is Tripoli ?

In what direction from Tripoli is the Cape Colony ? Abyssinia ? Senegambia ? Egypt ? Morocco ? Nubia ? G. of Guinea ? Fezzan ?

Through what Divisions of Africa does the Equator pass ?

Through what the Tropic of Cancer ?

Through what the Tropic of Capricorn ?

In what Zones does Africa lie ?

Suppose you were at the Cape of Good Hope to-day at 12 o'clock, would the sun be north or south of you ? Why ?

Between what two Capes is Africa the longest ? Between what two Capes the widest ?

How long is the Sahara or Great Desert ?

How long is the Mediterranean Sea ? How long is the Red Sea ?

In what direction from Africa is this place ?

PART SECOND.

AMERICA.

WESTERN	EASTERN
<i>15 Millions Sq. M.</i>	<i>30 Million Square Miles</i>
CONTINENT	CONTINENT
<i>N. America 8 M.</i>	<i>Europe 3 1/2 M. Sq. Miles</i>
<i>S. America 7 M.</i>	<i>Asia 16 M. Sq. Miles</i>
	<i>Africa 10 1/2 M. Sq. Miles</i>

Comparative view of the two Continents.

America is less in size than the eastern continent, but surpasses it in the number and magnitude of its rivers, its numerous lakes, and its lofty and extended ranges of mountains.

It is 9000 miles in length, and on an average 1,500 miles in width, containing 15 millions square miles.

It is distinguished for the variety of its climate, its valuable productions, and for the freedom of its civil and religious institutions.

The climate is generally colder than that of the eastern continent. It is calculated that the heat is 10 degrees less than in the same parallels in the eastern hemisphere.

It abounds in almost all the animal, vegetable and mineral productions. It contains a great variety of wild animals, and in comparing those of the same species in the two continents, it has been found, in a majority of instances, where a difference in size has been ascertained that the American animal is larger than that of the eastern continent.*

The birds are exceedingly numerous, and are said to be more beautiful in their plumage than those of Asia and Africa, but in their notes less melodious. The Condor of South America, in size, strength and rapacity, surpasses all others of the feathered creation.

* American Encyclopedia.

It abounds in gold and silver mines, and produces an abundance of iron, copper, quicksilver, antimony, sulphur, nitre, lead, loadstone, and marbles of every sort. It has various kinds of precious stones, as diamonds, rubies, emeralds, amethysts, alabaster, &c.

It produces every kind of grain, fruit, pulse, herbs, plants and flowers, native to Europe, besides a great variety of others—as cinnamon, pepper, sarsaparilla, cocoa, scarlet dye, mahogany, logwood, Brazil wood, sassafras, &c. &c.

The population of America is usually estimated at 40 millions; consisting of three classes, viz —Whites, Negroes and Indians.



The Whites are the descendants of Europeans who have settled in America since its discovery. The Negroes are the descendants of Africans who have been brought from their native country. The Indians are the descendants of those who occupied the country at the time of its discovery, and are generally savages.

HISTORY.—America is often called *the new world*, because it is but a little more than three centuries since it was first made known to the people of the eastern continent. The honor of this important event belongs to Christopher Columbus, who discovered it in 1492.*

* Columbus was born in 1435, in the city of Genoa, at that time a republic in the north-western part of Italy. Great exertions were made by the maritime powers of Europe at that time to find a passage by sea to the East Indies. The Portuguese had made several attempts to accomplish this, by sailing down the western coast of Africa. But Columbus, from long and close application to the study of geography, became persuaded that the shortest and most direct route to India would be found by sailing in a westerly direction. For he imagined that the eastern coast of Asia and the western shore of Europe were separated by an



Discovery of America by Columbus, in 1492.

The discovery of America excited a spirit of enterprise throughout the civilized world, unknown and unfelt at any time before, and drew adventurers from all parts of Europe. In 1497, John Cabot, and his son Sebastian, natives of Venice, in the service of Henry VII. king of England, discovered North America, and explored the coast from Newfoundland to Florida.

In 1499, Americus Vespucius, a native of Florence, discovered the continent at Paria, near the mouth of the Orinoco. On his return to Europe, he published an account of his voyage, and acquired the *undeserved honor* of giving his name to this continent. In a short time the whole continent was discovered, and settlements made in various parts of it, by different nations of Europe. South America and the southern part of North America, were peopled by colonies from Spain and Portugal; the eastern part of North America by colonies from England, France and Holland. America, at the time of its discovery, was inhabited by a rude, barbarous and warlike people, whom Columbus and his followers named Indians. They considered the Spaniards as a superior race of beings, and treated them with all the kind-

ness of moderate extent. To determine this point, he resolved on a voyage of discovery. He applied to the government of Genoa for assistance, but without success; he also applied to the government of Portugal, but his applications were here rejected; he next applied to Ferdinand and Isabella, the sovereigns of Castile and Arragon, who furnished him with three small vessels and 90 men. He sailed from Palos in Spain, the 3d of August, 1492, and discovered San Salvador, the most easterly of the Bahama Isles, Oct. 12th, 1492. He made four voyages of discovery to this continent, and died at Valladolid in 1506, aged 59.

ness and hospitality of which native innocence is capable. But their kindness was ill repaid. Impelled by a thirst for gold, the Spaniards committed the most horrid cruelties upon them, and in some instances destroyed whole nations.

Questions.—How does the western continent compare in size with the eastern? Between what two oceans does the western continent lie? How long since America was discovered? What name is given to the northern part of the continent? What name is given to the southern part? What isthmus unites these two portions? What islands between North and South America? Which approaches nearest to the eastern continent, North or South America? N.A. On which part of the western continent do you live? In what zones does the western continent lie? In what direction from South America is North America?

North America.

N AMERICA	ASIA	AFRICA
8 M. sq M.	16 M. sq M.	10 M. Sq. M.
Pop. 25 M.	Pop. 440 M.	Pop. 93 M.

Comparative View of N. America, Asia and Africa.

In extent of territory, North America ranks among the largest grand divisions of the globe. It is about 4,500 miles in length, and on an average, 2,500 miles in breadth. It is distinguished for the number and size of its rivers and lakes, and its extended ranges of mountains. Lake Superior is the largest collection of fresh water in the world, and the Missouri and Mississippi far surpass the rivers of the eastern continent.

There are two great ranges of mountains in North America. The western extends from the isthmus of Darien to the Arctic ocean, and contains several peaks whose tops are covered with perpetual snow. The northern part of this range is called *The Rocky Mountains*; the southern part, *The Cordilleras*. The eastern range is called the Alleghany, and extends through the United States, running nearly parallel with the coast.

North America has almost every variety of climate. The part north of 50° is a barren and frozen region, and is covered with snow and ice a great part of the year. Between 50° and 35° , the country is subject to great extremes of heat and cold, and produces in most parts, grass, grain and various kinds of fruit. South of 35° the climate is warm, and produces rice, cotton, tobacco, indigo, sugar-cane, and tropical fruits, as oranges, lemons, pine apples and figs.

The mineral treasures of North America, so far as discovered, consist of gold, silver, iron, copper, lead, coal, &c. The gold and silver mines of Mexico are supposed to be the richest in the world. Gold has recently been discovered in Virginia, North Carolina, Georgia and Alabama, and large quantities are now annually obtained. Iron is abundant in various parts, especially in the United States. There are rich mines of copper near Lake Superior, also on the banks of the Copper-mine river, and others in various parts of the United States. Coal is abundant. The most remarkable mines of it are found in Pennsylvania. Tin is produced in Mexico; and the lead mines of Missouri are among the most productive on the globe. Salt is plenty in all parts; the most noted springs are found in the state of New York. Sulphur and all sorts of marble are found in different places.

The vegetable kingdom embraces a great variety of productions, many of which are peculiar to N. America. The forests contain pines of an extraordinary height, oaks of various species, walnut and chestnut trees, ash, beech, birch, yew, cypress, willow, elm, poplar, and other trees common to the other continent. Among those which are peculiar to America, are the magnolia, the tulip tree, the acacia and many other. In the forests of the warmer regions are the palms, mahogany, cocoa and cotton trees. Besides these native productions, the orange and lemon trees, the coffee shrub, the sugar cane and the indigo plant, have been introduced and cultivated with success. Maize, tobacco and the potato were found here by the Europeans, and by them introduced into the eastern continent.

The animal kingdom embraces a great variety of species. In the most northern regions are found the musk ox, the reindeer and white bear. The vast prairies are peopled with immense herds of bisons, elks, moose, deer, antelopes, &c. Carniverous animals, such as the black bear, grisly bear, wolf, cougar or panther, lynx, &c. are numerous in the unfrequented parts of the country. In some parts of N. America have been found imbedded in the earth, the bones of remarkable animals that are not now known to exist. A few years since nearly an entire skeleton of one of these animals was dug up near Newburgh, in the state of New York, and is now preserved in the museum in Philadelphia. It must have been several times larger than the elephant, as a tall man can walk upright under its belly. Bones of the same species of animals are found in various parts of the western states, and it is highly probable that at a very remote

period, they existed here in great numbers. They are called the Mammoth or Mastodon.

All the domestic animals of Europe, the horse, ox, sheep, goat, hog, dog and cat, were introduced into America by the first settlers, and some of them have increased to such a degree that they form large herds in a wild state.

Among the birds of North America, the most noted is the wild turkey. It is peculiar to this country, and was first introduced into Europe in 1525, and is the original stock whence have sprung the tame turkeys. The mocking bird of the southern states is celebrated for its wonderful power of song. It surpasses all other tribes of melodious birds in the sweetness of its notes. The humming bird is distinguished for its beauty and diminutive size. There are numerous other birds peculiar to this continent; and others, as the eagle, owl, crow, hawk, swan, goose, duck, &c. which in many respects differ from those of the same name in the eastern continent. The coasts and inland waters swarm with water fowl.

Alligators are found in the southern rivers, and the waters are filled with sturgeons, pikes, trout, eels and salmon. The banks of Newfoundland and the neighboring coast abound in cod. Three thousand vessels, and one hundred thousand men from the United States, Great Britain and France, are annually engaged in the cod fisheries.

Respecting the northern part of North America, nothing is known with any degree of certainty. During a few years past, several attempts have been made to sail round this part into the Pacific, or in other words, to find a north-west passage; but all have been unsuccessful. Capt. Parry entered Barrow's Strait, and sailed to the 106° W. longitude, where he discovered a large island, which he named Melville, but was unable to proceed farther on account of ice. Mackenzie, Hearne, Franklin and others, attempted to explore this region by land, but were not able to penetrate these fearful abodes of perpetual ice and snow.

Questions.—How does North America compare with Asia? Africa? What is the probable population? What is the difference between the length and the average breadth of North America? What prevents North America from being a continent by itself? Is North America longer from north to south, or from east to west? Which ocean borders most on North America?

MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

How is North America bounded?

British America?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
U. S. and Territory?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Mexico?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Guatemala?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Russian possessions?			

RIVERS.

What is a River ?

Where does Mackenzie's River rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty ? Coppermine ? Peace ? Elk ? Slave ? *Saschaschawan ? Churchill ? Nelson ? Severn ? Albany ? Moose ? Utawas ? St. Lawrence ? Columbia ? Clark's ? Lewis ? Multnomah ? Colorado ? †Gila ? Rio Bravo, or Del Norte ? St. Juan ? Mississippi ? Missouri ? Yellowstone ? Arkansas ? Red River ?

CAPES.

What is a Cape ? Where is Cape Farewell ?

Where is Cape St. Lewis ?

Where is Cape Sable ?

Where is Icy Cape ?

Where is Cape Prince of Wales ?

Where is Cape St. Lucas ?

Where is Cape St. Antonio ?

ISLANDS.

What is an Island ? Where is Melville Island ? Sabine ? Disco ? Iceland ? Southampton ? Mansfield ? James ? Anticosti ? Cape Breton ? St. John's ? Newfoundland ? Sable ? Bermudas ? Bahamas ? Greater Antilles, viz. Cuba, Hayti, Jamaica, Porto Rico ? Carribbean Islands, viz. Santa Cruz, Antigua, Gaudaloupe, Dominica, Martinico, St. Lucas, Barbadoes, Grenada, Tobago, Trinidad ? Little Antilles, viz. Curazoa, Buen Aire, Orchilla, Tortuga, Margaritta, Oruba ? King George's ? Prince of Wales ? Queen Charlotte's ? Vancouver's or Nootka Island ?

STRAITS.

What is a Strait ? Where is Davis' Strait

Where is Hudson's Strait ?

Where is Cumberland's Strait ?

Where is the Strait of †Bellisle ?

Where is Barrows' Strait ?

Where is Bhering's Strait ?

BAYS.

What is a Bay ? Where is Baffin's Bay ?

Where is Hudson's Bay ?

Where is Repulse Bay ?

Where is James' Bay ?

Where is the Bay of Fundy ?

Where is ‡Amatique Bay ?

Where is the Bay of Honduras ?

Where is the Bay of Campeachy ?

* Sas-ka-shaw'-an

† Ge'-la

‡ Bel-ile'

Am-a-teek'

GULFS.

What is a Gulf? Where is the Gulf of St. Lawrence?
Where is the Gulf of Mexico?
Where is the Gulf of California?

SOUNDS.

What is a Sound? Where is Prince William's Sound?
Where is Lancaster Sound? Where is Smith's Sound?
Where is Whale Sound?

PENINSULAS.

What is a Peninsula? Where is the Peninsula of Greenland?
Where is the Peninsula of Nova Scotia?
Where is the Peninsula of Florida?
Where is the Peninsula of Yucatan?
Where is the Peninsula of California?
Where is the Peninsula of Alaska?

MOUNTAINS.

What is a Mountain? Where are the Alleghany Mountains?
Where are the Cordilleras Mountains?
Where are the Rocky Mountains?
Where is Horn Mountain? Where is Mount Elias?
Where are the Arctic Highlands.
Where is Popocatepetl?

LAKES.

What is a Lake? Where is Lake Superior?
Where is the Lake of the Woods?
Where is Lake Winnipeg?
Where is the Lake of the Hills?
Where is Slave Lake?
Where is Lake *Chapala?
Where is Lake †Nicaragua?

DIVISIONS.

What are the Divisions of North America?
Which is the most northern Division?
Which is the middle Division?
Which is the south-western Division?
Which is the southern Division?
Which is the most north-western Division?

What is the length of the Gulf of Mexico?
What is the length of the Gulf of California?
What is the length of the Carribbean Sea?
What is the length of Hudson's Bay?

* Sha'-pa-la.

Nic-ar-aw'-gua.

UNITED STATES.



The United States are the most interesting and important division of the western continent. They are distinguished for the excellence of their government,—the rapid increase of the population,—and for the intelligence, industry, and enterprise of the inhabitants.

In extent of territory, the United States rank among the first political divisions of the globe. They are 3000 miles in length from east to west, and 1700 miles in breadth, from north to south ; embracing about two millions square miles.

The commerce* of the United States ranks next to Great Britain. It extends to all nations, and to every clime. The chief articles of export,† are cotton, tobacco, wheat, flour, rice, fish, ashes, lumber, and naval stores. The chief articles of import,‡ are

* Com' merce, the exchanging of the goods or productions of one country for those of another ; trade, traffic.

† Ex' port, carried out of our country.

‡ Im' port, brought into our country.

woollens, cottons, silks, teas, coffee, sugar, spirits, spices and wines.

By examining the map, you will perceive that the United States^{*} territory is divided by the Alleghany and Rocky Mountains[†] into three great natural[‡] sections or divisions, viz. 1. THE ATLANTIC SLOPE, which extends from the Alleghany mountains to the Atlantic; 2. The MISSISSIPPI VALLEY, which lies between the Alleghany and Rocky mountains, and is watered by the Mississippi and its numerous branches; 3. The PACIFIC SLOPE, which comprises the region between the Rocky mountains and the Pacific ocean. Hence it will be seen, that the general features of the country is that of an immense plain traversed[‡] by two great chains of mountains.

There is no country of equal extent so well watered as the United States, by noble rivers and lakes, or so highly favored by nature with channels for internal commerce or mutual intercourse. With the Atlantic ocean on the east, the Pacific on the west, the gulf of Mexico on the south, and the lakes on the north, the United States contain some of the finest harbors in the world, and possess every advantage for commercial pursuits.

In a country so extensive, and having so many varieties of exposure as the United States, the climate[‡] must of course be various.

In a general view, the country may be regarded as comprised within three distinct climates. 1. That of the *cold climate*, embracing the Eastern States, the northern part of New York, Michigan and the western territories. 2. That of the *temperate climate*, comprising the Middle States, with Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Missouri, Kentucky and Tennessee. 3. The *hot climate*, comprising the Southern States and Arkansas.

Every quality of soil may be found in the United States from utter barrenness to the highest degree of fertility. Viewed as a whole, however, probably there is no region of equal extent better adapted than this, to support a vigorous, healthy and numerous population. The richest soils are in the western and southern states.

The Eastern States are under the best cultivation, but the soil requires diligent and laborious culture to render it productive. Along the shores of the Atlantic, from New York to Florida, the country is level and consists chiefly of sea sand, and is scarcely capable of cultivation, and produces nothing but pines, except on the banks of rivers, and in marshy spots where rice is raised. This sandy portion increases in width as it extends southerly, and is bounded towards the west by the mountainous regions.

* Na't-u-r-al, produced by nature, not man.

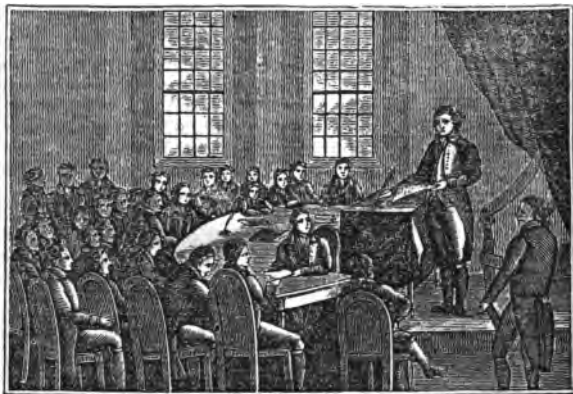
† Tra'v-ersed, crossed, intersected.

‡ Cli'-mate, the kind of weather that prevails in a country, or the temperature of the air.

The vegetable productions of the United States are exceedingly various. There are some, however, common to every section of the country. Maize, or Indian corn, and wheat, are cultivated from Maine to Louisiana, but succeed best in the Western and Middle States.

The chief agricultural occupations in the Eastern States are grazing and the dairy. The Middle States are principally devoted to the cultivation of wheat and maize; the Southern to that of tobacco, cotton, sugar and rice; and the Western to maize, wheat and hemp. The vine has been successfully cultivated in various parts of the Union, and the mulberry-tree grows spontaneously, and has been extensively planted of late years.

Minerals abound in the United States in great variety and profusion. Iron, coal and lime, exist in great abundance. Lead is found in inexhaustible quantities, in Missouri. Salt springs abound in many parts of the Union, and large quantities of salt are manufactured in New York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, Ohio and Illinois. Gold has recently been found in considerable quantities in Virginia, North and South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama and Tennessee.



Convention at Philadelphia.

HISTORY.—The United States were settled principally by emigrants from Great Britain. They were all included within the English patent, and claimed by the English crown. They were styled "British colonies in North America," and remained in subjection to the English government till 1775.

From the first settlement of this country, the English government treated the inhabitants of these colonies as a distinct and subordi-

nate class of subjects, and considered their interests entirely subservient to the aggrandizement and prosperity of the mother country; and after the conquest of Canada, they began to exercise an undue authority over them, and to interfere in their civil concerns in a manner which excited the most serious alarm.

The English government claimed the right of taxing the colonies, although they allowed them no participation in their legislative councils. The colonies denied this right, and contended that "taxation and representation were inseparable; and that they could not be safe if their property could be taken from them without their consent."

After various oppressive acts on the part of the English government, the colonists resolved to support their rights by force of arms. The first battle was fought at Lexington, on the 19th of April, 1775. In 1776, they declared themselves free and independent, under the name of "THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA." In 1783, January 20th, peace was settled between the two nations, when Great Britain acknowledged the United States to be *free, sovereign and independent*.

In May, 1787, a Convention of delegates from the several states met at Philadelphia, for the purpose of forming a Constitution adequate to the exigencies of government, and the preservation of the Union. George Washington was unanimously elected President of this body of illustrious statesmen; and after four months deliberation, they agreed upon a Constitution, which was adopted by the several states in 1789, and has been the source of unexampled prosperity to the nation.

Questions.—From what country did the first settlers of the United States principally come? What were the United States called previous to 1775? Why? Can you tell me to whom Canada belonged before the English conquered it? Where is Canada? What right did the English government claim? Did the colonies acknowledge this right? What did the colonies at last do? When and where was the first battle fought? Can you mention any other battles that were fought during the revolutionary war? Can you mention the names of any American generals? How long did the war continue? When was our present constitution adopted? How long since?

HISTORICAL TABLE.

The following Table exhibits the *settlement* of the different States and Territories, the *place first settled*, and by what nation; likewise the square miles of each State, taken from the best geographical tables. The first thirteen States are those which united in declaring their *independence*, and are called the THIRTEEN ORIGINAL STATES; the remainder are placed in the order in which they were admitted into the Union.

<i>States.</i>	<i>settl.</i>	<i>Nation.</i>	<i>Place.</i>	<i>Sq. miles.</i>	<i>Pop. to sq. m.</i>
1. Virginia	1607	English	Jamestown	32,000	18
2. New York	1614	Dutch	Albany,	46,000	40
3. Massachusetts	1620	English	Plymouth	7,500	81
4. N. Hampshire	1623	English	Dover	9,500	28
5. New Jersey	1624	Danes	Bergen	7,500	40
6. Delaware	1627	Swedes & Finns	C. Henlopen	2,100	36
7. Connecticut	1633	English	Windsor	4,800	62
8. Maryland	1634	English	St. Mary's	10,000	41
9. Rhode Island	1636	R. Williams	Providence	1,300	75
10. N. Carolina	1650	English	Albemarle	50,000	15
11. S. Carolina,	1670	English	Port Royal	30,000	19
12. Pennsylvania	1682	Wm. Penn	Philadelphia	47,000	29
13. Georgia	1733	English	Savannah	60,000	9
Vermont	1724	English	Fort Dummer	10,000	27
Kentucky	1775	Col. D. Boon	Boonsboro	40,000	18
Tennessee	1765	English	Nashville	40,000	16
Ohio	1788	English	Marietta	40,000	24
Louisiana	1699	French	Ibberville	48,000	4
Indiana	1730	French	Vincennes	36,000	10
Mississippi	1716	French	Natchez	48,000	3
Illinois	1749	French	Kaskaskia	59,000	3
Alabama	1783	Spanish	Mobile	50,000	6
Maine	1630	English	York	32,000	12
Missouri	1663	French	St. Genevieve	60,000	2
Michigan	1670	French	Detroit	60,000	1½
Arkansas	1685	French	Arkansas	55,000	1
Florida	1665	Spanish	St. Augustine	50,000	1

Questions.—Which is the largest state? How many square miles has Virginia? Which are the three next largest? How many square miles has Georgia? Missouri? How many square miles has Massachusetts? How many times larger is Georgia than Massachusetts? Divide the number of square miles in Georgia by those in Massachusetts—thus, $7500/60,000(8)$. Hence we see that Georgia is eight times larger than Massachusetts. About how many times larger is Virginia than Connecticut? A. Nearly fourteen times larger. Which is the smallest state? Which is the next smallest? Which is the most thickly inhabited state, or which has the greatest population to a square mile? See the right hand column above. How many inhabitants has Massachusetts to a square mile? Virginia? New York?

GOVERNMENT.—The several states are all united under one general government called a Federal Republic, that is, a republic in which several separate republics are united in one.

Each state is a republic by itself; for it has a government of its own, and is at liberty to make laws relative to its own peculiar interests; but the more general concerns of the nation, as the regulation of commerce, the declaration of war, the coining of money, &c. are entrusted to a general government.

The government of the United States consists of three branches, viz.: The *Legislative*; the *Executive*, and the *Judicial power*.

1. The *Legislative power* is vested in a Congress which consists of two branches—the Senate and the House of Representatives. The Senate consists of two members from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for the term of six years. The members of the House of Representatives are chosen for two years, by the people of each state, according to the population. Since March, 1833, each state is entitled to one representative for every 47,700 inhabitants; consequently if it has six times 47,700 inhabitants, it sends six representatives. Congress meets at Washington every winter on the first Monday in December to attend to the general interests of the nation.

2. The *Executive power* is vested in a President and Vice President, assisted by four Secretaries, called Heads of Departments, appointed by the President, viz.: The Secretary of State, the Secretary of War, the Secretary of the Navy and the Secretary of the Treasury. These are termed the cabinet. The President and Vice President are chosen for four years, by delegates elected by the people, called *electors*. Each state chooses as many electors as it has members in congress. For example, Connecticut is entitled to *eight electors*, because the State has eight members in congress, viz.—six representatives and two senators. The following is a list of the Presidents since the adoption of the present Constitution in 1789.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------|--------------------|----------|
| 1. George Washington, | of Vir. | from 1789 to 1797, | 8 years. |
| 2. John Adams, | " Mass. | " 1797 " 1801, | 4 " |
| 3. Thomas Jefferson, | " Vir. | " 1801 " 1809, | 8 " |
| 4. James Madison, | " Vir. | " 1809 " 1817, | 8 " |
| 5. James Monroe, | " Vir. | " 1817 " 1825, | 8 " |
| 6. John Quincy Adams, | " Mass. | " 1825 " 1829, | 4 " |
| 7. Andrew Jackson, | " Tenn. | " 1829 " 1837, | 8 " |
| 8. Martin Van Buren, | " N. Y. | " 1837 " 1841, | 4 " |
| 9. Wm. Henry Harrison, | " Ohio. | " 1841 | |

As the executive power administers the government, it is termed the Administration. Hence we speak of Washington's administration, Jefferson's administration, &c. &c.

3. The *Judicial power* is vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as Congress may from time to time establish. The present judicial establishment of the United States consists of a Supreme Court, thirty-one District Courts, and seven Circuit Courts. The Supreme Court is composed of one Chief Justice and six Associate Justices, who hold a court in the city of Washington annually, commencing on the second Monday of January; besides which, each

of these justices attends in a certain circuit comprising two or more districts appropriated to each, and together with the judge of the district, composes a Circuit Court, which is held in each district of the circuit. The principal business of these courts is to expound the laws of the United States, and to settle all questions which arise under the Constitution and treaties of the United States. The justices are appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and hold their offices during good behavior.

Questions.—What is meant by *Government*? A. The power that makes and executes the laws. What is the government of the United States called? What is the meaning of *Federal*? A. United, joined by mutual agreement. What power has each state? What powers are entrusted to the general government? Of how many branches does the government of the United States consist? In what is the Legislative power vested? Of what does Congress consist? In what manner, and for what length of time are the Senators chosen? How many Senators has this state in Congress? Can you tell me their names? There are now twenty-six states, and can you tell me of how many members the Senate consists? Who is the president or presiding officer of the Senate? A. The Vice President. For what length of time and by whom are the Representatives chosen? How many inhabitants are entitled to one representative? If this state contained 381,600 inhabitants, how many representatives could it send to Congress? How many representatives has this state in Congress? Can you tell me their names? When and where does Congress meet? In what is the Executive power vested? By whom is the President assisted? Who is the President at this time? Vice President? How is the President and Vice President chosen, and for what length of time? To how many presidential electors is this state entitled? Why? If this state had eight Representatives in Congress, how many Electors would it have a right to choose? Why ten? In what is the Judicial power of the United States vested? Of how many Courts does it consist at present? Of how many Judges or Justices? Who is Chief Justice at this time? What is the principal business of these courts? By whom are the Judges appointed? What is the power of the Supreme Court called? A. The Federal Judiciary. Will you recapitulate the powers of each branch of our national government? A. Congress makes the laws, the President executes them, and the Judiciary explains and applies them in doubtful cases. Of how many branches does the government of this state consist? A. Of three. It has a legislature to make the laws; an Executive, at the head of which is a Governor to see that the laws are enforced, and a Judiciary to decide in disputed cases between its citizens. Which consists of the most branches then, the government of this state, or of the U. States?

INHABITANTS.—The population of the United States consists of three general classes, viz.—Whites, Negroes and Indians.

1. The Whites are descendants of Europeans, and are generally of English extraction, but embrace many French, Germans, Dutch, Scotch, Irish, Spanish, &c. The Dutch are most numerous in New York; the Germans in Pennsylvania, and the French in Louisiana.

2. The Negroes are for the most part descendants of African slaves, and are found principally in the Southern States.

3. The Indians are the descendants of those who occupied the country at the time of its discovery by Europeans. Most of these prefer their own modes of savage life to those of the whites, and as the latter have extended their settlements, they have removed farther and farther back into the wilderness: and at the present time but a small number of them are found east of the Mississippi river. A census or enumeration of the inhabitants of the United States, is taken every ten years. The following table exhibits the population of the United States according to five enumerations.

States.	1790.	1800.	1810.	1820.	1830.
Maine,	96,540	151,719	228,705	298,335	399,955
New Hampshire,	141,899	183,762	214,360	244,161	269,328
Vermont,	85,416	154,465	217,713	235,764	280,652
Massachusetts,	378,717	423,245	472,040	523,287	610,408
Rhode Island,	69,110	69,122	77,031	83,059	97,199
Connecticut,	238,141	251,002	272,042	275,202	297,665
New York,	340,120	586,756	959,949	1,372,812	1,918,608
New Jersey,	184,139	211,949	249,555	277,575	320,823
Pennsylvania,	434,373	602,365	810,091	1,049,458	1,348,233
Delaware,	59,096	64,273	72,674	72,749	76,748
Maryland,	319,728	341,548	380,546	407,360	447,040
Virginia,	748,308	880,200	974,622	1,065,379	1,211,405
North Carolina,	393,751	478,103	555,500	638,829	737,987
South Carolina,	249,073	345,591	415,115	502,741	581,185
Georgia,	82,548	162,101	252,433	340,987	516,823
Alabama,	.	.	20,845	127,901	309,527
Mississippi,	.	8,850	40,352	75,448	136,621
Louisiana,	.	.	76,556	153,407	215,739
Tennessee,	35,791	105,602	261,727	422,813	681,904
Kentucky,	73,077	220,955	406,511	564,317	687,917
Ohio,	.	45,365	230,760	581,434	937,903
Indiana,	.	4,875	24,520	147,178	343,031
Illinois,	.	.	12,282	55,211	157,455
Missouri,	.	.	20,845	66,586	140,445
Michigan,	.	.	4,762	8,896	31,639
Arkansas,	.	.	.	14,273	30,388
Dist. of Columbia,	.	14,093	24,023	33,033	39,834
Florida Territory,	.	.	.	.	34,730
Total,	3,929,827	5,305,925	7,239,814	9,638,131	12,866,020

Questions.—Which was the most populous state in 1790? In 1800? In 1810? In 1820? In 1830? How often is the census or an enumeration of the people of the United States taken? When will the next census be taken? What was the total population of the United States in 1790? In 1800? In 1810? In 1820? In 1830?

RELIGION.—In almost every country, there is some religion established by law, and the people are not only required to pay for the support of it, but to believe it, and if they refuse, they suffer great inconveniences and persecutions. But in the United States there is no established form of religion; every individual is left to the free enjoyment of his own religion, and is at liberty to worship God agreeably to the dictates of his own conscience. The inhabitants are divided into a great variety of sects, the principal of which are Baptists, Methodists, Congregationalists, Presbyterians, Episcopalians, German Lutherans, Unitarians and Friends.

TABLE OF RELIGIOUS DENOMINATIONS IN 1837.

Denominations.	Minist- ters.	Churches or Cong's.	Communi- cants.
Congregationalists,	975	1,071	129,756
Presbyterians (General Assembly,)	1,914	2,648	247,964
Reformed Dutch Church,	167	197	22,515
Associate Presbyterian Church,	70	169	12,886
Associate Reformed Church,	43	100	10,000
Cumberland Presbyterians,	400		60,000
German Reformed,	186	600	30,000
Baptists, (Calvinistic,)	4,239	6,319	452,000
Free Will Baptists,	515	750	25,276
Seventh Day Baptists,	46	42	4,258
Six Principle Baptists,	9	16	1,443
Christians, (Baptists,)	300	1,000	30,000
Mennonites, (Baptists,)	200		30,000
Tunkers, (Baptists,)	40	40	3,000
Methodist Episcopal Church,	2,608		652,528
Methodist Protestants,	70		30,000
Protestant Episcopal Church,	785	850	
Roman Catholic Church,	340	338	
Evangelical Lutheran Church,	191	627	59,787
United Brethren, or Moravians,	33	24	2,000
Unitarians, (Congregationalists,)	165	187	
New Jerusalem Church,	33	27	
Universalists,	300	600	
Friends, or Quakers,		500	
Shakers, or Millennial Church,	45	15	

Questions.—How many sects, or religious denominations, are there in this town? How many churches? Which denomination of Christians in the U. S. has the greatest number of communicants or church members? How many churches have the Congregationalists? Presbyterians? &c.

INTERNAL IMPROVEMENTS.—During a few years past the people of the United States have made great and spirited exertions to improve their inland water communication, by the construction of canals. Several of great extent have already been completed, and numerous others have been projected, and are now in a state of forwardness, designed to connect the remotest parts of the country with each other. A great number of rail roads have been constructed in various parts of the Union, and a multitude of others are now in progress of construction; and the spirit with which these improvements have been commenced, is constantly increasing. The canals in the United States which are now finished, comprise more than 2,000 miles in length; and the rail roads already completed about 1,500 miles, and those of the latter now under contract or in progress, have been estimated at more than 3,000 miles. It may be said without exaggeration, that railroads and canals are now projected in this country on a more extensive scale than in all other parts of the globe. When the various works of this description which are now in progress, or in prospect, shall be completed, the principal places in the different parts of the country will be brought comparatively near to each other. Indeed, the present facilities of intercourse are altogether beyond what the inhabitants no more than fifty years ago could have conceived to be possible.



The following is a list of some of the principal canals in the United States.

Canals.	L'gth. Miles	Cost.	Beginning.	Ending.
Blackstone,	45	\$700,000	Worcester,	Providence,
Black River,	76	600,000	Rome,	Fall of Bl'k. Riv
Cayuga,	20	236,000	Geneva,	Montezuma,
Champlain,	63	1,180,000	L. Champlain,	Erie Canal,
Chemung,	23	342,133	Seneca Lake,	Elmira,
Chenango,	96	1,800,000	Utica,	Binghamton,
Chesapeake & Ohio,	340		Georgetown,	Pittsburg,
Chesa'ke & Delaware,	14		Delaware Bay,	Chesapeake Bay
Delaware,	60		Easton,	Bristol,
Delaware & Hudson,	108		Hudson River,	Honesdale.
Delaware & Raritan,	42½		N. Brunswick,	Bordentown.
Dismal Swamp,*	23		Joyce's Creek,	Pasquetank,
Erie,	363	9,027,500	Buffalo,	Albany,
Farmington,	78		New Haven,	Northampton,
Lehigh,	46½	1,558,000	Easton,	Stoddardsville,
Middlesex,†	27	528,000	Boston,	Merrimack Riv
Miami,	66	746,852	Dayton,	Cincinnati.
Morris,	101	1,200,000	Jersey City,	Easton.
Ohio,	334	4,500,000	Cleveland,	Portsmouth.
Oswego,	38	565,437	Salina,	Oswego.
Pennsylvania, c. R.R.	395		Philadelphia,	Pittsburg.
Santee,	22		Santee River,	Cooper River.
Schuylkill,	110	2,336,380	Philadelphia,	Port Carbon.
Union,	80		Middletown,	Reading, Pa.
Wabash and Erie,	200		The Wabash,	The Maumee.

*Dismal Swamp Canal connects Chesapeake Bay and Albemarle Sound.

†The Middlesex Canal was constructed in 1806, and is the oldest canal in the United States.



The following is a list of the principal Railroads in the United States.

Names and places connected.	Finish- ed.	In pro- gress.	Total.
Albany and Schenectady,	16		16
Baltimore and Ohio,	86	243	329
Baltimore and Washington,	40		40
Baltimore and York, Pa.	59½		59½
Boston and Lowell,	25½		25½
Boston and Providence,	41		41
Boston and Worcester, Mass.	43		43
Camden and Amboy, N. J.	61		61
Columbia and Philadelphia, Pa.	83		83
Charleston and Hamburg, S. C.	136		136
Danville and Pottsville, Pa.	20	33	53
Hartford and New Haven, Ct.		35	35
Ithaca and Oswego, N. Y.	29		29
Jersey City and Patterson, N. J.	16½		16½
Lackawaxen and Carbondale, Pa.	17		14
Mauch Chunk Coal Mines & Lehigh, Pa.	14		20
Mine Hill and Schuylkill Haven,	20		16
New Castle and Frenchtown,	16		31
New Brunswick and Jersey City, N. J.			17
New York and Erie,	31	505	505
Providence and Stonington,	47		47
Petersburg, Va. and Blake, N. C.	59		59
Philadelphia and Trenton,	26½		26½
Richmond and Potomac, Va.	58		58
Saratoga and Schenectady,	22½		22½
Tuscumbia and Decatur, Ala.	46		46
Utica and Schenectady, N. Y.	77		77
Winchester and Harper's Ferry, Va.	30		30

Questions.—Did you ever see a canal? Which is the longest canal in the United States? Which is the next longest? Must the country through which a canal passes be entirely level? By what means can a boat ascend, or descend a considerable elevation of land? Can you explain to me how this can be done by means of locks? If you should put a small piece of board into an empty pail, and then fill the pail with water, what effect would it produce on the board? Which is the oldest canal in the United States? Are there any canals in this state? What kind of vessels sail in canals? How are these propelled? Cannot a horse draw more in a waggon than in a canal boat?

Questions.—Did you ever see a railroad? How does a railroad differ from a common road? Are there any railroads in this state? What kind of carriages are used on railroads? By what are the cars drawn, or propelled? Which do you suppose moves fastest, a canal boat, or a car? Which do you imagine usually moves fastest, a stage, or a car propelled by steam? What is the usual speed of steam cars? A. From 20 to 40 miles an hour, and stages from 7 to 12 miles. Which do you think are most useful, common roads, canals, or railroads? Why?

EDUCATION.—The United States are not so much distinguished for *eminence* in literature and science, as for the general diffusion of knowledge. There are numerous seminaries of learning throughout the country, and the means of acquiring a good common education are extended to all classes of society.



Yale College.

COLLEGES.

The following is a list of the colleges in the United States. Those marked thus, (*) are under the direction of the Baptists; thus, (†) Episcopalians; thus, (‡) Methodists; thus, (§) Catholics. Those *unmarked*, in New England, Congregational; in other parts, Presbyterian. Norwich University is established by the Universalists.

Names.	Where Located.	Inco.	Libra.
Bowdoin college	Brunswick, Me.	1794	12000
*Waterville c	Waterville, Me.	1820	6000
Dartmouth c	Hanover, N. H.	1769	6000
Vermont University	Burlington, Vt.	1791	6000
Middlebury c	Middlebury, Vt.	1800	4000
Norwich u	Norwich, Vt.	1834	
Harvard u	Cambridge, Mass.	1638	43000
William's c	Williamstown, Mass.	1793	4000
Amherst c	Amherst, Mass.	1821	5400
*Brown u	Providence, R. I.	1764	12000
Yale c	New Haven, Ct.	1700	15000
†Washington c	Hartford, Ct.	1824	8000
†Wesleyan u	Middletown, Ct.	1831	4000
Union c	Schenectady, N. Y.	1795	15000
Hamilton c	Clinton, N. Y.	1812	3000
New York u	New York city,	1831	
†Columbia c	New York city,	1754	8000
†Geneva c	Geneva, N. Y.	1823	1000
*Hamilton Lit. Th.	Hamilton, N. Y.	1819	2000
New Jersey c	Princeton, N. J.	1746	12000
Rutgers c	New Brunswick, N. J.	1770	3000
Pennsylvania u	Philadelphia, Pa.	1755	2000
‡Dickinson c	Carlisle, Pa.	1783	3000
Jefferson c	Canonsburg, Pa.	1802	1000
Washington c	Washington, Pa.	1806	1500
†Alleghany c	Meadville, Pa.	1806	8000
Western u	Pittsburg, Pa.	1819	1500
Madison c	Union Town, Pa.	1829	
Pennsylvania	Gettysburg, Pa.	1832	
Lafayette	Easton, Pa.	1832	
†Bristol c	New Bristol, Pa.	1833	4000
*Haddington c	Haddington, Pa.	1836	
Newark c	Newark, Del.	1833	1500
§Mount St. Mary's c	Emmetsburg, Md.	1830	7000
Mount Hope c	New Baltimore, Md.	1832	
Maryland u	Baltimore, Md.	1812	1000
§St. Mary's c	Baltimore, Md.	1799	1200
St. John's c	Annapolis, Md.	1784	3000

Names.	Where Located.	Ince	Libra.
§Georgetown c	Georgetown, D. C.	1799	1000
Columbia c.	Washington city,	1821	4000
†William and Mary's c	Williamsburg, Va.	1693	4000
Hampden Sidney c	Prince Edward, Va.	1783	5000
Washington c	Lexington, Va.	1812	2300
Virginia u	Charlottesville, Va.	1819	11000
†Randolph Macon c	Boydton, Va.	1829	
North Carolina u	Chapel Hill, N. C.	1791	2000
South Carolina u	Columbia, S. C.	1804	10,000
†Charleston c	Charleston, S. C.	1785	3000
Georgia u	Athens, Geo.	1785	4500
Alabama u	Tuscaloosa, Ala.	1828	3000
†Lagrange c	New Tuscaloosa, Ala.	1830	
§Spring Hill	Spring Hill, Ala.	1830	
Oakland	Oakland, Miss.	1831	
Louisiana	Jackson, Miss.	1825	350
Jefferson c	Washington, Miss.	1802	
New Orleans c	New Orleans, La.	1805	
Greenville c	Greenville, Tenn.	1794	4500
Washington c	Washington co. Tenn.	1794	5000
East Tennessee c	Knoxville, Tenn.	1807	3000
Nashville c	Nashville, Tenn.	1806	2000
Jackson	New Columbia, Tenn.	1830	1500
Transylvania u	Lexington, Ky.	1798	2400
Centre c	Danville, Ky.	1822	3000
†Augusta c	Augusta, Ky.	1823	2000
St. Joseph c	Bardstown, Ky.	1819	5000
Cumberland	Princetown, Ky.	1825	500
*Georgetown c	Georgetown, Ky.	1830	1500
†Kenyon c	Gambier, Ohio,	1828	4000
Ohio u	Athens, Ohio,	1821	2800
*Cincinnati c	Cincinnati, Ohio,	1819	3000
Miami u	Oxford, Ohio,	1824	1500
Franklin c	New Athens, Ohio,	1825	1000
Western Reserve c	Hudson, Ohio,	1826	2000
Granville c	Granville, Ohio,	1832	3500
Marietta c	Marietta, Ohio,	1833	
Orberlin Institute	New Elyria, Ohio,	1834	
Willoughby u	Chagrin, Ohio,	1834	
Indiana c	Bloomfield, Ind.	1827	600
South Hanover	South Hanover, Ind.	1829	
Wabash c	Crawfordsville, Ind	1833	
Illinois	Jacksonville, Ill.	1830	1600
†Shurtleff c	Upper Alton, Ill.	1835	

Names.	Where Located.	Inco.	Libra.
†McKendrean	Lebanon, Ill.		
§St. Mary's	Barren, Mo.	1830	6000
Marion	New Palmyra, Mo.	1831	
Columbia	Columbia, Mo.	1835	
§St. Louis	St. Louis, Mo.	1829	7500

THEOLOGICAL SEMINARIES.

Name.	Place.	Denomina- tion.	Com. oper- ation	Vols. in Libra.
Bangor Theol. Seminary,	Bangor, Me.	Cong.	1816	3 2,300
Theological Seminary,	Andover, Mass.	Cong.	1808	5 11,000
Divinity School,	Cambridge, do.	Cong. Unit.	1824	3
Theological Institution,	Newton, do.	Baptist,	1825	3 1,800
Theol. Dep. Yale College,	New Haven, Ct.	Cong.	1822	3 2,000
Theol. Inst. of Conn.	E. Windsor, do.	Cong.	1834	3 2,000
Theol. Inst. Epis. Church,	New York, N. Y.	Prot. Epis.	1819	6 3,880
Theol. Sem. of Auburn,	Auburn, do.	Presbyt.	1821	4 4,500
Hamilton Lit. and Th. Inst.	Hamilton, do.	Baptist,	1820	4 2,250
Hartwick Seminary,	Hartwick, do.	Lutheran,	1816	2 1,000
Th. Sem. Dutch Ref. Ch.	N. Br'wick, N. J.	Dutch Ref.	1784	3
Theol. Sem. Pr. Ch. U. S.	Princeton, do.	Presbyt.	1813	5 7,000
Sem. Luth. Ch. U. S.	Gettysburg, Pa.	Evang. L.	1826	2 7,000
German Reformed,	York, do.	G. Ref. Ch.	1825	2
West. Theol. Seminary,	Alleghany T. do.	Presbyt.	1823	2 4,000
Theological School,	Canonsburg, do.	Asso. Ch.		1
Theological Seminary,	Pittsburg, do.	Asso. Ref.	1828	1
Epis. Theol. School of Va.	Fairfax co. do.	Prot. Epis.		2 2,000
Union Theol. Seminary,	Pr. Ed. co. do.	Presbyt.	1824	3 3,200
Virginia Baptist Seminary,	Richmond, do.	Baptist,	1832	3
Southern Theol. Sem.	Columbia, S. C.	Presbyt.	1829	3 1,800
Theological Seminary,	Lexington, do.	Lutheran,	1832	2 1,200
Furman Theol. Seminary,	High Hills, do.	Baptist,		2 1,000
South West. Theol. Sem.	Maryville, Ten.	Presbyt.	1821	2 5,000
Lane Seminary,	Cincinnati, Ohio,	Presbyt.	1829	3
Theol. Dep. Kon. College,	Gambier, do.	Prot. Epis.	1828	
Theol. Dep. W. Res. Col.	Hudson, do.	Presbyt.		
Theological School,	Columbus, do.	Lutheran,		
Granville Theol. Dep.	Granville, do.	Baptist,	1832	1 500
Indiana Theol. Seminary,	S. Hanover, In.	Presbyt.		2
Alton Theol. Seminary,	Upper Alton, Ill.		1835	2

There are *Roman Catholic* Theological Seminaries at Baltimore and near Emmitsburg, Md., at Charleston, S. C., near Bardstown, and in Washington County, Ky., and in Perry County, Mo.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

How are the United States bounded ?* Capital ?

Eastern, or New England States.

1. Maine ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
2. N. Hampshire ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
3. Vermont ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
4. Massachusetts ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
5. Rhode Island ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
6. Connecticut ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

Middle States.

1. New York ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
2. New Jersey ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
3. Pennsylvania ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
4. Delaware ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

Southern States.

1. Maryland ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
2. Virginia ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
3. North Carolina ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
4. South Carolina ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
5. Georgia ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
6. Alabama ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
7. Mississippi ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
8. Louisiana ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

Western States.

1. Tennessee ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
2. Kentucky ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

* In giving the boundary of a country, the learner should first mention the different places that border upon it on the *north*,—then in the same manner on the *east*,—then on the *south*,—and then on the *west*. As for example—The United States are bounded North by British America; East by British America and the Atlantic ocean, South by the Atlantic ocean, Gulf of Mexico and Mexico; and West by the Gulf of Mexico, Mexico and the Pacific ocean. Maine is bounded North by Lower Canada; East by New Brunswick and the Atlantic; South by the Atlantic, and West by New Hampshire and Lower Canada. New Hampshire is bounded North by Vermont and Lower Canada; East by Maine and the Atlantic; South by Massachusetts, and West by Vermont and Lower Canada. Vermont is bounded North by Lower Canada; East by New Hampshire; South by New Hampshire and Massachusetts, and West by New York, &c. &c. It is highly important that the scholar should correctly learn the boundary before he studies the description of the country.

3. Ohio ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
4. Michigan ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
5. Indiana ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
6. Illinois ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
7. Missouri ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
8. Arkansas ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

Territories.

1. Florida ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
2. Wisconsin ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
3. Iowa ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
4. Indian ?			Rivers ?
5. Missouri ?			Rivers ?
6. Oregon ?			Rivers ?

RIVERS.

Where does the Columbia river rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty ? Clark's ? Lewis ? Multnomah ? Yellowstone ? Platte ? Osage ? St. Peter's ? Des Moines ? Missouri ? Arkansas ? Red ? Sabine ? Mississippi ? Yazoo ? Black ? Pearl ? Pascagoula ? Tombigbee ? Alabama ? Perdido ? Chatahoochee ? Flint ? Suwanee ? St. John's ? St. Mary's ? Satilla ? Altamaha ? Ogeechee ? Savannah ? Cambahee ? Edisto ? Santee ? Great and Little Pedee ? Cape Fear ? Neuse ? Pamlico ? Roanoke ? Chowan ? James ? York ? Rappahannoc ? Shenandoah ? Potomac ? Monongahela ? Little Kanhawa ? Great Kanhawa ? Tennessee ? Cumberland ? Green ? Salt ? Kentucky ? Licking ? Big Sandy ? Ohio ? Muskingum ? Sciota ? Miami ? Maumee ? Sandusky ? Wabash ? Kaskaskia ? Rock ? Illinois ? Wisconsin ? Chippeway ? Fox ? St. Joseph's ? Alleghany ? Genessee ? Susquehannah ? Delaware ? Mohawk ? Hudson, or North river ? Black ? Housatonic ? Thames ? Connecticut ? Merrimack ? Piscataqua ? Saco ? Androscoggin ? Kennebec ? Penobscot ? St. Croix ? St. John's river ?

LAKES.

Where is Lake Michigan ?
 Where is Lake Champlain ?
 Where is Lake George ?
 Where are Oneida, Seneca, and Cayuga Lakes ? A. In the interior of New York.
 Where is Lake Memphremagog ?†
 Where is Moosehead Lake ?†
 Where is Lake Umbagog ?†
 Where is *Winnipiseog Lake ?†

* Vin-ne-pe-so'-go.

† See Map of the Eastern States.

SOUNDS.

Where is Long Island Sound ?

Where is Albemarle Sound ?

Where is Pamlico Sound ?

BAYS.

Where is Mobile Bay ?

Where is Chesapeake Bay ?

Where is Delaware Bay ?

Where is Narraganset Bay ?

Where is Buzzard's Bay ?

Where is Massachusetts Bay ?

Where is Casco Bay ?

Where is Penobscot Bay ?

Where is the Bay of Fundy ?

Where is Georgian Bay ?

Where is Green Bay ?

CAVES.

Where is Cape Sable ?

Where is Cape Ann ?

Where is Cape Cod ?

Where is Cape Malabar ?

Where is Montauk Point ?

Where is Sandy Hook ?

Where are Cape May and Cape Henlopen ?

Where are Cape Charles and Cape Henry ?

Where are Cape Hatteras, Cape Lookout and Cape Fear ?

Where are Cape Canaveral and Cape Florida ?

ISLANDS.

Where are Nantucket and Martha's Vineyard ?

Where is Block Island ?

Where is Gardner's Island ?

Where is Long Island ?

Where is Sullivan's Island ?

Where are St. Catharine's, St. Simon's and Cumberland Islands ?

Where are Talbot and Amelia Islands ?

SHOALS.

Where are Muscle Shoals ?

Where are Nantucket Shoals ? A. South of Nantucket Island.

MOUNTAINS.

What is the principal range of Mountains in the United States ?

Through what States do the Alleghany Mountains extend ?

Where are the Ozark Mountains ?

Where are the Cumberland Mountains ?

Where are the Catskill Mountains ? A. In New York.

Where are the Green Mountains ? A. In Vermont.

Where are the White Mountains ? A. In New Hampshire ?

What Mountains between Missouri and Oregon Territory ?

EASTERN, OR NEW ENGLAND STATES.



Commerce.

Which are the Eastern, or New England States ? How many are there ? Which of these extends farthest north ? Which extends farthest south ? Which is the most eastern ? Which extends farthest west ? Which is the longest ? Which is the shortest ? Which is the largest ? Which is the smallest ? Which of these is nearly square ?

What large body of water borders on the Eastern States ? On how many of them does the Atlantic border ? Which one has no sea-coast ? What lake lies between Vermont and New York ? With what is Lake Champlain connected ? With the river St. Lawrence, by the river Sorell.

Which three of the Eastern States are bounded north by Lower Canada ? Which three are bounded west by New York ? In how many of the Eastern States have you ever been ? Look on the ta-

ble of population and tell me which of the Eastern States was most populous, or had the greatest number of inhabitants in 1830? How many inhabitants had Massachusetts in 1830? In 1820? In 1810? 1800? 1790?

Look on the Historical Table and tell me which of the Eastern States is most thickly peopled, or has the greatest number of inhabitants to a square mile? How many square miles has Massachusetts? When, where, and by whom was Massachusetts settled? Which is the largest river in the Eastern States?

The Eastern States are the most populous and commercial section of the Union. They are distinguished for the infinite variety of their surface, and for their numerous lakes, ponds, rivers, and beautiful scenery.

Along the coast, the land is mostly level. In the interior, it is diversified with hills, mountains and valleys. There are no plains of any considerable extent; but beautiful swells of land in every form, are innumerable.

The two principal ranges of mountains, are the White mountains in New Hampshire, and Green mountains in Vermont. Mount Washington, the most elevated summit of the former, is the highest land in the United States east of the Mississippi. These mountains abound in the most beautiful, wild, and sublime scenery, and afford a delightful ramble during the warm season of the year.

The climate is variable, and subject to great extremes of heat and cold. It is generally healthy however, except during the spring months, when damp and disagreeable east winds prevail, particularly on the sea-coast. The autumn is delightful, and the climate then is one of the most agreeable in the world.

The soil is various, from barren sand to the richest clays and loams. It requires diligent cultivation to procure tolerable crops. It is generally better fitted for grazing than tillage. The most important

production is grass. One of the leading pursuits of the farmer is the raising of cattle, horses, sheep and swine. Indian corn, or maize, wheat, rye, oats, barley, flax and hemp, are extensively cultivated. Apples, pears, peaches, plums, &c. are produced in great plenty, especially in the southern part.

The people of these states are extensively engaged in the whale fisheries in the Pacific, in the cod fisheries on the banks of Newfoundland, and in the herring fisheries on the coast of Maine and Nova Scotia.

The Eastern States are not less distinguished for manufactures than for commerce. Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island and New Hampshire are extensively engaged in manufacturing cotton and woollen goods, hats, shoes, clocks, iron and tin ware, and various other articles. The exports from these states, in addition to the articles above mentioned, are lumber, pot and pearl ashes and fish.

Perhaps in no other part of the world is knowledge so universally diffused among all classes, as in the Eastern states. The inhabitants are generally instructed in the common branches of school education, and it is a rare occurrence to meet with a person of mature years, who cannot both read and write, and who, besides, has not some practical knowledge of arithmetic. This is owing to the universal provision made for the education of all classes. The towns are divided into small districts in which a school is established and supported by law, during a part, or the whole of the year. One of the most common objects that is presented to a traveller in passing through these states is a school house, in which the young are taught all the branches necessary to the transaction of the ordinary business of life. In addition to common schools, these states are well supplied with academies, high schools

and colleges. Some of the latter stand at the head of the literary institutions in our country.



A School House.

The people of these states are intelligent, moral, industrious and enterprising. They rank among the first in each of the learned professions, and with the best mechanics, best farmers, and the best seamen in our country.

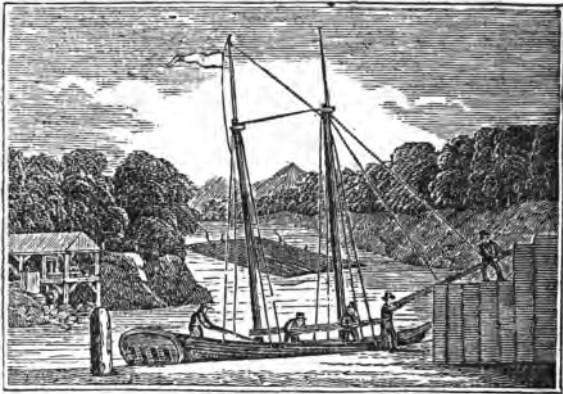
Questions.—What can you say of the Eastern states? How many square miles do they embrace? A. 65,100. What was their population in 1830? A. 1,954,611. How many inhabitants were there at that time to a square mile? A. 30. How much larger are they than the state of Virginia? What is the face of the country in the Eastern States? Which are the two principal ranges of mountains? What is said of the climate? What is meant by climate? During which months in the year is the weather usually warmest in this place? When coldest? Which winds during the spring months are most disagreeable? What is said of the soil? What articles are manufactured? What is the state of education? What is the general character of the people? Can you tell me when the first settlement was made in the Eastern states? How many years since Plymouth was settled? Where is Plymouth, and in what direction from us is it?

MAINE.*

How is Maine bounded? What is its Capital?

Maine is generally a cold, uneven, and healthy state. It is principally distinguished for its extensive coast and numerous harbors, which afford peculiar advantages for navigation and the fisheries.

The northern part is covered with forests which furnish vast quantities of timber for exportation. The southern parts are thickly settled, and present many flourishing towns and villages.



Lumber Trade.

The soil is various, but generally fertile. The land on the Kennebec and between this river and the Penobscot, is accounted the best in the state. It is well adapted to the various purposes of agriculture, and as a grazing country, it is one of the finest in the Eastern states.

* This state was formerly united with Massachusetts, and was termed the *District of Maine*, but in 1820 it was erected into an independent state, and admitted into the Union.

Agriculture and manufactures have received considerable attention; but the people are principally engaged in commercial pursuits. Their trade by sea is now very extensive; and in the amount of its shipping, Maine is the fourth state in the Union.

Chief Towns.—**AUGUSTA** is a pleasant and flourishing town, situated at the head of sloop navigation on the Kennebec, 45 miles from its mouth. It is in the midst of a beautiful and fertile country, and is noted for the elegance of its public buildings, and the rapid increase of its population.

Portland is a well built and flourishing town, pleasantly situated on a peninsula in Casco bay. It has a safe and capacious harbor, and is noted for its extensive commerce.

Bath is a flourishing town, pleasantly situated on the Kennebec, 13 miles from its mouth. Except Portland, it is the largest and most commercial town in the state.

Hallowell, beautifully situated at the head of tide water on the Kennebec river, has had a rapid increase, and is now one of the most wealthy, populous, and flourishing towns in the state.

Brunswick is pleasantly situated at the falls on the Androscoggin; it is a place of considerable trade, and is the seat of Bowdoin College, a highly valuable and flourishing institution.

Waterville is a flourishing town on the Kennebec, and is the seat of Waterville College, a distinguished literary institution, under the direction of the Baptists.

Map of the United States.—What seven rivers has Maine? *r. s. a. k. p. St. c. St. j.* What river forms part of the boundary between Maine and New Hampshire? *A. Piscataqua.* What river forms part of the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick? *St. c.* What town on Passamaquoddy Bay at the mouth of the river **St. Croix*? *b.* What town on Machias Bay, S. W. of Eastport? *m.* What is the length of the river *St. Johns*? *Penobscot*? *Kennebec*? How far is Portland from Boston? *Hartford*? *Washington*? [See table of distance on the Map of the United States.]

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE EASTERN STATES.

What two large bays on the coast of Maine? *c. p.* What ten counties has Maine? *y. c. o. l. k. s. w. h. p. and Washington.* [Washington county embraces the eastern part of Maine, extending from the Atlantic to Lower Canada.] What six counties border on the Atlantic? *y. c. l. w. h. w.* What four counties border on Lower Canada? *o. s. p. w.* What county in the interior? *k.* Which are

* *St. Croix.*

the two *Shire Towns of York county? Washington county? A. Machias, situated on Machias bay. What cape east of Casco bay? What Point N. E. of this? P. & C. Which are the two principal Lakes in Maine? M. U. What two colleges in Maine, and where are they located? What Theological Institution in Maine? B. How many square miles has Maine? [See page 60.] When, where, and by whom was Maine settled? How will you sail from Portland to Concord?

NEW HAMPSHIRE.



Dartmouth College.

How is New Hampshire bounded? What is its Capital?

New Hampshire is a mountainous, healthy, and fertile state, and is noted for its numerous rivers and lakes, and for its beautiful and picturesque scenery.

It has but a small share of commerce, but is distinguished for its agriculture, and flourishing manufactures.

Chief Towns.—CONCORD is a pleasant and flourishing town, and is the centre of trade for the northern part of the state.

* The town where the courts are held.

Portsmouth, the only seaport of New Hampshire, is a large, well built, and flourishing town, pleasantly situated on the Piscataqua, 3 miles from its mouth. It has an excellent harbor, and is one of the naval stations of the United States.

Dover is situated on the Cocheco river, 4 miles above its junction with the Piscataqua. It is the oldest town in the state, and is noted for its extensive manufactures.

Hanover is beautifully situated on the Connecticut river. It is the seat of Dartmouth College, one of the most respectable and flourishing institutions in the United States.

Exeter is pleasantly situated on Exeter river, a branch of the Piscataqua. It contains a number of elegant buildings, and is distinguished for its numerous manufacturing establishments. Philips Academy in this town, is one of the oldest and most flourishing institutions of the kind in the United States.

Map of the United States.—Which are the three principal rivers in New Hampshire? c. m. r. What river forms part of the boundary between New Hampshire and Maine? r. What river forms the boundary between New Hampshire and Vermont? c. What seaport has New Hampshire, and how situated? What is the length of Connecticut river? Merrimack? What Mountains in New Hampshire? How high are the White Mountains? [See Map of the World.]

MAP OF THE EASTERN STATES.

What eight counties has New Hampshire? c. s. h. e. m. s. g. c. What four border on Vermont? c. s. e. c. What three on Maine? c. s. e. What two in the southern part? h. m. Which is the Shire Town of Cheshire county? k. & c. What lake in the northern part of Coos county? c. What river rises in it? c. What College in New Hampshire? [See page 69.] How many square miles has New Hampshire? When, where, and by whom was New Hampshire settled? How will you sail from Portsmouth to Burlington?

VERMONT.*

How is Vermont bounded? What is its Capital?

Vermont is a beautiful, picturesque, and inland state. It derives its name from the Green Mountains, which

*The word, Vermont, is derived from two French words, signifying Green Mountains—Verd, green, and Mont, mountain. The mountains were so called on account of the numerous evergreens with which they were covered. The soldiers from Vermont, so celebrated for bravery in the revolutionary war, were denominated "Green Mountain Boys."

extend through its whole length, dividing it into *eastern* and *western* declivities.

It is a well watered, healthy, and fertile state, and is noted for its mines of *iron*, *copper*, and *lead*, and for its numerous quarries of *marble*.

A large portion of the soil is fertile, and well adapted to grazing or tillage. Wheat is extensively cultivated on the west side of the mountains. Barley, rye, oats, peas, flax and potatoes, flourish in all parts of the state. Maple sugar is made in quantities nearly equal to the home consumption. Horses, cattle and sheep are raised in great numbers, and sold for New York, Boston and Montreal markets.



A View of Montpelier.

Chief Towns.—MONTPELIER is a beautiful and flourishing town, pleasantly situated on Onion river, 43 miles from its mouth.

Bennington is the oldest, and one of the largest towns in the state. It is celebrated for a battle fought here in 1777; in which the Americans, under Gen. Stark, defeated a detachment from the army of Burgoyne.*

Burlington is pleasantly situated on Lake Champlain, and is the most commercial town in the state.

Middlebury, situated on Otter Creek, 20 miles from its mouth, is the greatest manufacturing town in the state.

Windsor is pleasantly situated on the Connecticut river, and is

* See Olney's History of the United States, page 148.

distinguished for its beautiful and picturesque scenery. It is well built, and has considerable trade.

Map of the United States.—What Lake between Vermont and New York? c. What river connects it with the St. Lawrence? s. What river forms the boundary between Vermont and New Hampshire? What Mountains in Vermont? What is the length of the Green Mountains? How high are they?

MAP OF THE EASTERN STATES.

Which are the five principal rivers in Vermont? c. m. l. o. o. c. What thirteen counties has Vermont? w. w. o. c. e. o. f. c. a. r. b. w. and Grand Isle. [Grand Isle county embraces Grand Island, and the peninsula in the northern part of Lake Champlain.] What five counties border on Connecticut river? What three counties border on Lower Canada? What five on Lake Champlain and New York? What two on Massachusetts? What one in the interior? Which is the Shire Town of Windham County? n. & c. What Colleges in Vermont, and where are they located? How many square miles has Vermont? When, by whom, and where was Vermont settled? What is the length of Lake Champlain? What small Lake in New York, south of Lake Champlain? How is Lake Champlain connected with the Hudson? What is the length of the Champlain and the Hudson Canal? [See page 66.] How will you sail from Brattleborough to Boston?

MASSACHUSETTS.



A View of Boston.

How is Massachusetts bounded? What is its Capital?

In agriculture, manufactures, and commerce, Massachusetts is one of the first states in the Union. It is distinguished for the number of its literary institutions, and for the intelligence, industry and enterprise of its inhabitants.

It is generally an uneven, and healthy state, and has a fertile soil, well adapted to pasturage or tillage.

Chief Towns.—Boston is a large, wealthy, and beautiful city, pleasantly situated on a small peninsula in Massachusetts Bay. It has an excellent harbor and an extensive commerce; and is noted for the elegance of its public buildings, and for the number of its humane and literary institutions.

Salem is a pleasant and flourishing town, 14 miles N. E. of Boston. In commerce, population and wealth, it is the third town in New England.

Plymouth, 36 miles S. E. of Boston, is a place of considerable trade, and is noted for being the first settled town in New England.



Landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth.

[The first English settlement in New England was made at Plymouth, Dec. 22d, 1620, by 101 *Puritans*, who fled from England on account of religious persecution. The anniversary of the landing of the Pilgrims is still observed.]

Worcester, situated 40 miles W. of Boston, in the midst of a fertile country, is the largest, and one of the most beautiful inland towns in New England. It contains many elegant buildings, and is a place of great wealth and trade.

Springfield is a beautiful and flourishing town, 87 miles W. of Boston. It contains a number of elegant public buildings, and a large United States' Army; and is distinguished for its extensive inland trade, and numerous manufacturing establishments.

Northampton is one of the most beautiful towns in New England. Lowell, on the Merrimack, is noted for its extensive manufactures, and the rapid increase of its population. Newburyport, at the mouth of the Merrimack, is remarkable for the beauty of its situation, and the regularity of its streets, and for its commerce. Marblehead and Gloucester are extensively engaged in the cod fisheries. Nantucket and New Bedford are largely concerned in the whale fisheries. Lynn, on the coast between Boston and Salem, is a pleasant and flourishing town, noted for the manufacturing of shoes. Pittsfield, Lenox and Stockbridge, are pleasant towns in the western part of the state.

Map of the United States.—What Bay east of Massachusetts? *m.* What three Capes has Massachusetts? What two Islands S. E. of Massachusetts? *m. n.* What river passes through Massachusetts? What river in the N. E. part? *m.* What is the length of the Merrimack?

MAP OF THE EASTERN STATES.

What three Bays on the coast of Massachusetts? *m. c. b.* Which is the largest river in Massachusetts? What two branches has the Connecticut on the west side? *w. d.* What one on the east? *c.* What river in the N. E. part? *m.* What considerable branch has the Merrimack? *n.* What canal connects the Merrimack river with Boston harbor? What is the length, width and depth of the Middlesex Canal? [See p. 66.] What river rises in the western part of the state, and passes through Connecticut into Long Island Sound? *n.* What fourteen Counties has Massachusetts? *e. f. b. n. e. m. w. f. b. n. h.* Suffolk, Duke's and Nantucket. [Suffolk county embraces the peninsula on which Boston is situated, and the small division N. of Boston harbor; Duke's county embraces Martha's Vineyard; and Nantucket county, the island of Nantucket.] What Mountains in the western part of Massachusetts? *h.* What Mountain near Northampton? *r.* What literary institutions has Massachusetts? When was Harvard University incorporated? How large is its library? How will you sail from Boston to Providence?

RHODE ISLAND.

How is Rhode Island bounded? What is its Capital?

Rhode Island is a small, pleasant and healthy state; and is distinguished for its flourishing manufactures, and extensive commerce.



Manufactures and Commerce.

It is mostly a level state, and has generally a fertile soil, especially on the islands and shores of Narraganset Bay.

Rhode Island, from which the state takes its name, is in the southern part of Narraganset bay, and contains about 50 square miles. It is celebrated for its delightful and healthy climate, and is a noted resort of invalids from various parts of the United States.

Chief Towns.—PROVIDENCE is situated on Providence river at the head of Narraganset bay, 35 miles from the ocean. It is one of the most wealthy and flourishing towns of its size in the United States. It has an extensive commerce, and is distinguished for the extent and variety of its manufactures.

Newport is finely situated on Rhode Island, and is distinguished for its beautiful situation, and the salubrity of its climate. It has considerable commerce, and one of the best harbors in the United States.

Bristol is a pleasant, wealthy, and commercial town, situated about half way between Providence and Newport.

Pawtucket, situated on Pawtucket Falls, 4 miles N. E. of Provi.

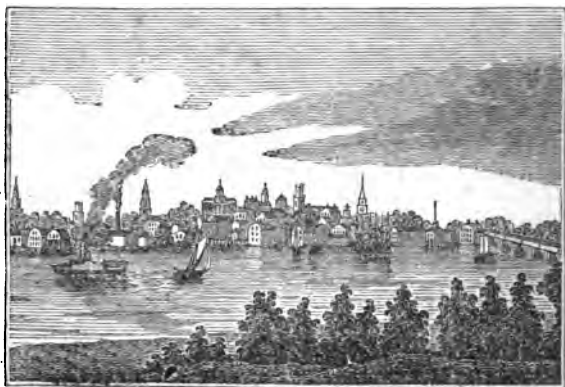
dence, is one of the most flourishing manufacturing villages in the United States.

Map of the United States.—What Island S. of Rhode Island? **B.** What Bay in Rhode Island? **N.** What Island in the southern part of Narraganset bay? **R-I.** In what direction is Providence from Hartford? Boston? Albany? How far from Providence is Boston? Hartford? New York? Philadelphia? Washington?

MAP OF THE EASTERN STATES.

What five Counties in Rhode Island? **P. K. W.** Newport and Bristol. [Newport county embraces Rhode Island and several other islands in Narraganset bay, and that portion of the state east of the bay. Bristol county embraces the small portion of the state N. of Narraganset bay.] Which is the Shire Town of Providence county? **P. & C.** Between what two points does Narraganset bay open into the Atlantic? **J.** and Seakonnet point on the east. What is the length of Narraganset Bay? What University in Rhode Island? When was it incorporated? How large is its library? When, where, and by whom was Rhode Island settled? What Canal connects Providence and Worcester? **B.** [See page 66.]. What is the length of Blackstone canal? How will you sail from Providence to Hartford?

CONNECTICUT.



View of Hartford.

How is Connecticut bounded? What are its Capitals?

Connecticut is a small, healthy and fertile state, and is noted for the extent and variety of its manufactures; for its literary institutions, and for the intelligence, enterprise, and good morals of the people.

Connecticut has generally an uneven surface, and abounds in beautiful scenery.

It is well situated for commerce, and carries on a considerable trade with the West Indies, and with the Northern and Southern States.

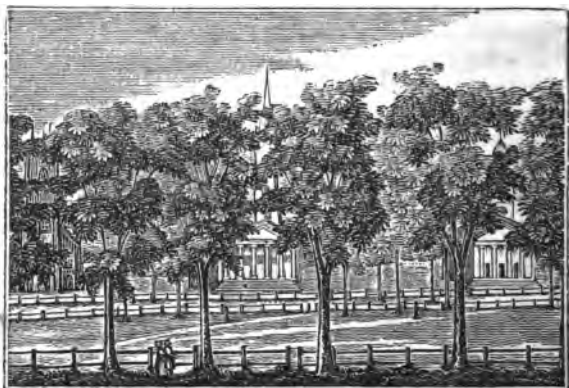
In proportion to its population, Connecticut is more extensively engaged in manufactures than any other state except Rhode Island. The ingenuity and industry of the people, in this respect, have a reputation throughout the Union. At Middletown are manufactories of cotton, woollen, paper, combs, rifles, &c. At Tariffville, are manufactories of cotton and carpeting. At Norwich, are manufactories of flannel, cotton, leather, paper and iron. At Manchester and Vernon, there are extensive cotton manufactories. At Canton, is a celebrated manufactory of axes. At Enfield, is a manufactory of carpets. Hartford is distinguished for the manufacture of books, chiefly for education. There are also in different parts of the state, extensive manufactories of hats, clocks, combs, block tin ware, and other things. Considerable attention is paid to the culture and manufacture of silk, at Mansfield, Hartford and other places, and the increasing attention that is paid to it, renders it probable that in a few years it will become an important branch of industry.

Connecticut is more amply provided with the means of common education than any other state in the Union, and in no part of the world are the useful branches of education more generally understood. The School Fund belonging to the state amounts to more than two millions of dollars. The income of this fund is appropriated by the constitution of the state, to the support of primary schools, and is divided among the different towns in proportion to the number of children between 4 and 16 years of age. In March, 1837, the number of children was eighty-three thousand, three hundred and fifty-nine. The amount of money distributed at that time was ninety-five thousand, eight hundred and sixty-two dollars and eighty-five cents.

Chief Towns.—HARTFORD is pleasantly situated on the Connecticut River, 50 miles from its mouth, in the midst of a beautiful and fertile country. During a few years past, it has rapidly increased in commerce, population and wealth. It contains a number of elegant public buildings; among which are several beautiful churches, a state house, and market.

NEW HAVEN is pleasantly situated on a bay of the same name, 4 miles from Long Island Sound. It is built in squares, with wide and

handsome streets, and is not excelled in beauty by any town in the United States. One of the squares is occupied by the state house, the college buildings, several churches and other edifices, which, with rows of elm trees surrounding the spot, render it one of the most beautiful places in the country. The commerce of New Haven is



Public Square, or Green, in New Haven.

considerable, and is yearly increasing. In addition to Yale College, the city is celebrated for the number of its boarding schools and smaller seminaries for the young of both sexes. Hartford and New Haven are the alternate places for the meeting of the state legislature.

New London is situated on the Thames, 3 miles from its mouth. It has a considerable amount of shipping, and one of the best harbors in New England.

Norwich is finely situated at the head of sloop navigation on the river Thames, 14 miles N. of New London. It is a beautiful and romantic town, and is rapidly increasing in manufactures and population.

Middletown is pleasantly situated on the Connecticut, 31 miles from its mouth. It has a considerable share of commerce, and is noted for the extent and variety of its manufactures.

Litchfield is 30 miles west of Hartford, in the midst of a fertile and hilly country. The principal village is delightfully situated on an elevated plain, affording extensive and beautiful prospects.

Wethersfield is a pleasant town, noted for the State Prison. Saybrook and Guilford are resorted to in summer, for sea bathing. Stamford is distinguished for its iron works and mineral waters. Berlin and Meriden are celebrated for the manufacture of tin-ware. Brim-

tol, Plymouth, Watertown and Waterbury, for the making of wooden clocks. Danbury for the manufacture of hats. Farmington is a beautiful town. Suffield is noted for the Baptist Literary Institution established there; and Windsor for being the first settled town in Connecticut.

Map of the United States.—Which is the largest river in Connecticut? What is its length? How far is it from Hartford to Providence? Boston? Portland? St. Louis? How many square miles has Connecticut? [See page 60.] What is the length of Long Island Sound?

MAP OF THE EASTERN STATES.

Which are the three largest Rivers in Connecticut? H. C. T. What branch has the Housatonic? N. What branch has the Connecticut? F. What two rivers unite at Norwich and form the Thames? * A. The Shetucket and Yantic? What eight Counties has Connecticut? L. H. T. W. N-L. M. N-H. F. What four are bounded N. by Massachusetts? L. H. T. W. What two are bounded E. by Rhode Island? W. N-L. What four border on L. I. Sound? N-L. M. N-H. F. What two are bounded west by New York? F. L. What five towns in Fairfield county? D. S. E. F. N. Which are the two Shire Towns? F. D. What large Island south of Connecticut? To what state does it belong? A. To New York? What five towns on Long Island? What Island east of it? What small Islands S. of Connecticut? F. G. P. What Canal in Connecticut? F. What is its length? What literary institutions has Connecticut? When, where, and by whom was Connecticut settled? How will you sail from Hartford to Albany?

TRAVELS ON THE MAP OF THE EASTERN STATES.

How will you sail from Hartford to Portland? What is the population of Portland? For what is Portland noted? What is meant by commerce? A. The exchanging of the goods or productions of one country for those of another. For what is Maine distinguished? What is the chief occupation of the inhabitants of Maine? How will you sail from Portland to Concord?

For what is New Hampshire noted? For what is it distinguished? What do you mean by *agriculture*? A. The cultivation of the ground to raise various kinds of grain and vegetables. What is meant by *Manufactures*? A. Making things by the hand or machinery, as cloth, paper, knives, &c. What mountains in New Hampshire? How will you sail from Concord to Windsor?

*Thames.

How will you describe Vermont? For what is Vermont noted. What Mountains in Vermont? Which is the oldest settled town in Vermont? For what is Bennington celebrated? Which is the greatest manufacturing town in Vermont? Which is the most commercial town? How will you sail from Windsor to Boston?

How will you describe Massachusetts? For what is Massachusetts distinguished? Which is the oldest settled town in Massachusetts? How many years since Plymouth was settled? What is the population of Boston? When was Boston settled? A. In 1624. How many years since? For what is Boston noted? How will you sail from Boston to Providence?

For what is Rhode Island distinguished? What large Island in the southern part of Narraganset Bay? For what is Rhode Island celebrated? What large Town is situated on Rhode Island? For what is Newport distinguished? In what direction from Newport is Providence? What is the population of Providence? For what is Providence distinguished? How will you sail from Providence to Hartford.

For what is Connecticut noted? What is the population of Hartford? When was Hartford settled? A. In 1635. How many years since? What literary institutions in Hartford? How will you sail from Hartford to New Haven? Describe New Haven. What College in New Haven? What Canal in Connecticut? How will you sail from New Haven to Albany?

MIDDLE STATES.

Which are the Middle States? How many of them border on the Atlantic? Which one has no sea-coast? What lake borders on Pennsylvania? Which is the most northern of these states? Which is the most southern? Which extends farthest east? Which extends farthest west? Which is the largest of these states? How many square miles has Pennsylvania? Which is the next largest? How many square miles has New York? Which is the smallest of the Middle States? Which is most thickly inhabited, or has the greatest number of inhabitants to a square mile? How many inhabitants to a square mile has New York? What large island belongs to New York? Which of these states is longest? Which is most nearly square? Which is most irregular in its shape? The Middle States contain 102,600 square miles, how much larger are they than the Eastern States?



Commerce and Inland Navigation.

The Middle States occupy an important section of our country. They are distinguished for agriculture, manufactures, and commerce, and for their numerous and extensive canals and railroads.

In general, the soil is fertile, and the climate mild and healthy. Wheat is the most important production; but rye, oats, barley, Indian corn, buckwheat, beans, flax and hemp are raised in large quantities. The climate is peculiarly adapted to the growth of various kinds of excellent fruit. Apples, pears, peaches, &c. are produced in abundance.

These states are rich in minerals. Iron is found in most parts. Copper, lead, limestone and marble exist to some extent; but the most important mineral is anthracite coal. In no part of the world is this valuable material found so abundantly as in Pennsylvania. Bituminous coal is found in large quantities in the vicinity of Pittsburg. Salt springs are numerous, especially in New York. The most noted are those of Salina near Onondaga lake. The quantity of salt made at that place in 1830, was one million, four hundred and thirty bushels.

The enlightened zeal which the state of New York has shown in promoting education, is deserving of the highest praise. Common schools are established and supported by law in every town, and ample provision is made for the education of all classes of society. Besides the common schools, there are about one hundred academies and high schools. All the public literary institutions of New York are united in one body, under the name of the University, and are under the superintendence of a body of literary men, called "the Regents of the University of New York."

In Pennsylvania, considerable has been done for the establishment and support of common schools, and many parts of the state are well supplied with the means of elementary instruction.

In New Jersey and Delaware, public attention has been turned to the subject of common schools, and exertions have recently been made for their establishment in every town.

NEW-YORK.



New-York.

How is New York bounded? What is its Capital?

In population, wealth and political importance, New York is the first state in the Union. Its territory is extensive and fertile; and it is remarkable for the rapid growth of its cities, towns and villages.

Its natural advantages for agriculture, commerce

and manufactures, are unrivalled. Indeed, it abounds in all that constitutes the prosperity of a people. It has taken the lead in internal improvements, and is distinguished for its numerous canals and railroads; for its navigable rivers and lakes; and for the industry, intelligence and enterprise of its inhabitants.

New York produces in abundance all the staple commodities and luxuries common to the climate. The principal of these is wheat. It is rich in minerals. Limestone, iron ore, marble, &c. are found in large quantities. There are numerous and valuable salt springs; the most important is at Salina, where more than a million of bushels are produced annually.

The mineral springs at Ballston and Saratoga are famous throughout the country. During the warm season, they are the resort of the sick, the gay, the fashionable, from various parts of the Union, and they give health to many, and pleasure to all who visit them.

The falls of Niagara, between lake Erie and lake Ontario, are the most stupendous cataract on the globe. The river is three quarters of a mile in width, and falls perpendicularly over a precipice in two



Niagara Falls.

columns, to the depth of about 160 feet. The shock causes the earth to tremble for a considerable distance; and a cloud of vapor rises over the spot which is sometimes seen 20 or 30 miles. During the summer and autumn, these falls are visited by persons from different parts of the world.

Cities and Towns.—ALBANY is situated on the west bank of the Hudson, 150 miles north of New York, near the head of tide water. In commerce, population and wealth, it is the second town in the state. It contains a handsome state house, and many other elegant buildings. It is a place of great trade, and is surrounded by a beautiful and populous country, and within a short distance are many thriving villages and towns.

New York is situated on New York or Manhattan island, about 16 miles from the Atlantic, at the junction of the Hudson and East rivers. It is the most populous city in America, and one of the first commercial places on the globe. The city is principally built of brick, and most of the buildings have a neat and many of them an elegant appearance. The finest street is Broadway, which traverses the whole city in a straight line from north to south, and is eighty feet in breadth. It is occupied chiefly by shops and elegant public buildings, and few streets in the world equal it for the splendor, bustle and fashion which it exhibits. The City Hall is one of the most



City Hall.

splendid edifices in the United States. It is 216 feet long, and 105 broad, constructed of white marble, at an expense of about half a million of dollars. The new Custom House, on the corner of Wall and Nassau streets, will, when completed, be one of the finest buildings in the Union. There is no city, perhaps in the world, which possesses greater advantages of situation than New York, both for internal and external commerce. It is here that merchants and traders resort from all quarters—from the shores of the Atlantic, the confines of the lakes, and the banks of the Mississippi, with a certainty that they can dispose of their own produce, and supply them-

selves with every article they require. It is here that strangers and travellers assemble as the place of departure to every part of the world. It is at present, and probably will long remain, in a great degree, the central point for the commerce of the United States.

Brooklyn, directly opposite to New York, on the west end of Long Island, has grown within a few years to an important city. It is rapidly increasing in population and trade. Its situation is high, and affords many pleasant sites overlooking New York city and bay. In the northeastern part, on a bay called the Wallabout, is the United States' Navy Yard.

Troy is beautifully situated on the east bank of the Hudson, 6 miles above Albany. It is regularly built, and contains many elegant buildings. It has considerable trade, and is distinguished for its manufactures.

Hudson is well situated for trade, 28 miles south of Albany, at the head of ship navigation on the Hudson. It is one of the most important places on the river, and is at present increasing in business and wealth.

Newburg, Poughkeepsie,* Catskill, Lansingburg and Schenectady, are flourishing and important places. Utica, 96 miles N. W. of Albany, is a thriving place with an extensive inland trade. It is regularly built, the streets are broad, straight and commodious. It is noted for its benevolent and literary institutions, and for the extensive manufactories in its vicinity. The city is nearly the geographical centre of the state.

Rochester, on the Genessee river, is a place of great trade and wealth, and of astonishingly rapid growth. It is well built, and its streets are handsome and regular. It stands on the Erie Canal, 7 miles from lake Ontario. It is noted for its manufactures, especially those of flour.

Buffalo is a beautiful and thriving place, at the junction of the Canal with lake Erie. It is the grand emporium of the lake commerce. Its harbor is thronged with steamboats and other vessels, and its streets with travellers, emigrants, and men of business. It is rapidly increasing in population and wealth.

Lockport is a flourishing place on the Canal, 65 miles W. of Rochester. Geneva occupies a fine situation on Seneca lake. Auburn, situated at the outlet of Owasco lake, is a flourishing village. Canandaigua, near the outlet of Canandaigua lake, is a place of considerable trade.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What River in the eastern part of New York? *n.* What is its principal branch? *m.* What three Rivers empty into Lake Ontario? *n. o. g.* What three Rivers in the southern part of the state? *s. a. d.*

* Po-kep'-se.

What three Towns on the east bank of the Hudson ? T. H. P. Where is the Military Academy of West Point ? What four Towns on the west bank of the Hudson ? N. K. C. A. What three Towns on the Mohawk ? S. U. R. What three Towns on Lake Champlain ? T. P. C. What two Towns on the St. Lawrence ? O. M. What Town at the mouth of Black river ? S. H. What Town at the mouth of Oswego river ? O. What Town on the Genessee river ? R. What Town on the Grand Canal west of Rochester ? L. What two Towns on Lake Erie ? B. D. What Town on the Alleghany river ? H. What Town on the Susquehannah ? B. What five Towns in the interior ? G. A. I. U. S. What four Colleges in New York, and where are they located ? What three Lakes border on New York, and which is the largest of the three ? Where are Saratoga Springs ? Where are Niagara Falls ? What Canal connects the Hudson with Lake Champlain ? A. Champlain and Hudson Canal ? What Towns at the extremities of the Grand Western Canal ? A. B. What is the length of the G. W. Canal ? How will you sail from Albany to Trenton.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE MIDDLE STATES.

What counties border on the Eastern States ? What counties border on Lower Canada ? On the river St. Lawrence ? On Lake Ontario ? On Niagara river ? On Lake Erie ? On Pennsylvania ? On New Jersey ? What counties in the interior ? How many counties has New York ? [Long Island is divided into three counties, viz. King's, Queen's and Suffolk. New York county embraces the island on which the city of New York is situated. Richmond county embraces Staten Island, south of the city of New York.] In what county is New York ? Albany ? &c.

NEW JERSEY.

How is New Jersey bounded ? What is its Capital ?

New Jersey is a small but interesting state. It is noted for its navigable rivers, canals, and railroads, and for its flourishing manufactures.

The face of the country is diversified. It is flat and sandy in the south ; uneven and hilly in the middle, and mountainous in the north. The central portions of the state are fertile, highly cultivated, and covered with handsome towns and villages.

New Jersey abounds in valuable garden vegeta-

bles, and in apples, pears, peaches, and other fruits of the finest quality, and it always finds a ready market for these in New York and Philadelphia.

The great thoroughfare between the northern and southern states passes through New Jersey, and the advantage which the state enjoys as it regards distance and facilities in transporting goods to market, are not exceeded by those of any district of equal extent in our country.

Towns.—TRENTON, situated at the head of tide waters on the Delaware, 30 miles N. of Philadelphia, is a handsome town, and a place of considerable trade and manufactures.

New Brunswick is pleasantly situated on the Raritan, 14 miles from its mouth. It is the most commercial town in the state.

Newark, on the Passaic, 9 miles W. of New York, is one of the most beautiful towns in the United States. It is distinguished for the manufacture of shoes and leather.

Princeton, 11 miles N. E. of Trenton, is situated on the great road between New York and Philadelphia. It is a pleasant town, and contains a number of elegant buildings.

Burlington is pleasantly situated on the Delaware river, 17 miles N. E. of Philadelphia. It is well built, and has considerable manufactures and trade.

Elizabethtown is situated on Elizabethtown creek, in the midst of a beautiful and fertile country. It contains several handsome buildings and has considerable commerce.

Patterson is situated on the Passaic river, 15 miles N. W. of New York. It is a flourishing town, and the seat of very important manufacturing establishments.

The Passaic Falls at this place, are the greatest curiosity in this state. The river is 40 yards wide, and falls perpendicularly 70 feet in one entire sheet, presenting a scene of singular beauty and grandeur.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What River separates New Jersey from Pennsylvania? What River forms part of the eastern boundary of New Jersey? *H.* What is the southern Cape of New Jersey? *N.* Which is the most northern Cape? *S. H.* What Harbors on the coast? What two Towns near New York city? *N. B.* Which is the most northern town? *P.* What Falls are there at Patterson? What town on Delaware Bay? *S.* What is the length of Delaware Bay? What literary institutions has New Jersey? When was New Jersey settled? How many square miles has New Jersey? [See page 60.] How will you sail from Trenton to Harrisburg?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE MIDDLE STATES.

How many Counties border on the Atlantic? On New York? On Delaware river? On Delaware Bay? What Counties in the interior of New Jersey? How many Counties in New Jersey? In what County is Trenton? Newark, &c.

PENNSYLVANIA.*



William Penn forming a Treaty with the Indians.

How is Pennsylvania bounded? Its Capital?

Pennsylvania is a large, healthy and fertile state, and is distinguished for its agriculture, manufactures and commerce; for its fine roads, bridges and canals, and for its extensive mines of coal. It enjoys a mild and agreeable climate, abounds in fruit, and may be

* The colony of Pennsylvania was founded in 1632, by William Penn, a distinguished philanthropist, belonging to the denomination of Friends. He obtained of Charles I. a grant of the territory now included in the state of Pennsylvania; but believing that this gave him no just right to the country, he purchased the territory of the Indians, whom he considered the just and lawful owners. Shortly after he planted his infant colony, he met the Indians under "the great elm tree," at Kensington, and entered into a treaty of peace, which remained uninterrupted for the space of 70 years.

regarded as one of the most important of the United States.

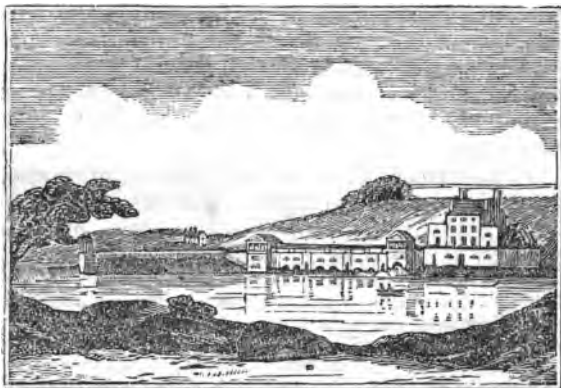
The middle portion of the state is mountainous; the remainder is generally level or moderately uneven. The soil is fertile, and under a high state of cultivation.

Pennsylvania is the greatest manufacturing state in the Union. All the necessities of life, and many of its luxuries, are to be found in this state, either the produce of its soil, or the labor of its citizens.

Pennsylvania abounds in all the elements of wealth and power. Public opinion has given it a strong impulse towards manufactures and a gigantic system of internal improvements. New towns and villages are springing up in every direction. Its inhabitants, though composed of all nations, are distinguished for their habits of order, industry and frugality. The passing stranger, as he traverses the state, is struck with the noble roads, canals, railroads, and other public works, with the well cultivated farms, their commodious houses of stone or brick, extensive barns and other buildings of the same materials.

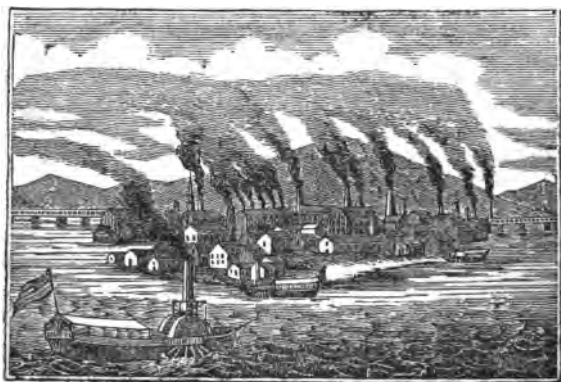
Towns.—HARRISBURG is pleasantly situated on the Susquehannah, 97 miles N. W. of Philadelphia. It is regularly laid out, and handsomely built. The state house occupies an elevation overlooking the town, and is a large and elegant building.

Philadelphia, in the extent, variety, and value of its manufactures, is the first city in the Union. It is pleasantly situated between the Delaware and Schuylkill, six miles above their confluence, and by the course of the river and bay, 126 miles from the ocean. Its commerce is very extensive, and ships of the line can sail up to the city. It is laid out in squares, and is probably the most regular and uniform city in the world. The streets are handsomely paved, broad, and pleasant, crossing each other at right angles, and kept remarkably clean. The houses are neatly built of brick, three stories high, ornamented with marble steps and window sills. The city is adorned with many handsome public as well as private dwellings. But the greatest pride of Philadelphia, is the Fair Mount water works, by which the city is supplied with pure and wholesome water from the Schuylkill.



Fair Mount Water Works.

Philadelphia is celebrated as a seat of literature, and especially of medical science, and is distinguished for its religious and benevolent institutions. It contains numerous schools and seminaries of learning, and by the will of the late Stephen Gerard, a large sum was left to found and support a college for the education of the poorer classes in society.



Pittsburg.

Pittsburg is situated at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela, 300 miles N. W. of Philadelphia. It is one of the greatest manufacturing towns in the United States, and is the centre of an extensive trade. In general, the town is well built, but the use of pit coal in the houses and manufactories, gives it a dingy and disagreeable appearance, from its dust and smoke. Its growth has been remarkably rapid, and it is noted for its brass and iron foundries, glass works, and for its inexhaustible mines of coal. By means of the Ohio, it has an easy communication with the Western States and New Orleans, and at the point where the two rivers unite, may be seen a crowd of steamboats which are occupied in plying between this and the various towns below.

Lancaster, 62 miles from Philadelphia, is a pleasant, flourishing, and wealthy town, and is regarded as one of the handsomest in the Middle States. It is surrounded by a rich and highly cultivated country, and carries on a large trade with the interior.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What river forms the eastern boundary of Pennsylvania? What two branches has the Delaware? [A. The Lehigh and Schuylkill, L. and S. on the map.] What river passes nearly through the middle of the state? What two branches has the Susquehanna? [The most southern one is Juniata, marked J.] What rivers unite and form the Ohio? What town on the Delaware, in the northeastern part of the state? At the junction of what two rivers is Easton? L. D. At the junction of what two is Philadelphia? S. D. What town between Philadelphia and Harrisburg? What five towns on the Susquehanna? H. S. N. W. M. What town on the west branch? W. What town on the Juniata? H. What three towns directly W. of Philadelphia? Y. C. B. What town S. W. of Harrisburg? C. At the junction of what two rivers is Pittsburg? In what direction from Pittsburg is Greensburg? Washington? What two towns on the branches of the Alleghany? J. M. What town on Lake Erie? E. Which is the most N. E. town in Pennsylvania? D. Which is the most S. E. town? F. Which is the most S. W. town? W. Which is the most N. W.? E. What is the length of the Susquehanna? Delaware? Alleghany? Monongahela? What Mountains pass through Pennsylvania? A. How far is it from New York to Philadelphia? From Philadelphia to Washington? What Colleges has Pennsylvania and where are they located? In what direction from Philadelphia is Washington? New York? Detroit? New Orleans? How will you sail from Harrisburg to Dover?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE MIDDLE STATES.

What County borders on Lake Erie? What Counties border on New York? On the Delaware river? On Delaware? On Maryland? On Virginia? On Ohio? What Counties in the interior?

How many Counties has Pennsylvania ? Mention the Shire Town of each County. In what County is Philadelphia ? Harrisburg ?

DELAWARE.



Deep Cut of the Chesapeake and Delaware Canal.

How is Delaware bounded ? What is its Capital ?

Delaware is the least populous state in the Union, and the smallest in extent, except Rhode Island.

The northern part of the state is generally hilly, and has a fertile soil ; the southern part is level, and unproductive. The commerce of Delaware is small ; but its manufactures are considerable.

Wheat is extensively raised in this state, and the flour made here is of a superior quality. The flour mills, near Wilmington, on the Brandywine, are the best and most celebrated in the United States.

The Chesapeake and Delaware Canal crosses the northern part of this state, uniting the two bays. It begins at Delaware City, 46 miles below Philadelphia, and passes westerly 14 miles to Rock-Creek, a navigable branch of Elk river. It is traversed by steam boats, packets and merchant vessels. The Deep Cut is a passage through a hill 4 miles long and 90 feet in height, being the deepest

cut of any canal in the world. The Summit Bridge which crosses the canal at this place, is a single arch 255 feet in length.



Chesapeake and Delaware Canal.

Towns.—DOVER is situated on Jones' Creek, 7 miles from its entrance into Delaware Bay.

Wilmington is situated in the northern part of the state, between Christiana and Brandywine creeks, 1 mile above their confluence. It is the largest and most important town in the state, and is celebrated for its flour mills and other manufacturing establishments.

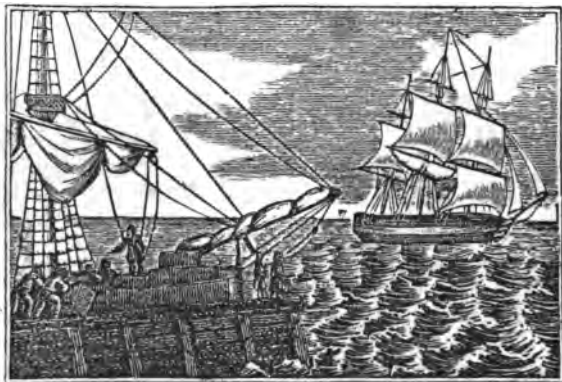
MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

How many square miles has Delaware? Which is the most northern Town in Delaware? w. What Town south of Wilmington? n.c. What Cape has Delaware? n. In what direction from Dover is Washington? New York? Richmond? Harrisburg? Hartford? What is the length of Delaware Bay? What Canal connects Delaware and Chesapeake Bays? [See page 66.] What is the length? How will you sail from Dover to Annapolis?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE MIDDLE STATES.

How many Counties has Delaware? What county embraces the northern part? What county embraces the southern part? What county embraces the middle part? Mention the Shire Town of each county.

SOUTHERN STATES.

*Exports.*

Which are the Southern States? How many are there? Which is the most northern of the Southern States? Which is the most western? How many of them border on the Atlantic? Which is the largest of the Southern States? Which is the smallest? What territory is included in the Southern States?

The Southern States, in extent of territory, far surpass the Eastern or Middle States, and are distinguished for their valuable productions, numerous slaves, and for the amount of their exports.

The *eastern* part of the Southern States, varying from 60 to 200 miles in breadth, is a low, sandy plain, and generally barren, except near the rivers and bays. This section abounds in pine forests, and is usually termed "the Pine Barrens." The *interior* is hilly and mountainous, and has a rich and productive soil. The climate, in the eastern part, is warm and unhealthy; in the interior it is mild and salubrious.

Wheat, tobacco, and Indian corn are the principal productions in the northern part; rice, cotton, and sugar in the southern; and pitch, tar, turpentine, and lumber in the eastern part.

The middle and western portions of these states are inhabited principally by farmers, who have few slaves and small estates, depending principally on their own labor for support. The eastern part, or low country, is occupied by planters. These live on large plantations, at a considerable distance from each other, and are supported by the labor of their slaves. They are usually well informed, polite, and remarkably hospitable. Their incomes are large, and they have much leisure to indulge in amusements. Hunting and dancing are favorite diversions, and music is cultivated with much diligence and success. The women are generally well educated, and usually possess refined manners and cultivated minds. Education however, is less generally diffused in the southern than in the northern states, and there is less of intellectual activity and of the spirit of enterprise and improvement.

The most important mineral found in the Southern States is gold. In 1831, there were coined at the mint of the United States, 518,000 dollars from the gold region of the Southern States. Of this amount of gold, 26,000 dollars were received from Virginia—294,000 dollars from North Carolina—22,000 dollars from South Carolina—and 176,000 dollars from Georgia. Gold has likewise been found in Alabama. Coal and iron are found in various parts, but more abundant in Virginia than in any other of the Southern States.

MARYLAND.

How is Maryland bounded? What is its Capital?

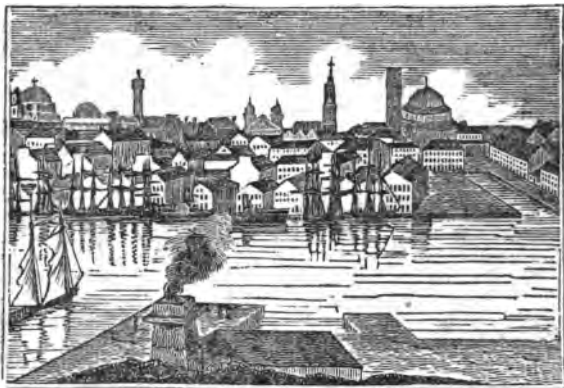
Maryland, considering its extent and population, is one of the first commercial states in the Union. It is well watered by rivers emptying into Chesapeake bay, affording numerous facilities for inland navigation. In addition to these, the state is largely engaged in internal improvements. When these are completed, Baltimore will be one of the most favorable positions for foreign and domestic commerce in the United States.

The soil is well adapted to the growth of all sorts of grain, and a great variety of fruits. Its exports of flour and other bread stuffs, are immense. The staple production is tobacco.

It is divided into two parts by Chesapeake bay, called the *eastern* and *western* shore. The *eastern*

part is generally level ; the *western* part is hilly and mountainous.

Towns.—ANNAPOLIS is a handsome and regular city, pleasantly situated on the Severn river, two miles from its entrance into Chesapeake bay.



A View of Baltimore.

Baltimore is situated on the Patapsco river, 14 miles from its entrance into Chesapeake bay. It has an extensive commerce, both foreign and inland, and may be considered the best flour market in the world. It is divided by a small river into two parts, called the Town and Fell's Point. The latter is the principal seat of commercial business. It is finely built, chiefly of brick, and the streets are neatly paved. It contains many handsome buildings, and two splendid marble monuments—one to the memory of Washington—the other to the memory of those who fell in the battle of North Point, in 1814. The city has had a rapid growth, and is distinguished for the amount of its shipping.

Frederick is pleasantly situated 42 miles W. of Baltimore, in a fruitful tract of country, and is well built. It has a considerable trade in flour and grain.

Hagerstown is a flourishing place, and has considerable inland trade.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

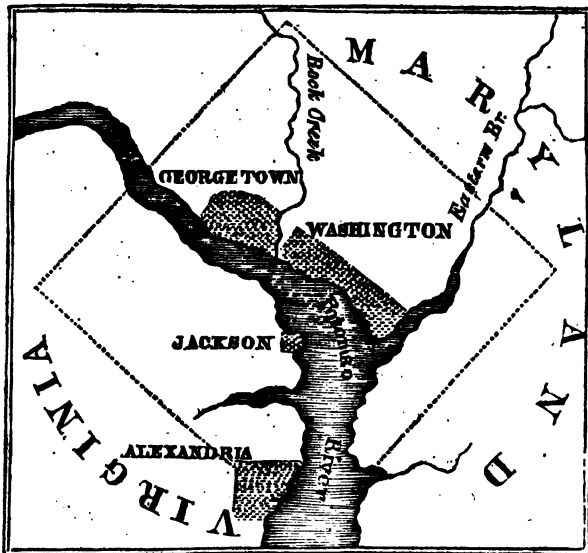
What Bay divides Maryland ? What is the length of Chesapeake Bay ? How does Chesapeake Bay compare in length with the Gulf of Mexico ? Lake Michigan ? What river empties into the head of Chesapeake Bay ? What river separates Maryland from Virginia ?

How is Annapolis situated? How is Baltimore situated? What two towns N. W. of Baltimore? F. H. What town in the southern part on the Potomac? What Mountains pass through Maryland? What Colleges in this state? How many square miles has Maryland? When, where and by whom was Maryland settled? What Canal connects the Delaware and Chesapeake Bays? What is its length? [See page 66.] How will you sail from Annapolis to Washington?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE MIDDLE STATES.

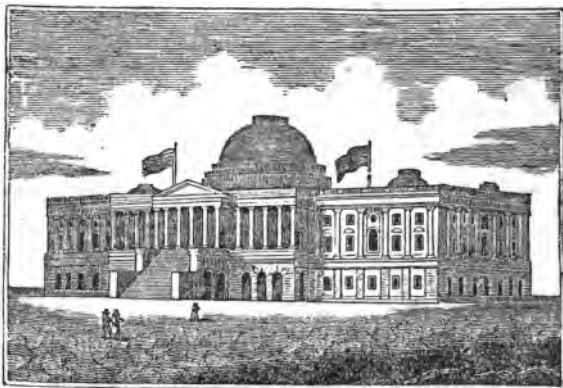
What Counties border on Pennsylvania? On Delaware? On the Potomac river? How many counties east of Chesapeake Bay? How many counties west of Chesapeake Bay? How many counties has Maryland? Mention the shire towns of each county? In what county is Baltimore? Annapolis, &c.

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.



The District of Columbia is ten miles square, delightfully situated on both sides of the Potomac.

The land is finely elevated, and beautifully diversified by hill and dale. It is not a state, but is under the immediate government of Congress. The territory of this district was given to the United States by Maryland and Virginia, in 1790, for the purposes of a national capital, and in 1800 it became the seat of the general government.



United States Capitol.

WASHINGTON, the capital of the United States, is situated on the Potomac, 300 miles, by the course of the river and bay, from the ocean. The city is laid out on a regular plan, and when completed, will be one of the most beautiful and commodious cities on the globe. The Capitol, for the meetings of Congress, is situated on capitol square, at the head of Pennsylvania avenue, and commands a delightful view of the city and surrounding country. It is constructed of free-stone, and composed of a centre and two wings. The length of the whole is 350 feet; depth of the wings, 121 feet; height to the top of the dome, 120 feet. The Senate chamber, in the north wing, is a semi-circle of 74 feet in length, and 42 in height. The Representatives' chamber, in the south wing, is also a semi-circle, 95 feet in length and 60 in height. About a mile and a half west of the Capitol, is the President's house, an elegant structure of free-stone, two stories high, with a lofty basement, 180 feet long by 85 wide. Near

It are four elegant brick buildings, occupied by the Secretaries or Heads of Departments.

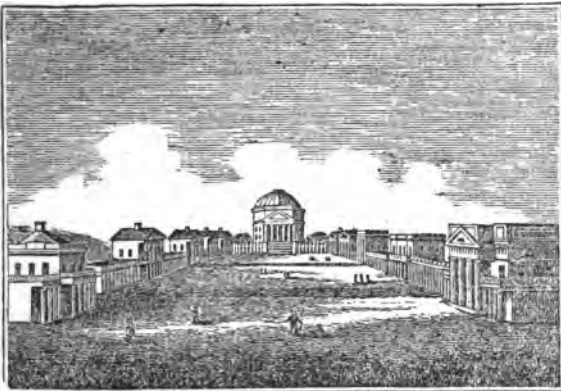
[In August, 1814, Washington was taken by the British, under General Ross, who set fire to the Capitol, President's house, and the public offices. They were soon re-built however, with great splendor. The library of Congress was burnt at this time, and that of Mr. Jefferson was subsequently purchased to replace it.]

Alexandria is situated on the west bank of the Potomac, 6 miles south of Washington. It has an extensive trade, principally in flour. It is a pleasant, regular and well built city.

Georgetown is situated on the Potomac, 3 miles west of Washington. It is a handsome town, and has a considerable trade.

How many square miles in the District of Columbia? What Colleges in the District of Columbia? What cities in the District of Columbia? How far is Hartford from Washington? Philadelphia? New York? New Orleans? Boston? Portland? In what direction from Washington are we? How far is Washington from the Atlantic? Georgetown? How long since Washington became the seat of the General Government.

VIRGINIA.



University of Virginia.

How is Virginia bounded? What is its Capital?

Virginia is the largest, and one of the most powerful and populous states in the Union.

It is divided by the Blue Ridge into two parts. The *western* part is hilly and mountainous; the *eastern* is generally level.

The climate near the coast is hot and unhealthy in the summer; in the *interior* and *western* parts, it is cool and salubrious.

Wheat, tobacco, and corn, are the most valuable productions, and are important articles of commerce.

The Natural Bridge over Cedar Creek, is one of the greatest natural curiosities in the world. It is about 100 feet in length, 60 feet wide, and 250 feet above the surface of the water.

Towns.—RICHMOND is pleasantly situated at the Falls on James river, 150 miles from its mouth. The town rises gradually from the water, and has a fine, picturesque appearance. Most of the houses are of brick, and many of them are elegant. Its public buildings are very commodious. The capitol is built upon an eminence, and has a commanding and delightful prospect. It has good schools, and convenient houses of public worship for many religious denominations. Its inland, coasting, and foreign trade are extensive, and increasing. It has flourishing manufactures, and by means of the river and canals, the city is connected with a rich and highly cultivated back country, abounding in wheat, corn, hemp, tobacco and coal.

Norfolk, the principal sea-port in the state, is situated on Elizabeth river, 8 miles from its entrance into Hampton Roads. Its harbor is good, and it has more foreign commerce than any other town in the state.

Yorktown, situated on York river, 11 miles from its mouth, is famous for the capture of Lord Cornwallis and his army, 19th October, 1781.*

Mount Vernon is situated on the Potomac, 9 miles below Alexandria. It is memorable for having been the residence of Gen. Washington.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

Does any part of Virginia lie on the east side of Chesapeake Bay? What two Rivers rise in Virginia and empty into Albemarle Sound? R. C. What four rivers empty into Chesapeake Bay? J. Y. R. P. What branch has the Potomac? S. What four rivers empty into the Ohio? M. L. K. G. K. E. S. What mountains in Virginia? What is the most eastern ridge called? B. What two towns on the James river? R. L. What town on the Appomattox, a branch of the James river? P.

* See Olney's History of the United States, page 176

What is the principal seaport in Virginia? *m.* How is it situated? Where is Yorktown, and for what is it celebrated? What place near York river? *w.* What town on the Rappahannoc? *r.* What four towns among the mountains? *w. s. l. e.* What town on the Monongahela? *m.* What town at the mouth of the Great Kanhawa? *r.-p.* What two towns on the Great Kanhawa? *c. e.* What town on a branch of the Roanoke? *m.* What two towns on the head branches of the Tennessee River? *r. a.* What town on the peninsula between the Chesapeake Bay and the Atlantic? *d.* What two capes has Virginia? What colleges has Virginia? What is the length of James river? Rappahannoc? What canal connects Chesapeake Bay with Albemarle Sound? How will you sail from Richmond to Newbern?

MAP OF THE MIDDLE STATES.

What Counties east of Chesapeake Bay? In what County is Cape Charles? Cape Henry? In what County is Richmond? What Swamp partly in Virginia and partly in North Carolina? What Canal extends partly through this swamp and unites Chesapeake Bay and Albemarle Sound? What is the eastern range of mountains called? Do any of the rivers in Virginia pass through the Blue Ridge? What did Mr. Jefferson say of the passage of the Potomac through the Blue Ridge at Harper's Ferry? *A.* He said it was worth a voyage across the Atlantic to see this beautiful and stupendous scene. How many Counties can you mention in Virginia? Which is the most northern County of Virginia? [See map of the Western States.] Which is the most southwestern County? Which is the most southeastern County?

NORTH CAROLINA.

How is North Carolina bounded? Its Capital?

North Carolina is a large state, and is noted for its agricultural productions. It exhibits great diversity of surface, soil, and climate. The country for more than sixty miles from the coast, is a low plain with many inlets and swamps from the sea. This is called the low country, and abounds in pine forests.

The interior is uneven and is healthy and productive, and is the most populous part of the state. The western part is mountainous, and remarkable for the purity of its air.

The productions of North Carolina are various. Wheat, rye, barley, oats and flax are cultivated. Indian corn is abundant throughout the whole state; and cotton is raised in considerable quantities. Tobacco, rice, and sweet potatoes abound, and the soil and climate are favorable to the growth of the grape and mulberry.

The coast is lined with sand banks and islands which render access to the bays and sounds extremely difficult. Its commerce is chiefly carried on through the seaports of the neighboring states. The exports are *rice*,* *cotton*, *tobacco*, *pitch*, *tar*, *turpentine* and *lumber*.

North Carolina abounds in iron ore, and is remarkable for its rich mines of gold. The region containing these, embraces an extent of 1000 square miles in this state, and reaches from Virginia across the centre of the state through South Carolina and Georgia, into Alabama. The mines in North Carolina occupy above 20,000 men.



Gold Mines.

*The cultivation of rice is necessarily limited to lands that admit of being overflowed; to swamps on bays, creeks and rivers, overflowed by the tide, and to inland swamps with reservoirs of water. Inland plantations yield from 600 to 1,500 pounds of clean rice per acre; tide planta-

There are a great number of mills for grinding. They are driven by steam and water. In some instances, the gold is found in pure particles in the sand; in other parts it is found in mines, or in the form of ore. It usually exists in small grains, but is sometimes found in lumps of one or two pounds weight.

Towns.—**RALEIGH** is a handsome town, and is pleasantly situated near the central part of the state.

Newbern is the largest town in the state, and has a considerable share of commerce.

Wilmington is the most commercial town in the state. It is situated on Cape Fear river, 36 miles from its mouth.

The towns in this state are small, the inhabitants living mostly on their plantations.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

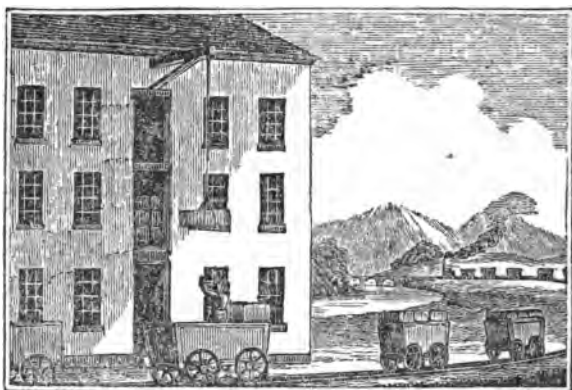
What three Capes has North Carolina? *H. L. F.* What two Sounds? What is the length of Albemarle sound? Pamlico sound? What are the rivers of North Carolina? *G. P. L. P. C. I. N. P. R. C.* What river rises in the N. W. part of the state and empties into the Ohio? *G. K.* What place in the N. E. part of the state? *E. C.* What town on Albemarle sound, at the mouth of the Chowan? *E.* What town on the Roanoke? *H.* What town on Pamlico river? *W.* What two towns on the Neuse? *N. H.* What town near Raleigh? *C. H.* What three towns on Cape Fear river? *F. A. W.* What two towns on the branches of the G. Pedee? *S. S.* What town W. of Fayetteville? *C.* What town in the western part of the state? *M.* What springs near the borders of Tennessee? *W. S.* What seaport on Core Sound, S. E. of Newbern? *R.* What college in North Carolina? How will you sail from Newbern to Columbia?

tions from 1,200 to 1,500, and the best as high as 2,400 per acre. Rice is sown in tide lands about the 20th of March; and inland swamps about the second week of April. The land is previously turned up with the plough or hoe, and then drilled by the same instrument into trenches. In these the rice is sown from one to two bushels per acre. The tide planters then flow the fields with water, keeping it on from two to four days. This kills the worm, and starts the grain, which appears five or six days afterwards. It is commonly hoed three times during its growth, and in the second hoeing, the grass is picked up by the hand from the trenches, and the rice is then overflowed from ten to twenty days. As the water is gradually drawn off, the plants branch, and on the number of branches depends the size of the crop; each branch producing one ear of from 100 to 300 grains. Three months after sowing, it begins to joint, blossom, and form the ear. It is then overflowed till harvest, which commences in the end of August near the sea, and in September is general through the state. Rice was introduced into Carolina from Madagascar, in 1693.

† *Raw's* la.

MIDDLE AND SOUTHERN STATES.

Should you think North Carolina was favorably situated for commerce? Why not? Through what inlets must vessels pass to enter the sounds? For what is the state noted? How is its commerce chiefly carried on? Which is the most northeastern county? In what county is Raleigh? Newbern? Wilmington? How many counties can you mention in North Carolina? Which is the most southwestern county? Southern county?

SOUTH CAROLINA.

Charleston and Hamburg Railroad.

How is South Carolina bounded? Its Capital?

South Carolina is distinguished among the Southern States, for the opulence of her planters, the intelligence and refinement of her citizens, and for her internal improvements, and amount of exports.

The coast, for about 100 miles from the sea, is low, flat, sandy and unhealthy. The rivers are bordered with marshes, in which are produced large crops of rice.

The interior is beautifully diversified with hills and

dales, and has a rich, fertile soil. The western part is mountainous, and has a cool and healthy climate.

The staple productions are cotton and rice, of which large quantities are annually exported. The culture of these is so profitable that wheat, corn, and other grains, are almost neglected. Tobacco thrives well. The fruits which flourish best are pears, pomegranates, water melons, figs, apricots, nectarines, almonds, olives, apples, peaches and oranges.

Towns.—COLUMBIA is pleasantly situated on the Congaree, near the centre of the state. It is regularly laid out, on an elevated plain.

Charleston is situated on a point of land at the junction of Ashley and Cooper rivers, seven miles from the ocean. It is the principal market for the products of this state as well as a considerable portion of North Carolina. The plan of the city is regular, and many of the streets are handsome. Most of the houses are furnished with three piazzas to each story. It contains many elegant edifices, and its citizens are characterized by hospitality, gayety, and politeness.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What are the rivers of South Carolina? s. c. e. s. g. p. How does the Cambahee comparé with the Connecticut in length? Ohio? What island E. of Charleston? s. What seaport in the southern part of the state, on Port Royal island? B. What four towns in the western part of the state? P. A. G. E. How is Charleston situated? What town on Winyaw bay, at the mouth of the G. Pedee? e. What town on the Wateree, a branch of the Santee? c. What town between Camden and Georgetown? K. What colleges in South Carolina, and where are they located? How will you sail from Columbia to Milledgville?

SOUTHERN STATES.

South Carolina is divided into Districts instead of Counties. Which is the most southern District? What Districts border on the Atlantic? In what District is Charleston? What can you say of Charleston? For what is South Carolina distinguished among the Southern States? What Islands on the coast? &c.

GEORGIA.

How is Georgia bounded? What is its Capital?

Georgia is one of the largest states in the Union, and is rapidly increasing in wealth, population and

power. The state is greatly diversified in respect to surface, soil, and climate.



Cotton and Rice Fields.

The marshy grounds, overflowed by creeks and rivers, extending fifteen or twenty miles from the coast, constitute the rice plantations. Next to this portion, are the pine barrens, which extend from 60 to 90 miles from the sea.

Beyond these barrens, the country becomes uneven, diversified with hills and mountains, and possesses a strong, rich soil. This section produces cotton, tobacco, wheat, corn, and other kinds of grain.

Melons, citrons, figs, oranges, limes, pears, peaches and other fruits are cultivated. A part of the soil is well suited to the grape vine.

The staple production is cotton, but rice, tobacco, and lumber are important articles of commerce.

The minerals are iron in great abundance, and also copper. The gold region extends in a broad belt through this state, and is becoming an object of great and increasing interest.

The winters are mild and agreeable, and snow seldom falls; but the summers are warm, and in the southern part, unhealthy.

Towns.—MILLEDGEVILLE is pleasantly situated on the Oconee. It is a flourishing town, and has a considerable trade.

Savannah is situated on the river Savannah, 17 miles from its mouth. It is the largest town in the state, and has an extensive commerce.

Augusta is a flourishing town on the Savannah river, 127 miles by land, above Savannah. It is well situated for trade, the produce of the northern part of the state being collected here, to be conveyed to Savannah.

Which are the three principal Islands on the coast of Georgia? What four rivers empty into the Atlantic? *St. M. S. A. O.* What two rivers unite and form the Altamaha? *O. O.* What two rivers unite and form the Appalachicola? *C. F.* What two towns on the Savannah river? *S. A.* What four towns on the coast below Savannah? *S. D. B. St. M.* What town on the Ogeechee? *L.* What town between the Oconee and Ogeechee? *S.* What town on the Chatahoochee? *D.* What five towns in the northern part of the state? *J. E. C. C. A.* At which of these towns is there a missionary station? What college in Georgia? What town in the southern part of the state? *I.* What is the length of the Altamaha? Flint? What Indians in the *N. W.* part of Georgia? *C.* The initials of certain towns in Georgia spell *ADAMS*; where are they situated? How will you sail from Milledgeville to *St. Augustine*?

SOUTHERN STATES.

What Counties border on the Atlantic? In what county is Milledgeville? Savannah? Augusta? How many counties can you mention in Georgia? How many times larger is Georgia than Massachusetts? Vermont? How does Georgia compare with Missouri in extent of territory? Ohio? Tennessee? With this state?

TERRITORY OF FLORIDA.

How is Florida bounded? What is its Capital?

Florida is the most southern portion of the United States, and is remarkable for the variety of its vegetable productions, and for its numerous rivers, ponds, lakes and marshes.

The soil near the rivers and lakes, is equal to any

in the world ; in other parts, however, it is less productive. The climate is soft and delicious, rarely suffering from cold, and constantly refreshed by breezes from the Atlantic and the gulf of Mexico.

Florida is noted for the majestic appearance of its towering forest trees, and the brilliant colors of its flowering shrubs. The pines, palms, cypress, cedars and chestnuts grow to an extraordinary size and height. The laurels, especially the magnolias, are uncommonly striking objects, rising with erect trunks to the height of 100 feet, forming towards the head a perfect cone, and having their dark green foliage silvered over with large milk white flowers, frequently eight or nine inches in diameter. The live oak, so valuable in ship building, grows here to a large size. After forming a trunk from 10 to 20 feet high, and from 12 to 18 feet in circumference, it spreads out its branches, in some instances 50 paces on every side.

Many rich fruits, particularly limes, prunes, peaches, grapes and figs, grow wild in the forests. St. John's river and some of the lakes are bordered with orange groves, and olives are cultivated with success. Fish abound in the rivers and lakes, and game is abundant in the forests.

Florida was formerly a Spanish province. In 1819 it was ceded by Spain to the United States ; and in 1822 it was erected into a territorial government.

Towns.—Tallahassee is a new, pleasant and flourishing town, distinguished for its healthy situation, and for the beauty and fertility of the surrounding country.

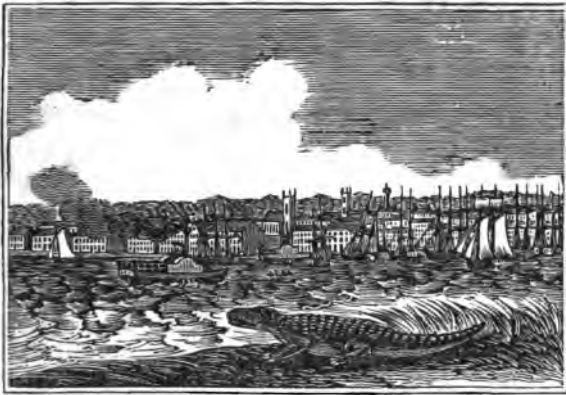
St. Augustine is pleasantly situated on the eastern coast, about 18 miles south of the mouth of St. John's river. It is built on a peninsula, and consists of four principal streets. It is distinguished for its dry and healthy atmosphere, and has the advantages of refreshing breezes from the sea, and the fragrance of orange groves. It is the resort of invalids from all parts of the United States.

Pensacola is situated on a bay of the same name, 50 miles east of Mobile. Its situation is pleasant and healthy, and it is rapidly increasing in population and wealth. Its harbor is one of the most safe and capacious in the gulf of Mexico, and has been selected as a naval station by the government of the United States.

What two Islands near the mouth of St. Mary's river ? A. T. What cluster of the West India Islands S. E. of Florida ? B. What two Capes east of Florida ? What Cape south of Florida ? What two other Capes ? What are the three principal Bays on the coast of Florida ? C. A. T. What stream passes between the Bahama Islands and the coast of Florida ? What is its velocity per hour at Jupiter Inlet ? What large river in Florida empties into the Atlantic ? What are the four principal rivers emptying into the Gulf of Mexico ? A. F. E.

2. What is the length of the Gulf of Mexico? What two Lakes in the interior? s. m. What tribe of Indians in the western part of Florida? s. Which is the most western town in Florida? p. What two towns on the Appalachicola river? c. c. What town on St. Mark's river, at the head of Apalachee bay? What town on the river St. John's? j. What town in the interior? m. What town on the coast below the mouth of the St. John's? How will you sail from St. Augustine to Tuscaloosa?

ALABAMA.



View of Mobile.

How is Alabama situated? What is its Capital?

Alabama is a large and newly settled state, and is distinguished for the rapid increase of its population. It possesses great diversity of surface, soil, climate and productions.

Along the coast, the land is low, level, and well suited to the cultivation of rice. The middle is uneven; the northern parts are broken or hilly, but very fertile and healthy, and embrace the principal settlements.

Cotton is the staple production, and is raised in

great quantities. Rice, corn, wheat, rye, oats, &c. are successfully cultivated. The sugar-cane is becoming an object of attention, and it is supposed that the vine and olive would flourish.

Iron ore is found in several places; coal abounds on the Black Warrior and Cahawba, and gold exists in the northeastern part.

The climate is generally healthy, except in the southern part.

Towns.—TUSCALOOSA is pleasantly situated on the Black Warrior river, near the centre of the state. It is a handsome and flourishing town, regularly laid out.

Mobile* is situated on Mobile river, 33 miles from the Gulf of Mexico. It is a place of considerable trade, and is rapidly increasing in commerce and population.

Blakely is on the eastern outlet of Mobile river, 15 miles east of Mobile. It is well situated for commerce, and has a good harbor of easy access.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What two rivers unite and form the Mobile river? T. A. What river empties into the Tombigbee? What river passes through the northern part of the state? What shoals in the Tennessee river? What two towns on the Mobile river, at the head of Mobile bay? M. B. What town on Mobile river, near the junction of the Alabama and Tombigbee? F. What three towns on the Alabama? C. D. C. What town on the Tombigbee? S. What two towns on the Black Warrior? T. B. What town on the Tennessee river, in the N. W. part of the state? F. What town in the northern part of the state? H. What mountains terminate in Alabama? C. A. How will you sail from Tuscaloosa to Jackson?

MAP OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.

Which are the two most southern Counties? Which are the four most northern Counties? In what County is Tuscaloosa? Mobile? Which extends farthest south, Alabama, Georgia or Mississippi? Which state do you think has the greatest length, Alabama or Georgia? You can measure on the map with a rule or a pen. If you and I were now in Florence, in what direction from us would Mobile be?

* Mo-beel.

MISSISSIPPI.

*Choctaw Village.*

How is Mississippi bounded? What is its Capital?

Mississippi is a large, level and fertile state. Its local situation, the fertility of its soil, the temperature of its climate, and the value of its productions, render it an important member of the Union.

The principal productions are cotton, rice and sugar. Corn is raised in large quantities. Apples, peaches, plums, figs, lemons and oranges are common.

The southern part of the state is occupied by the whites, the northern part by the Chickasaw and the middle by the Choctaw Indians. Many of these have recently removed west of the Mississippi.

Towns.—JACKSON is pleasantly situated on the Pearl river, near the centre of the state. It is a newly settled, healthy and flourishing town.

Natchez has an elevated situation, and is the largest and one of the most flourishing towns in the state. It is surrounded by a populous, fertile, and highly cultivated country, and is the centre of trade for the towns in the western part of the state. Great numbers of steamboats and river craft, are continually arriving and departing here. Its streets are broad, and many of its buildings handsome.

Vicksburg, Monticello, Woodville and Port Gibson are flourishing towns.

What are the rivers of Mississippi? M. Y. B. P. P. T. What town on the Mississippi? N. What town near Natchez? W. What two towns near the southern boundary? W. L. What three towns on the Pearl river? J. M. C. What two towns on the Tombigbee? H. C. What missionary station near the Yazoo river? E. What college in Mississippi? What Indians in the northern part of the state? What Indians in the eastern part? In what direction from Jackson is New Orleans? Tuscaloosa? Tallahassee? Little Rock? Philadelphia? Savannah? How will you sail from Jackson to New Orleans?

MAP OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.

What two Counties extend farthest south? In what County is Jackson? Natchez? Vicksburg? How does the Pearl river compare with the Mississippi in length? Which do you think is the largest County of Mississippi? Which extends farthest south, Mississippi or Alabama?

LOUISIANA.

How is Louisiana bounded? What is its Capital?

Louisiana is a large, level, and fertile state. It presents the appearance of an immense plain, divided into marshes,* prairies,† pine forests and alluvions.‡

The part bordering on the gulf of Mexico consists of low prairie land and marshes, intersected by numerous bays and rivers. Around the mouth of the Mississippi, for thirty or forty miles, it is a continued swamp, destitute of trees, covered with a species of coarse reed four or five feet high. The most fertile

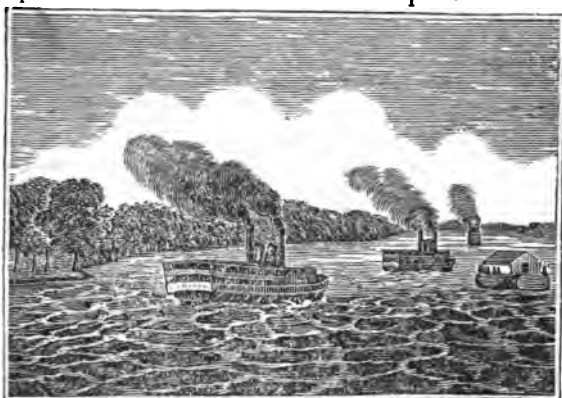
* Marshes, a tract of low, wet land, a swamp.

† Prai-rie, an extensive tract of land, generally level, destitute of trees and covered with tall grass. They usually have a fertile soil, peculiarly suited to the purposes of grazing and feeding immense herds of cattle. Many of the prairies are very large, extending farther than the eye can reach. In Asia, these plains are called Steppes; in South America, Pampas.

‡ Alluvions, level, fertile lands, lying on the margins of rivers, formed there by means of the action of the water.

and cultivated portions of the state, are the alluvions on the borders of the Mississippi, Red river and smaller streams.

The agricultural and commercial resources of Louisiana are immense. Its staple productions are cotton, sugar and rice. Oranges, lemons, figs and other tropical fruits flourish in the southern part.



Scene on the Mississippi.

A considerable portion of this state is lower than the Mississippi. To prevent its being overflowed, levees, or artificial embankments of earth are raised on the sides of the river, from five to forty feet in height. These sometimes are broken away by the stream, and a vast extent of country is deluged with water, and great devastation is produced.

Towns.—NEW ORLEANS is situated on the Mississippi, 105 miles from its mouth. It is the grand commercial metropolis of the Mississippi valley. The plan of the city is regular, and its suburbs are adorned with beautiful gardens and orange groves. No city on the globe possesses so great natural advantages for a commercial capital. The Mississippi and its tributaries above this city, have an extent of more than 20,000 miles of waters, already navigated by steamboats, and passing through the richest soils and the pleasantest climates. Its communication with the ocean is easy, being accessible for the largest ships. Its harbor is constantly crowded with all kinds of maritime and river craft; and often may be seen at one time 1500

flat boats engaged in lading and unlading. Steamboats are coming and departing every hour, and fifty or sixty are frequently seen at the levee together. It is rapidly increasing in population, commerce, and wealth, and bids fair to become the largest city of America, and one of the first commercial cities on the globe.

Baton Rouge is situated on the east bank of the Mississippi, 110 miles above New Orleans. It is a flourishing place, and is considered the most healthy situation on the river.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What are the rivers of Louisiana? s. e. w. m. p. What three towns on the east bank of the Mississippi? n-o. e-r. s-f. What town is situated on lake Pontchartrain, north of New Orleans? m. What town on an outlet of the Mississippi, on the parallel of 30° N. latitude? d. What two towns on Red river? n. a. What town on the Wachitta river? m. What four other towns W. of the Mississippi? o. St. m. n-i. f. Which is the most southern town in Louisiana? How is New Orleans situated? [The island on which New Orleans is situated is called New Orleans isle. It is formed by the Mississippi river on one side, and by the Ibberville river, lakes Maurepas, Pontchartrain, Borgne, and the Gulf of Mexico on all other sides.] What college in this state? How will you sail from New Orleans to Nashville?

MAP OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.

Louisiana is divided into Parishes instead of Counties. Which Parish extends farthest south? Which is the most northwestern Parish? Northeastern? Southeastern? Southwestern? In what Parish is New Orleans? If you and I were at Natchitoches, in what direction from us would our home be—and how far, do you think?

TRAVELS ON THE MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

For what are the Southern States distinguished? How is Maryland divided? How is Baltimore divided? How will you sail from Baltimore to Washington?

When did Washington become the seat of the General Government? Who was President of the United States at that time? [See page 61.] Where did Congress meet before the seat of the General Government was removed to Washington? A. At Philadelphia. What distinguished edifice in Washington? Who was the first President of the United States? Who is President of the United States at this time? How will you sail from Washington to Richmond?

How does Virginia compare with the other states? What great natural curiosity in Virginia? How many Presidents of the United

States have been chosen from Virginia? For what is Yorktown famous? How will you sail from Richmond to Wilmington?

Which is the most commercial town in North Carolina? Which is the largest town? What are the principal exports in North Carolina? How will you sail from Wilmington to Charleston?

Describe Charleston. How does South Carolina compare with North Carolina in extent of territory? [See page 60.] In what direction from *this place* is Charleston? How will you sail from Charleston to Savannah?

Describe Savannah? How many years since Savannah was settled? [See Table of Settlements.] Which produces the best fruit, *this state* or Georgia? Why? How will you sail from Savannah to Mobile?

How long since Mobile was settled? For what is Alabama distinguished? How will you sail from Mobile to New Orleans?

WESTERN STATES.



Commencing a Settlement.

Which are the Western States? Which is the most northern? Which is the most southern? Which extends farthest east? Which extends farthest west? Which is the largest? Which is the smallest? Which is the longest? Which is the shortest? Which one

is most regular in its shape? Which one is most irregular? How many of these are north of the Ohio river? How many west of the Mississippi? Which are the three largest rivers of the Western States?

The Western States all lie in the great valley of the Mississippi.* They are distinguished for their mild climate, fertile soil, large and navigable rivers, and for their unexampled increase in population, wealth and political importance. The most striking feature in the geography of these states, is the Prairies, or natural meadows, which embrace so large a portion of their surface. They are destitute of trees, and covered with tall grass and wild flowers. Many of them are celebrated for their richness and beauty. These prairies cover a vast extent of country north of the Ohio and also west of the Mississippi, and afford pasturage to countless herds of buffaloes, deer, and various other wild animals.

The climate of these states is healthful and pleasant, being milder and less subject to changes than in the Eastern or Middle States. These states contain the most extensive section of fertile land in the Union, and the productiveness of the soil fits them for becoming the granary of the whole continent. The productions are various and abundant. The principal

* The Valley of the Mississippi embraces the vast region lying between the Alleghany and Rocky mountains, watered by the Mississippi and its numerous branches. It extends 20 degrees in latitude and about 30 in longitude. If we except the Amazon, probably no other valley on the globe will compare in size with it; and it probably surpasses all others in the richness and variety of its soil, and its general adaptation to the support and comfort of civilized men. In extent it is like a continent; in beauty and fertility, it is the most perfect garden of nature. If we glance an eye over this immense region, connected by navigable rivers — if we regard the fertility of soil, the variety of productions, and if we combine those advantages offered by nature, with the moral energy of the free and active people who are spreading their increasing millions over its surface — what a brilliant prospect opens upon us through the darkness of future time! We see arts, science, industry, virtue, and social happiness already increasing in that region beyond what the wildest fancy would have dared to hope, thirty or forty years ago.

are wheat and corn in the northern part ; cotton, hemp and tobacco in the middle ; and rice, cotton and sugar in the southern part. Fruits of most kinds grow in abundance. Horses, cattle and swine are raised in great numbers, and thousands of barrels of beef and pork are sent to the eastern and southern markets.



Emigrants.

There is probably no country in the world, of equal extent, so finely watered as the valley of the Mississippi. It is completely veined by navigable rivers, which afford every facility for domestic commerce. The number of steamboats on the Mississippi and its tributary streams, is about 200. In addition to these, about 600 flat boats, or arks, annually descend the Mississippi, besides a multitude of smaller craft. The quantities of produce of various kinds, transported in these to New Orleans, is immense.

Lead is the most abundant of all the metals in these states. The lead mines of Missouri and Illinois are the richest in the world. Bituminous coal is found in various parts. Salt springs are numerous ; and no

part of the Mississippi valley is remote from a plentiful supply of salt.

The cause of education in most parts of these states is liberally patronised. The number of common schools is rapidly increasing; higher seminaries of learning, and colleges are fast multiplying, and the zeal that is manifested in their establishment, gives an assurance that this interesting portion of our country will soon be as highly favored with the means of intellectual and moral culture, as it is now with natural resources for the support and comfort of civilized men.

The Western States are remarkable for the remains of antiquity with which they abound. These consist of the ruins of forts or fortifications, mounds of earth, or graves, walls, hearths, &c. To judge from these works, the nation that constructed them, must have been far more civilized, and much better acquainted with the useful arts than the present Indians. From the lofty trees with which they are overgrown, it is concluded a long period must have elapsed—perhaps 1000 years—since the desertion of these fabrics, and the extinction of the people by whom they were erected. They are found in the vicinity of each other, spread over the great plains from the southern shore of lake Erie to the gulf of Mexico, generally in the neighborhood of the great rivers. Their structure is regular, and they have been supposed to warrant the opinion of the existence, in ancient times, of great cities along the Mississippi. The mummies, or dried bodies enveloped with coarse cloth, and found in some of the salt petre caves of of Kentucky, indicate the existence formerly of a race in these parts, different from that of the present Indians, and that had probably become extinct long before the discovery of this continent by Columbus.

TENNESSEE.

How is Tennessee bounded? What is its Capital?

Tennessee is one of the most healthful, pleasant, and beautiful states in the Union. It is pleasantly diversified with mountains, hills, and vallies, and is noted for its navigable rivers, and for its beautiful and picturesque scenery. The state is divided by the

Cumberland mountains into East and West Tennessee. The climate is pleasant and salubrious, and the soil generally very luxuriant.



Cumberland Mountains.

The great business of the state is agriculture. Cotton, tobacco, corn, wheat and hemp are produced in abundance, and are the staple commodities.

Being remote from the sea, it is not exposed to sudden changes of temperature. The winters are mild, and it has been observed that the season of vegetation lasts three months longer here than in Maine. The climate of East Tennessee is considered one of the most desirable in North America.

The state is rich in minerals. A considerable portion of it is bedded on limestone. Gypsum, copperas, allum, nitre, lead, &c. are found. Coal is supposed to be plentiful. There are several mineral springs, and many valuable salt springs.

The mountains of Tennessee contain a great number of caverns. But few of them have been explored, and little more is known of them than that they abound in nitrous earth. One of them has been descended 400 feet below the surface, and found to consist of a smooth limestone rock with a stream of pure water sufficient to turn a mill.

Among the Enchanted mountains, a name given to several spurs of the Cumberland ridge, are some very singular foot prints marked in the solid limestone rock. These are tracks of men, horses, and

other animals, as fresh as if made yesterday, and as distinct as if made in clay or mortar. On the shore of the Mississippi is a similar impression of two human feet in a mass of solid limestone. The tracks of human beings have uniformly six toes on each foot. Walls of faced stone, and even walled wells have been found in many places which are undoubtedly the work of a remote generation. A description of the curiosities of Tennessee would fill a large volume.

Towns.—NASHVILLE is situated on the Cumberland river, in the midst of a populous and fertile country. It is the largest and most flourishing town in the state, and carries on an extensive steamboat navigation.

Knoxville, the principal town in East Tennessee, is situated on the Holston, 22 miles above its junction with the Tennessee river. It is a pleasant and flourishing place.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What are the Rivers of Tennessee? M. T. C. What mountains pass through this state? C. What mountains separate Tennessee from North Carolina? A. What three towns on the Cumberland river? C. N. C. What three towns in the eastern part of the state, on the Tennessee and its branches? K. G. S. What missionary station on the Tennessee? B. What five towns between the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers? M. M. S. M. W. What town in the southwestern corner of the state on the Mississippi? M. What three towns between the Tennessee and Mississippi? J. H. P. How many miles in length is the Tennessee? Cumberland? Mississippi? What colleges in Tennessee? How will you sail from Nashville to Frankfort?

MAP OF THE SOUTHERN STATES.

Which is the most southwestern County of Tennessee? Northwestern? Northeastern? Southeastern? Which do you think the largest County? In what County is Nashville? Knoxville? Which is the largest, Tennessee or Alabama? How does the Cumberland river compare with the Mississippi in length?

KENTUCKY.

How is Kentucky bounded? What is its Capital?

Kentucky is a large, populous and flourishing state; and is distinguished for its mild climate, fertile soil, extensive manufactures, and for the intelligence and enterprise of its inhabitants.

The face of the country along the Ohio, is hilly;

the eastern part is mountainous ; the remainder of the state is level or gently undulating.

The principal productions are hemp, tobacco, wheat, corn, rye, barley, &c. Apples, pears, peaches, plums and cherries are abundant. The domestic animals are large and beautiful, particularly the horse.

There are numerous salt springs, from which are manufactured vast quantities of salt, affording a supply not only for this, but for some of the neighboring states. At Harrodsburg, near Kentucky river, is a spring holding in solution Epsom salts. This is much frequented by invalids.

Nearly the whole of Kentucky rests on a bed of limestone, usually about eight feet below the surface. There are every where apertures in this limestone, through which the waters of the rivers sink into the earth. The large rivers of this state, for this reason, are more diminished during the dry season than those of any part of the Union, and the small streams entirely disappear.



Frankfort.

The banks of the rivers are natural curiosities. Many of them have worn very deep channels in the calcareous rocks over which they flow. The precipices formed by the Kentucky river are in

many places awfully sublime, presenting perpendicular banks of 300 feet of solid limestone.

Ancient fortifications and mounds of earth, are found in almost all parts of Kentucky; and in Big Bone valley, 29 miles southwest of Newport, enormous bones and tusks of the Mammoth have been dug up from the depth of twenty feet below the surface.

Kentucky is famous for its stupendous caves. One called Mammoth cave, 130 miles from Lexington, on the road leading to Nashville, is said to be sixteen miles in length, with a great number of avenues and windings, and includes several apartments, the largest of which contains eight acres, and is overspread with one solid arch of limestone 100 feet high. From the earth at the bottom of these caves are manufactured large quantities of saltpetre.

Towns.—FRANKFORT is a pleasant and handsome town, situated on the Kentucky river 60 miles from its mouth. It contains an elegant state house, and has several manufactories.

Lexington* is delightfully situated on a branch of the Elkhorn river, 22 miles southeast of Frankfort, in the midst of the most fertile part of the state. The town is regularly laid out, and handsomely built, and is distinguished for its manufactures, wealth and refinement. The surrounding country is beautiful, and highly cultivated, and adorned with many handsome villas, and rural mansions.

Louisville, situated at the rapids of the Ohio, is the largest and most flourishing town in the state; and in a commercial point of view, it is the first city of the west, commanding the trade of a great extent of country. It is regularly built and contains many fine buildings, and is distinguished for its increase in population, manufactures and wealth.

Maysville is a flourishing town, and is rapidly increasing in population, commerce and manufactures.

What are the Rivers of Kentucky? *m. o. t. c. g. ts. k. i. b. s.* What mountains and river separate Kentucky from Virginia? What town on the Mississippi? *c.* What town on the Cumberland river? *b.* What town on a branch of the Cumberland? *c.* What town near the mouth of the Cumberland river? *s.* What three towns on the Ohio? *L. n. m.* What town on a branch of the Green river? *B. g.* What two towns near the Green river? *G. h.* What town on Salt river? *B.* What three towns S. E. of Bardstown? *d. Mt. v. m.* What town on the Kentucky river? *r.* What three towns between

* Lexington derived its name from the circumstance that some hunters were engaged on the spot in laying out a town in 1775, when a messenger arrived with the news of the battle of Lexington, and they immediately decided to commemorate that event by giving that name to the place. See Olney's History of the United States, page 124.

† The river between Green and Kentucky rivers is called Salt river.

the Kentucky and Licking rivers? L. P. v. . . What is the length of the Ohio river? Licking? What colleges in Kentucky, and where are they located? When, and by whom was Kentucky settled? How will you sail from Frankfort to Columbus?

MAP OF THE WESTERN STATES.

Which are the three most southern Counties of Kentucky? Which is the most eastern? Which is the most northern? Which is the most western? In what County is Frankfort? Louisville? Which is the largest state, Kentucky or Indiana? Suppose we were in a steamboat at the junction of the Ohio and Mississippi, in what direction from us would this place be?

OHIO.



View of Cincinnati.

How is Ohio bounded? What is its Capital?

In extent, population, and political importance, Ohio is one of the first states in the Union. It is noted for the fertility of its soil, and the mildness of its climate; and its inhabitants are distinguished for enterprise in agriculture, manufactures, commerce, and internal improvements.

The southern part of the state is uneven and hilly ; the remainder is generally level. In some parts there are large prairies, particularly on the head waters of the Sciota and Muskingum.

Ohio produces abundantly every thing which grows in the Middle States. Wheat is the staple production, and flour is exported in vast quantities. Corn, rye, and all other kinds of grain, grow here in great perfection. Scarcely any part of the United States is so productive, or affords so many of the natural means for an easy and comfortable subsistence. Iron ore and pit coal are abundant, and there are numerous salt springs.

The great fertility of the soil, the low price of land, and the mildness of the climate, have attracted emigrants, not only from the Eastern and Middle States, but even from Europe. Indeed, its progress in population, power, resources, and energy, has no parallel in history. The first settlement was made in 1788. Then all was a wilderness, inhabited by savages and wild beasts ; now with nearly a million and a half of inhabitants, her cities, towns, canals, roads, colleges, schools, and other improvements, excite the admiration of the world.

Towns.—COLUMBUS is pleasantly situated on the Sciota river, near the centre of the state. It was laid out in 1812, and has rapidly increased in population.

Cincinnati is pleasantly situated on the north bank of the Ohio, near the southwestern corner of the state. The city rises gradually from the river, and is regularly laid out and handsomely built of brick. The streets are broad, and adorned with many elegant public buildings and private dwellings. It was first laid out in 1789 ; since which time its growth in population, wealth and trade, has been exceedingly rapid. Immense quantities of flour, pork, tobacco and other produce, are conveyed every year down the river in steamboats to New Orleans. It is the centre of trade for a large extent of country, and is distinguished for its extensive manufactures. It is the largest and most wealthy city of the Western States, and may be regarded as one of the most flourishing in the Union.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

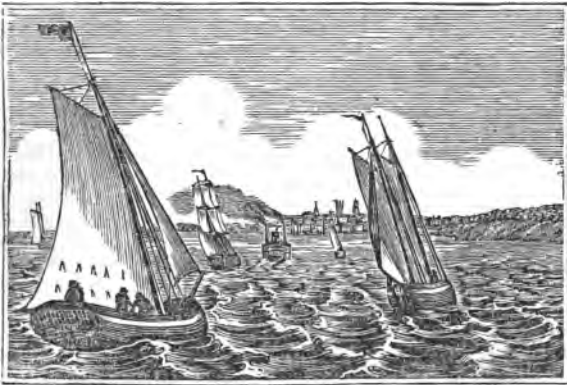
What three rivers empty into Lake Erie ? *M. S. C.* [The river which empties into Lake Erie at Cleaveland, is the Cuyahoga.] What four rivers empty into the Ohio ? *M. H. S. M.* [*The river between the Muskingum and Sciota is the Hockhocking.] What

four towns are situated on the Ohio? c. g. m. s. What two towns on the Miami? d. g. What three towns on the Sciota? c. c. c. What two towns on the Hockhocking? l. a. What two towns on the Muskingum? w. z. What town N. of Wooster? m. What town on Lake Erie at the mouth of the Cuyahoga river? c. What town on the Cuyahoga? r. What town S. of Ravenna? c. What town in the N. E. part of the state? j. What town on Sandusky bay at the mouth of Sandusky river? s. What town S. of Sandusky? m. What town on the Maumee river? d. What colleges in Ohio? What canals in Ohio, and what do they connect? Can you sail from Columbus to Detroit?

MAP OF THE WESTERN STATES.

Which is the most southern County of Ohio? The most northern? Which is the most northwestern? What two Counties south of Williams? Why are these three Counties so named? [See the National Preceptor, Lesson 29, verse 8.] In what County is Columbus? Cincinnati?

MICHIGAN.



Detroit.

How is Michigan bounded? Its Capital?

Michigan is a large, level, fertile and healthy state, distinguished for its advantages for commercial pursuits, and for the rapid increase of its population.

In most parts the soil is of surprising depth and richness, producing wheat, corn, oats, barley, peas, apples, pears, grapes, &c. in abundance. It is abundantly supplied with wild game, water fowl, and fish of the finest quality. The tide of emigration is fast setting into the state, and it bids fair soon to become an important member of the Union.

Towns.—DETROIT is beautifully situated on Detroit river, 18 miles from Lake Erie, and 7 from Lake St. Clair. It is regularly laid out, with spacious streets, on an elevation of about 40 feet above the river, of which it commands a delightful view. It contains many handsome buildings, and is rapidly increasing in population and business. It is advantageously situated for commerce, and is a place of importance in the fur trade. A number of steamboats and lake vessels are constantly plying between Detroit and Buffalo, Cleaveland, Chicago, and other places on the lakes.

Michilimackinack* is a military post, situated on an island in the straits which connect Lake Huron and Lake Michigan. The town is on the south side of the island, and consists of two streets. It is much resorted to by fur traders, and during the summer months is visited by thousands of Indians. On a cliff, 300 feet above the town, is the fort. Its elevated situation affords a very extensive view of lake Huron and Michigan.

What lakes border on Michigan? What two bays in Michigan? s. and g. r. What two towns on Saganaw river? s. b. What town 25 miles west of lake St. Clair? r. What town on Detroit river? What two towns on lake Erie? b. f. What town S. W. of Frenchtown? t. What town on St. Joseph's river? c. What Indians in the western part? When, where, and by whom was Michigan settled? What is the length of the river St. Clair? Detroit river? Can you sail from Detroit to Indianapolis?

INDIANA.

How is Indiana* bounded? What is its Capital?

Indiana is a large, level, and remarkably fertile state, distinguished for its rich prairies, navigable rivers, and for the rapid increase of its population.

* Mack'-e-naw.

† In-ge-an'-na.

The climate is mild and pleasant. The forests are in leaf early in April; and the multitudes of flowering shrubs put forth their blossoms, and give an indescribable charm to the early spring.



Gathering Wheat.

The most astonishing crops of corn, wheat, rye, oats, barley, &c. are produced with but little labor. Vast quantities of pork, lard, corn, meal, wheat and stock are exported down the Ohio and Mississippi to New Orleans.

In the vicinity of Vevay, the vine is successfully cultivated by some Swiss settlers, and several thousand gallons of wine are annually made, and the quantity is yearly increasing.

There are a number of caves in Indiana. One called Epsom Salts Cave, is on the bank of the Big Blue river. The entrance is in the side of a hill 400 feet in height. The whole floor of the cave is covered with Epsom salt, sometimes in lumps of ten pounds weight, and of the purest quality. About a mile and a half within the cave is a white column of satin spar, fifteen feet in diameter, and thirty feet high, regularly fluted from top to bottom.

Towns.—INDIANAPOLIS is pleasantly situated on the west branch of the White river, in the midst of a very fertile country. It, con-

tains many handsome buildings, and is noted for the rapid increase of its population.

Vincennes is one of the oldest towns in the Western States. It is pleasantly situated on the Wabash, 150 miles from its mouth. It is a place of considerable trade, and is accessible to steamboats the greater part of the year.

New Albany is pleasantly situated on the Ohio, a short distance below Louisville in Kentucky. It is the largest town in the state, and is rapidly increasing in population, trade and wealth.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What are the rivers of Indiana? w. w. o. m. What two towns on the Wabash? v. n. What three towns on the Ohio? r. c. v. What town on Indian Creek, S. W. of Charleston? c. What town on the east branch of White river? c. What two towns in the eastern part? j. c. What fort on the Maumee? w. What college in this state? How will you sail from Indianapolis to Vandalia?

ILLINOIS.



A Prairie.

How is Illinois bounded? What is its Capital?

Illinois is one of the largest, most level, and fertile states in the Union, remarkable for its extensive prairies, and its advantages for inland navigation.

This state is rich both in vegetable and mineral productions; and perhaps no section of our country offers so many inducements to the farmer, the mechanic, and the scholar, as Illinois.

The staple products are corn, wheat, potatoes, tobacco, lead, cattle, horses, and sheep. The number of swine fattened and exported is almost incalculable. Cotton is produced for home consumption, and apples, pears, peaches, plums, grapes, &c. arrive at great perfection.

Coal and iron are abundant; but the most extensive mineral is lead. The mines of this metal near Galena, in the northwestern corner of the state, are among the richest in the world. They occupy a large tract, and have produced in a year sixteen millions pounds of lead. Salt springs are common.

Illinois abounds in prairies, those beautiful plains so common in the western country. In spring and summer they appear like seas of verdure. The grass, three or four feet high, and often overtopped by fragrant blossoms, is waved by the winds like the rolling billows of the ocean. Without a tree in sight, except the thick forest which bounds them as the beach limits the sea, they stretch away beyond the power of vision. They are usually as level as the unruffled lake, and without the dreariness, present all the uniformity of the Arabian deserts.

Towns.—SPRINGFIELD is pleasantly situated in the midst of a beautiful and fertile country. It contains a number of elegant buildings, and is rapidly increasing in population.

Chicago is one of the most important and flourishing places in the State. It is the centre of a large and growing trade. Its harbor and wharves present the appearance of one of the Atlantic cities. Steamboats, ships, and other vessels, are constantly arriving with emigrants, goods, &c., and departing with the produce of the country.

Alton, the great commercial emporium of the western part of the State, Quincy, Peoria, Beardstown, Naples, and Jacksonborough, are all flourishing places.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What seven rivers in Illinois? w. o. r. k. m. i. s. What three towns on the Mississippi? q. a. c. How is Vandalia situated? What town on the Kaskaskia river, 11 miles from its mouth? r. What

town on Illinois river ? p. What town near the Illinois river ? l. What town on a branch of the Sangamon ? s. What three towns in the eastern part of the state ? p. A. Y. What two towns in the southern part ? s. A. What town on lake Michigan ? c. What extensive prairie in the eastern part of Illinois ? Which is the longest river, the Connecticut or Illinois ? How far is Vandalia from Hartford ? Boston ? How will you sail from Vandalia to Jefferson city ?

MISSOURI.



St. Louis.

How is Missouri bounded ? What is its Capital ?

Missouri is a large and interesting state. It abounds in plains and prairies, and is remarkable for the number and magnitude of its navigable rivers, and for its rich and extensive mines of lead and coal.

The climate is mild, and the soil exceedingly productive on the prairies and along the rivers. Indeed, a great proportion of the land is of the richest kind, producing corn, wheat, rye, oats, hemp and tobacco in great abundance. Cotton is produced in the warmer districts ; and vast numbers of cattle are raised on the prairies. The principal exports are lead and furs.

The most remarkable feature in Missouri is its lead mines, which

are estimated to cover an area of about 3000 square miles. They are in the eastern part of the state; the centre of them is about 70 miles southwest from St. Louis. There are about fifty mines, which employ more than twelve hundred laborers, and produce three millions pounds of lead annually.

Towns.—JEFFERSON CITY is a newly settled town, on the Missouri, 120 miles above its junction with the Mississippi. It is situated on a high bluff shore, in the midst of a beautiful and fertile country.

St. Louis is pleasantly situated on the Mississippi, 18 miles below the mouth of the Missouri, and 1,200 miles above New Orleans. It is the largest and most commercial town in the state, and bids fair to become an immense city. Hunting and trapping parties are fitted out at this place, and great quantities of furs, deer skins, and buffalo robes are here collected. It is a flourishing town, and its situation for trade is one of the best in the world.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What are the principal rivers of Missouri? *m. o. m.* What two rivers rise in the southern part of the state? *B-B.* and *St. F.* What mountains in Missouri? *o.* What six towns on the Missouri river? *B. Mt-v. F. B. J. St-c.* What six towns on the Mississippi? *L. St-L. H. St e. J. and N-m.* What town on St. Francis river? *e.* What college in Missouri? How far is it from St. Louis to Hartford? When was Missouri settled? How many square miles has it? Which is the largest, Missouri or Georgia? How will you sail from Jefferson City to Little Rock?

ARKANSAS.

How is Arkansas bounded? What is its Capital?

Arkansas is a large, fertile and newly settled state, distinguished for its navigable rivers, and the variety of its productions.

The eastern part is a low, level, and unhealthy region, covered with thick forests, and is liable to annual inundation. The remainder is more elevated, and enjoys a healthy climate.

Arkansas has a large portion of land of great fertility, which produces cotton, wheat, corn, rice and tobacco, &c. with a great variety of fruits and vegetables. Cotton and corn are the staple productions.

The country is exceedingly well adapted to the raising of cattle. Wild animals and fowls are abundant, as the buffalo, deer, elk, otter, beaver, wild cat, catamount, wolf, bear, &c. wild geese, turkeys, quails, &c.



A Prairie on Fire.

The principal minerals are iron, lead, coal and salt. There are several springs, and about 150 miles northwest of Arkansas, are the famous hot springs. They are much resorted to by invalids, and are efficacious in many disorders, although they exhibit no mineral properties beyond common spring water. The temperature in the driest season, is at the boiling point, but subject to considerable variation. The land around them is called "The land of peace"—and tribes of Indians unfriendly to each other, on arriving at this place, always suspend hostilities.

Towns.—LITTLE ROCK is pleasantly situated on the Arkansas river, about 120 miles from its mouth. It is the centre of trade for a large extent of country. Its situation is healthy, and it is fast increasing in population.

Arkansas has an elevated situation on the river of the same name, 60 miles from its mouth. It is one of the oldest settlements west of the Mississippi, commenced by the French in 1685. Emigrants from Canada afterwards arrived, but like all places whose inhabitants live by hunting and the Indian trade, its advancement was tardy. Its present population are principally descendants of French and Indians.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What large river passes nearly through the centre of Arkansas? A. What five towns on Arkansas river? What town on the Mississippi? v. What town on White river? B. What town on Big Black river? D. What is the capital? Why is it called Little Rock? A. From the masses of rock in its neighborhood? What mountains extend into the western part? O. In what direction is Arkansas the longest, from north to south, or from east to west? Which do you

think is the longest, Arkansas or this state? Which do you think is the widest? How does Arkansas compare with Vermont—or in other words, how many times larger is Arkansas than Vermont? How does Arkansas compare with Missouri? Georgia? A. It is one third less in size, or but two thirds as large. When, where and by whom was Arkansas settled? How will you sail from Little Rock to Prairie du Chien?

TERRITORIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

How many Territories belong to the United States? Which is the most southern? Which is the most western Territory? Which Territory extends farthest east? Which is the largest Territory? Which is the smallest? Which extends farthest north? o.

The Territories of the United States are of two kinds. The first kind includes those districts in which civilized settlements have commenced, but the number of inhabitants being less than 60,000, (which entitles them to form a constitution for themselves, and to send members to Congress,)—they are governed by a provisional legislature, and a Governor, who is appointed by the President of the United States. They can send a delegate to Congress, who has a right to speak, but not to vote. There are three territories of this description, viz. Florida, Wisconsin and Iowa. The second kind includes those tracts of country, over which the United States claim the right of sovereignty, though inhabited only by Indians. There are two of this kind, viz. Missouri Territory and Oregon Territory.

WISCONSIN TERRITORY.

In what direction from us is Wisconsin? What is its capital?

Wisconsin is an extensive Territory. It was organized in 1836. Owing to its great mineral resources, and fertile soil, it is rapidly increasing in population.

* It abounds in copper and iron, but its mines of lead are among the richest in the world. Its surface, in some parts, is elevated and broken by ridges. It contains numerous lakes and marshes, in which wild rice grows in great abundance.

Towns.—MADISON CITY has been recently laid out, but contains several buildings, and is rapidly increasing in population. The other principal towns are Navarino, Sheboygan, Milwaukie, Racine, Prairie du Chien, and Cassville.

In what direction is Wisconsin longest? Which do you think is largest, Wisconsin or this State? Which part of the territory do you think is warmest? Why? Suppose we were at Navarino; in what direction from us would BURLINGTON, the capital of Iowa Terri-

tory, be? Detroit? Mobile? Washington, the capital of the United States? Augusta, the capital of Maine? How many rivers can you mention in Wisconsin? Towns? Lakes? What mines in the southern part, near the Mississippi river? What Indians in Wisconsin? What falls in the Mississippi? In what does the principal wealth of Wisconsin consist? Did you ever see a mine? Of what use is Lead to us? copper? iron? Which is most useful lead, or copper, or iron?

IOWA TERRITORY.

In what direction from us is Iowa? What is its capital?

Iowa embraces an interesting tract of country—beautiful in appearance, and of uncommon fertility of soil. It is noted for its extensive prairies, mild climate, its inexhaustible mines of lead, coal and iron, and for the rapid increase of its population.

Iowa Territory was organized in 1838. Several Indian tribes still reside in it; among which the Sioux are the most numerous and powerful.

Towns. BURLINGTON is pleasantly situated on the Mississippi, in a fertile district, and has considerable trade. It was laid out in 1834, and is in a flourishing condition.

Dubuque,* situated in the centre of the mining district of Iowa, is at present the largest town in the territory, and promises to be a place of great commercial importance.

In what direction is Iowa longest? Between what two great rivers does it lie? In which part are the principal settlements? Which extends farthest south, Iowa, or this State? How many years since the Territory was organised? What Indian tribes in Iowa? Which has the highest latitude, or in other words, which is farthest north, Burlington or this place?

INDIAN TERRITORY.

In what direction from us is the Indian Territory?

This Territory embraces a large extent of country, noted for its numerous rivers, its extensive forests, mild climate and abundance of game.

The United States' government set apart this Territory for the future residence of those Indians who have emigrated from the States east of the Mississippi. The present population is not far from 75,000.

* Du-book'.

The tribes that have made the greatest advances towards civilization, are the Cherokees, Choctaws, Creeks, and Shawnees. A number of missionaries reside among them and have exerted a happy influence on their habits, manners, and moral condition.

In what direction is Indian Territory longest? Which extends farthest north Indian territory or this State? Which do you imagine has the warmest climate? What Desert in the western part of this territory? By what is this Desert traversed? Did you ever see a Buffalo? An Indian? What Indian tribes can you mention in the Territory? What mountains form a part of the boundary line between I. Ter. and Mexico? What peaks among the Rocky mountains? In which part of the Territory should you prefer to reside?

MISSOURI TERRITORY.



A Drove of Wild Horses.

In what direction from us is Missouri Territory?

This is an extensive region, remarkable for its large rivers and immense prairies. It is inhabited by Indians and wild animals, with the exception of a few posts held by troops of the United States.

For the most part, this country is a plain more or less covered with grass, and in many places very fertile. The richest and most valuable lands are found on the margins of the rivers, which are usually covered with well timbered forests. At a short distance, however,

the trees disappear, and the soil becomes dry and barren. Indeed, some parts of this territory, especially towards the Rocky mountains, are almost a moving sand, and may be likened to the Great Sahara or African Desert.

Perhaps no other country in the world furnishes so great a variety of wild game as this territory ; and on this account it has been termed the paradise of hunters. Countless numbers of buffaloes, elk, deer, and other wild animals, traverse the vast prairies. In some instances, ten thousand buffaloes are seen in one herd. As the grass fails in one place, they travel in a body to another ; and when moving, the ground trembles to a great distance, and their bellowing and noise may be heard for miles.

Wild horses are found in droves on the prairies, particularly in the southern part. They are hunted by expert riders on trained horses, and are caught by throwing a noose over the neck, which is done with surprising dexterity.

The most formidable animal in these regions, and the one most dreaded by the hunters, is the grisly bear. He is found in the western parts and inhabits the Rocky mountains.

Bands of hunters and trappers from the United States and Canada, range these vast regions for furs and skins. Some of these become so attached to their roving and adventurous manner of living, that they are unwilling to spend a day in the settlements after they have disposed of their furs and skins, and supplied themselves with necessities.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

In what direction is Missouri Territory longest ? What rivers can you mention in this territory ? What tribes of Indians ? What Desert ? By what is this desert traversed ?

OREGON TERRITORY.

In what direction from us is Oregon Territory ?

This is an extensive region, distinguished for its mild climate, fertile soil, and for the number and variety of its animals.

Oregon is remarkable for its heavy forests, and for the size of its firs and pines, some of which are represented to be more than 200 feet high.

This extensive country is inhabited almost entirely by Indians. There is an American settlement on the Columbia river, 18 miles from its mouth, called Astoria. It is settled principally by hunters and fur traders.

*Indian Warfare.*

Game of almost every kind, is here abundant. Thousands of buffaloes, wild horses, deer, &c. roam over the immense forests. Beaver are numerous, and the rivers abound in the finest salmon.

This remote section of our country will undoubtedly be settled within a few years, and the rude Indians of the Columbia, like those of the Mississippi and Missouri rivers, will gaze with astonishment upon the powerful steamboat, urging her way where no other force could advance. Cities will doubtless arise on the shores of the Pacific, and the striped and starry banner will find a home equally on both sides of the continent, and an enlightened and happy population, from the eastern to the western ocean, will enjoy the blessings of a wise, free, and popular government.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What mountains form the eastern boundary of Oregon Territory? What is the principal river? c. What are the three principal branches of the Columbia river? M. L. C. What tribes of Indians in Oregon Territory? S. E. E. C. K.

BRITISH AMERICA.

In what direction from us is British America?

British America comprises an immense territory. In its natural features, it is exceeding diversified. Lakes, rivers, bays and gulfs

occupy a large portion of its surface. Throughout the whole of this vast region, the winters are long and severely cold, and the summers short and exceedingly warm.

British America is mostly inhabited by Indians, among whom the whites have established trading houses for the purpose of procuring furs and skins. Wild animals abound, as bears, deer, beaver, moose, wolves, foxes; and water-fowl are found in immense numbers and variety.

The French originally settled Canada, and named the country New France. In 1759, it was conquered by the British, and in 1763 it was ceded by the former to the latter; and from that time it has formed a part of the British dominions.

British America is divided into Canada, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, New Britain, Newfoundland, and several islands in the gulf of St. Lawrence.

CANADA.*

In what direction from *us* is Canada? What is its Capital?

Canada is an extensive country, remarkable for the grandeur of its lakes and rivers, and for the variety of its climate and productions.

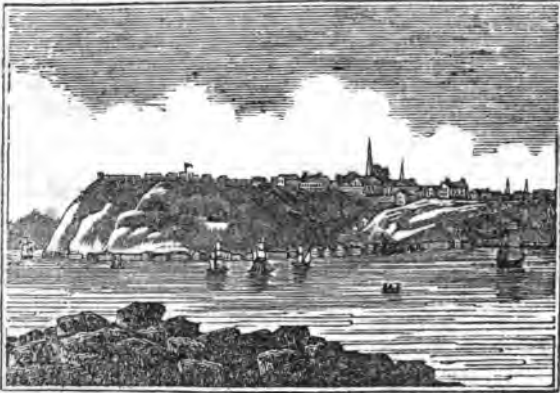
The western part, formerly called Upper Canada, has generally a level surface, and a pleasant and healthy climate, though subject to extremes of heat and cold. In the settled portion along the St. Lawrence, lakes Erie, Ontario and St. Clair, the soil is excellent, and yields abundant crops of grass, wheat, Indian corn, flax, &c. The inhabitants are mostly of English descent, and many of them emigrants from the United States.

The eastern part, formerly called Lower Canada, has an uneven surface, being intersected by parallel ranges of mountains from the sea-coast. Much of the soil is fertile. Though the winters are long and severely cold, the summers are warm and vegetation is rapid, and the products of the soil rise quick to maturity. The principal settlements are in the valley of the St. Lawrence. From Montreal to Quebec, the margin of the river, for about one mile in breadth, presents the appearance of one continued village. More than three fourths of the inhabitants are of French descent called "Habitans," who speak the French language and are Catholics. The remainder are English, Scotch, Irish, and their descendants. The most noted curiosity in this part of Canada are the falls of the Montmorenci, seven miles below Quebec. Near its entrance into the St. Law-

* In 1791, Canada was divided into two provinces, called Upper and Lower Canada. These continued separate and distinct until Feb. 1841, when they were again united, as formerly, under one government.—Kingston is the capital of Canada.

rence, it passes over a rock, and descends in one sheet to the depth of 240 feet, presenting a grand and sublime spectacle.

Towns.—KINGSTON is pleasantly situated on lake Ontario, 190 miles from Montreal. It is regularly laid out, and noted for its safe and convenient harbor, and flourishing trade. It is the principal station for the British shipping on the lake.



Quebec.

Quebec is situated on a promontory, at the confluence of the river St. Charles with the St. Lawrence, about 400 miles from the ocean. The city is divided into two parts, the Upper and Lower Town, by a line of steep rocks. It has a deep, safe and capacious harbor, sufficient to contain 100 sail of the line. It is so strongly fortified, both by nature and art, as to be deemed impregnable.

Montreal is situated on an island of the same name, in the river St. Lawrence, 180 miles above Quebec, and 200 below lake Ontario. It is irregularly built, and is distinguished as the centre of a very extensive and valuable fur trade, and as the great channel of commerce between Canada and the United States.

QUESTIONS.

What lakes between Upper Canada and the United States? w. R. s. H. ST-C. E. O. What river connects lake Ontario to the gulf of St. Lawrence? Its length? What large river empties into the St. Lawrence near Montreal? u. What river connects Lake Champlain to the St. Lawrence? s. What other rivers can you mention? What towns? What part of Canada extends farthest south? Which extends farther south, Canada or Vermont? In what direction from

us is Quebec? Kingston? If we were at Kingston, how many ways could we go to New York by water? What noted curiosity near Quebec? What falls in the river Niagara? Through what must the waters of lake Superior pass to reach the ocean? By whom was Canada first settled? When was it taken and ceded to the British? When was Canada divided into two provinces? What were these provinces called? When was it again united under one government? What proportion of the inhabitants of the eastern part are French? What are they called? What appearance is presented in the valley of the St. Lawrence between Montreal and Quebec? Which do you think has the coldest climate, Quebec or this place? Why? How will you sail from Kingston to St. Johns in New Brunswick?

NEW BRUNSWICK.

In what direction from *us* is New Brunswick?

New Brunswick extends from Maine to the Gulf of St. Lawrence, containing about 30,000 square miles, and 100,000 inhabitants.

The climate, like that of Canada, is subject to great extremes of heat and cold, but is generally healthy. It is mostly a level province, and has generally a fertile soil.

The principal articles of export are *fish* and *timber*,

Chief Towns.—FREDERICKTON, the capital of New Brunswick, is situated on the river St. Johns, 80 miles from its mouth, at the head of sloop navigation. It is regularly laid out, and contains a number of elegant buildings.

St. Johns, situated on the river St. Johns, 3 miles from its mouth, is the largest and most flourishing town in the province. It has a good harbor and an extensive commerce.

What bay between New Brunswick and Nova Scotia? *r.* What is the principal river? *St.-J.* What river forms part of the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick? *St.-c.* How will you sail from St. Johns to Halifax?

NOVA SCOTIA.

In what direction from *us* is Nova Scotia?

Nova Scotia is a narrow peninsula, 300 miles in length, containing about 15,000 square miles, and 100,000 inhabitants.

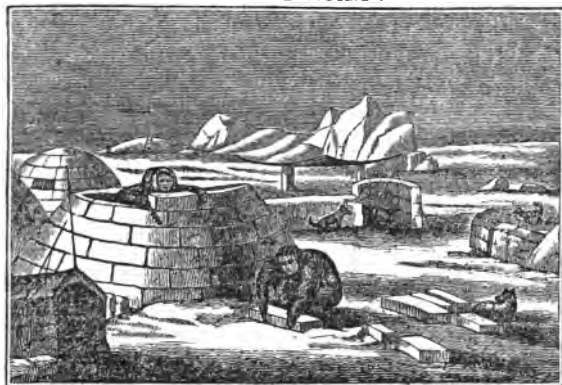
It has a cold, damp climate, and in most parts a thin and unproductive soil. The principal exports are *fish, lumber and plaster of Paris.*

Chief Towns.—HALIFAX, the capital, is situated on Chebucto bay, near the centre of the province. It has a spacious and commodious harbor, and is the principal naval station of Great Britain in North America.

Liverpool and Annapolis are places of considerable trade.

What cape south of Nova Scotia? What island east of Nova Scotia? s. What bay between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? r. For what is it remarkable? A. For its tides, which rise from 40 to 60 feet, and are so rapid that animals are often overtaken and drowned. What two islands N. E. of Nova Scotia? St.-J. and C.-P. What town on Cape *Breton? L.

NEW BRITAIN.



Esquimaux Indians building snow huts.

In what direction from us is New Britain?

New Britain is a cold, barren and desolate region. It includes Labrador, East Main, and New Wales, and is inhabited by various tribes of Indians, among whom the English have erected *forts and trading houses*, for the purpose of procuring *furs and skins.*

* Bre-toon'.

Wild animals abound in these regions; the principal of which are *moose, deer, otters, bears, beavers, martins, foxes, hares, &c.* During the short summer, the numerous lakes and rivers are covered with sea-fowl, which come from the south.

The method of travelling in New Britain, is in *canoes of birch bark*, which are so light that they can easily be conveyed from one stream to another. In these, the fur traders travel thousands of miles, with their furs and skins.



Indians carrying their Canoes.

The *Esquimaux Indians inhabit the coast, and are small, dull, and extremely filthy, living principally on seals and whales. The †Knisteneau inhabit the interior, and are little known.

What Bay divides New Britain? H. What Bay north of Hudson's Bay? R. What Bay south of it? J. What two Islands in Hudson's Bay? S. M. What four rivers empty into Hudson's Bay? W. C. N. S. What three rivers empty into James' Bay? A. M. E. M. What inlet west of Hudson's Bay? C. What two straits lead into Hudson's Bay? What two rivers empty into the Arctic ocean? C. M. Which are the three largest lakes in New Britain? W. A. S. What Indians inhabit the northern part of New Britain? E. What Indians inhabit the coast of Labrador? E. What Indians in the interior? K. What three missionary stations on the coast of Labrador? O. N. H. What Forts near Hudson's and James' Bays? C. A. S. M. What Strait west of Baffin's Bay? B. What Sound at the entrance of Barrow's Strait? L. What name is applied to the Islands north of Barrow's Strait? N. G. Which is the most western of these islands? M. In what direction from us is Melville island? In what zone is

* Es' ke-mo.

† Nis'-te-no.

Melville island? Is the climate warmer or colder in Melville island than in this place? How should you like to live in New Britain? Why? Do they travel in New Britain as we do? Why? What kinds of animals inhabit New Britain, that do not inhabit this state? How will you sail from Melville Island to St. Johns, in Newfoundland?

NEWFOUNDLAND.



Banks of Newfoundland, Cod Fishery.

In what direction from us is Newfoundland?

Newfoundland is celebrated for the *cod fisheries* on its coast, which are the most valuable of any on the globe.

It is generally a rough and barren island, with a cold, damp climate, occasioned by perpetual fogs.

Town.—St. Johns is situated on the southeast coast, and contains about 15,000 inhabitants.

Placentia and Bonavista are the other principal towns.

What Strait separates Newfoundland from Labrador? What Cape south of Newfoundland? *m.* What Bank east of Newfoundland? How long is the Grand Bank? In what direction from Newfoundland are the Bermuda Islands? Iceland? Cuba?

BERMUDA ISLANDS.

In what direction from *us* are the Bermuda Islands?

The Bermudas consist of about 400 small islands, most of which are barren and uninhabited.

They have a temperate and healthy climate, but subject to frequent storms. Population, 10,000.

In what direction from the Bermudas is Cuba? Trinidad? Anticosti? Hayti, or St. Domingo? Iceland?

*RUSSIAN DOMINIONS.

In what direction from *us* are the Russian Possessions?

The Russian Possessions comprise a cold dreary region but little known. They are inhabited by about 1000 whites, and 50,000 Indians, who are subject to Russia, and principally occupied in the collection of furs.

Questions.—What Straits separate the Russian Possessions from Asia? What Cape east of Bhering's Straits? What Cape in Asia opposite to Cape Prince of Wales? *x.* Where is the Russian settlement of Portlock harbor? What settlement on Prince of Wales Isle? Sitka. Which is farthest north, the Russian Possessions or *this* state? In what direction from *us* are the Russian Possessions? Have they schools in the Russian Possessions?

GREENLAND.

In what direction from *us* is Greenland?

Greenland is one of the coldest and most barren countries on the globe, exhibiting little except rocks, and mountains of ice and snow. It belongs to Denmark, and is principally valuable for the whale fishery on its coast.

The Moravians have established several missionary stations here,

* Ru'-shian.

for the purpose of instructing them in the principles of religion, and imparting to them the blessings of the gospel.

Formerly Greenland was supposed to be a part of North America; but late discoveries render it probable that it is a vast island.



White Bear.

The principal animal in Greenland is the *white bear*, which attacks indiscriminately both man and beast.

The Greenlanders are small in stature, and are a weak, indolent, and superstitious race. The population is supposed to be 20,000.

What Cape south of Greenland? *F.* What missionary station near cape Farewell? *L.* What settlement N. W. of Lichtenau? *A.* What four settlements on the western coast of Greenland? *G. H. U. V.* Which is the most northerly settlement? *U.* What three sounds at the northern extremity of Baffin's Bay? *S. W. J.* What island on the western coast of Greenland? *D.* [A vast mine of sea coal has been discovered in the island of Disco.] What settlement on Disco Isle? *G.* Where is Icy Peak? Where are the Arctic Highlands? What island east of Greenland? What town on it? What mountain? What Bay and Straits separate Greenland from North America?

TEXAS.

How is Texas bounded? What is its capital?

Texas is a new, interesting and important State. It embraces one of the finest countries in the world. Its soil is of uncommon fertility—its climate, one of alter-

nate spring and summer; and its productions comprise most of those of temperate and torrid zones.

The face of the country is level on the coast, uneven in the interior, and hilly and mountainous in the north-west. Near the rivers and streams, the land is well wooded, but farther back, it spreads out into vast prairies or savannas, which in the vernal season, are covered with thousands of flowers of every size and hue. Texas contains a number of large rivers, and is very favorably situated for commerce, both internal and foreign.

History. Formerly Texas was a province of Mexico. In 1836, the people declared themselves independent, and adopted a republican form of government, similar to that of the United States.

Towns.—AUSTIN, the present capital has been recently laid out. It is pleasantly situated, and is rapidly increasing in population.

Houston, the former capital, is the largest town in Texas. It was laid out in 1837, and now contains several elegant edifices and about 7000 inhabitants.

Galveston is the principal sea-port, and promises to become an important place.

In what direction from us is Texas? Which has the highest latitude, Texas or this State? Which do you suppose then has the warmest climate? Which extends farthest south, Texas or Louisiana? What river separates Texas from Louisiana? What rivers can you mention in Texas? What towns? Did you ever see a person who had been to Texas? How many square miles has Texas? In what direction is Texas longest? How will you sail from Galveston to Washington the capital of the United States?

MEXICO.

How is Mexico bounded? What is its Capital?

Mexico is a large, rich, and populous country, and is noted for the fertility of its soil, for its valuable productions, and for its numerous and extensive mines of gold and silver.*

The surface is very irregular. The shores are low and flat; but the interior rises into a lofty plain, or table land, 6 or 8,000 feet high, and 1,700 miles in length.

The most valuable productions are *m^aize, wheat,*

* The mines of Mexico produce annually about twenty millions of dollars. The three principal mines are Guanajuato, Zacatecas, and Catorce.

coffee, sugar, indigo, tobacco, cotton, logwood, mahogany, cochineal, and most kinds of tropical fruits.

The climate varies with the elevation; and the inhabitants designate these variations by appropriate names; the *low portion* near the coast, is called the *hot country*; the *middle regions*, the *temperate country*; and the *higher regions*, the *cold country*.

Mexico, when discovered by Europeans, was the seat of a powerful empire, and inhabited by a brave and warlike people who were acquainted with many of the arts, and had made considerable advances in civilization. Many remains of their monuments and buildings still exist. The most celebrated among them is the Pyramid of Cholula, 70 miles east of Mexico. It consists of four stories of terraces, and is 177 feet high, and 1,423 feet broad. It is built of unburnt bricks. On the top of the Pyramid was a temple in which they offered human sacrifices to the sun.

This vast country was conquered by the Spaniards under Fernando Cortez in 1521. It was called New Spain, and remained a Spanish Province till 1821, when the nation declared itself independent, and established a republican form of government.



Great Square, Mexico.

Towns.—MEXICO is the most ancient, and one of the most populous cities in America. It is situated near lake Tezcuco, in a delightful valley, which is 230 miles in circumference, and elevated more than 7,000 feet above the level of the ocean. It is regularly built in the form of a square, of four miles on each side. It is distinguished for the width and regularity of its streets, the splendor of its public edifices, and for its mint, at which more money is coined than at any other in the world.

Guanaxuato is a large and flourishing city, 150 miles N. W. of Mexico. The ground on which the city is built, is about 7,000 feet above the level of the sea. It is distinguished for gold and silver mines.

*Puebla is situated on a large plain, 70 miles S. E. of Mexico. The city is regularly laid out, and contains many elegant buildings. The ground on which it stands is elevated more than 7,000 feet above the level of the ocean. It is famous for its manufactures of earthen ware, iron and steel.

†Zacatecas is situated in a mountainous country, 240 miles N. W. of Mexico. It is one of the most celebrated mining places in Mexico.

Vera Cruz, the principal port on the Gulf of Mexico, is a place of great trade. It is unhealthy, and has a poor harbor.

Acapulco is the principal port on the Pacific. It is distinguished for its excellent harbor, but is a miserable, unhealthy town.

BALIZE SETTLEMENT.

This comprises a small territory in Mexico, on the east side of the Peninsula of Yucatan. It is owned by the British, and was established for the purpose of cutting logwood and mahogany.

It extends along the Bay of Honduras about 150 miles, and is inhabited by Negroes and Indians, with a few whites.

BALIZE, the capital, is situated on a river of the same name. It contains about 250 houses, built of wood. It is the only seaport in the Settlement, and its exports annually amount to about one million and a half of dollars.

In what direction from us is Mexico? What are the four principal rivers emptying into the Gulf of California? c. g. h. c. What one into the Pacific? g. What rivers empty into the Gulf of Mexico? What towns or cities can you mention in Mexico? What two lakes in the northern part of Mexico? s. t. What lake in the southern part? c. What mountains in Mexico? c. Where is the volcano of Popocatepetl? A. In the southern part of Mexico, between Oaxaca and La Puebla. How high is Popocatepetl?

CENTRAL AMERICA, OR GUATIMALA.

How is Guatimala bounded? What is its Capital?

Central America, or Guatimala, is a rich, populous, and fertile country, noted for its warm climate, numerous volcanoes, and for its beautiful and picturesque scenery.

* Poo-a-bla.

† Zak-a-te'cas.

‡ Po-po-kat-a-pel.

The most valuable productions are *grain, cochineal,* honey, cotton, sugar-cane, indigo, allspice*, and *tropical fruits*. The bay of Honduras is celebrated for its *logwood* and *mahogany*. Cattle and sheep are abundant.



Cutting Logwood.

This is generally a mountainous country, and is remarkable for its volcanoes; more than twenty are constantly burning. Eruptions and earthquakes are common.

This country was conquered by the Spaniards under Pedro de Alvarado in 1524, and continued a Spanish province till 1821, when it declared itself independent of Spain, and established a republican form of government.

Towns.—ST. SALVADOR is pleasantly situated in the midst of a fine valley, and is surrounded by a country of great fertility. Its inhabitants are chiefly employed in the indigo trade.

New Guatemala is the most populous city, and is situated in a delightful valley, nearly one mile above the level of the sea.

Old Guatemala, the former capital, was destroyed in 1830 by an

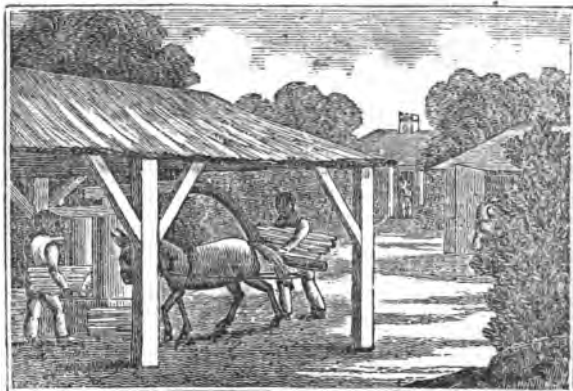
*Cochineal is an insect, which affords a most beautiful crimson tint. It feeds upon the *Nopal* or *Cactus Cochinitifer*, and is gathered by the natives. It is used in giving red colors, especially crimson and scarlet, and for making carmine. From Guatemala and Mexico, cochineal is annually exported, to the amount of two and a half millions of dollars.

earthquake. It is rebuilding, and contains several thousand inhabitants.

The other principal towns are Cartago and Leon. The chief sea ports are *Truxillo and Omoa.

In what direction from us is Central America, or Guatemala? What lake in Guatemala? N. What river is the outlet of lake Nicaragua? St.-J. What bay in the northern part? A. Which has the greatest latitude, or which is farthest from the equator, Leon or *this* place? Is the climate warmer or colder in Guatemala than in *this* state? In what direction from us is Guatemala?

WEST INDIES.



Sugar Mill.

Where are the West Indies situated?

The West Indies comprise one of the most important and valuable groups of islands on the globe. They are distinguished for the fertility of their soil, the value of their productions, the amount of their exports, and for their numerous slaves.

These islands produce sugar, cotton, coffee, indigo, allspice, ginger, cocoa, tobacco; also, tropical fruits, as oranges, lemons, limes, pomegranates, citrons, pine apples, melons, &c. Maize, yams, and sweet potatoes are extensively raised for food. The mountains abound in valuable trees, as cedar, mahogany, lignum-vitæ, &c.

* Tru-keel'-ya.

There are but two seasons, the *wet* and the *dry*. The climate is extremely warm and unhealthy during the summer months, from May till December; but during the remainder of the year, the weather is serene and pleasant, and the temperature cool and delightful—thus constituting one of the most healthy and agreeable climates on the globe. During the months of August and September, these islands are subject to dreadful hurricanes, which often do extensive injury, also to earthquakes and violent thunder.

More than three-fourths of the population are African slaves. The white inhabitants are mostly planters, and are generally wealthy, and noted for frankness, generosity, and hospitality.

The West India islands are usually divided into the Greater and Little Antilles—the Bahamas, and the Caribbean islands. Except Hayti, they all belong to some European power—principally to Great Britain, France and Spain.

A TABULAR VIEW OF THE PRINCIPAL WEST INDIA ISLANDS.

Bahamas.

<i>Islands.</i>	<i>Belonging to</i>	<i>Sq. miles.</i>	<i>Pop.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Bahama Providence Turks *Guanahani	G. Britain.	5500	15000	Nassau.

Great Antilles.

Cuba	Spain	50000	620000	Havanna.
†Hayti	Independent	28000	650000	Cape Henry.
Jamaica	G. Britain	6400	360000	Kingston.
Porto Rico	Spain	4000	225000	St. Juan.

Caribbean Islands.

Trinidad	G. Britain	1700	25000	Port of Spain
Gaudaloupe	France	675	115000	Basse Terre.
Martinico	France	370	95000	St. Pierre.
St. Lucia	G. Britain	225	16000	Carenage.
Barbadoes	G. Britain	166	93000	Bridgetown.
Tobago	G. Britain	140	16000	Scarborough.
St. Vincent	G. Britain	130	23000	Kingston.
Grenada	G. Britain	110	31000	St. George.
Santa Cruz	Denmark	100	31000	Santa Cruz.
Antigua	G. Britain	93	36000	St. John's.
Tortola	G. Britain	90	11000	Road Harbor.
St. Thomas	Denmark	40	5000	St. Thomas.

* The first land discovered by Columbus, Oct. 12, 1492.

† Formerly called Hispaniola, or St. Domingo.

Cities.—HAVANA, the capital of the island of Cuba, is one of the largest and most flourishing cities in America, and is considered as the key of the West Indies. It carries on an extensive commerce, and has one of the best harbors in the world, capable of containing 1000 vessels without either cable or anchor. The entrance into the harbor is so narrow as to admit only one vessel at a time. It is strongly-fortified, and adorned with numerous churches and other elegant edifices.

Kingston, the largest city of Jamaica, is pleasantly situated, contains many handsome buildings, and has an extensive trade.

In what direction from us are the West India islands? Which is the most northerly group of the West India islands? B. Which is the most northerly island? A. Which is the most easterly of the West India islands? B. Which is the most southerly island? T. Which is the most westerly? C. What four towns on the island of Cuba? H. M. St.-s. St.-J. To whom does Cuba belong? What is its population? Its capital? What three towns in Hayti? C-H. P-F. S-D. What is its population? Capital? To whom does Jamaica belong? Its capital? To whom does Porto Rico belong? What is its capital? What cluster of islands lie about midway between Porto Rico and Nova Scotia? B.

South America.

7 M. Sq. Miles	6 M. Sq. Miles	
SOUTH	NORTH	EUROPE
AMERICA	AMERICA	3 M. Sq. M.
Pop. 15 M.	Pop. 25 M.	Pop. 220 M.

Comparative View of South America, North America and Europe.

South America is one of the richest, most fertile, and picturesque divisions of the globe. It surpasses all others in the size and grandeur of its rivers, and in the height and extent of its mountains; and is remarkable for the variety of its animal, vegetable and mineral productions.

It is naturally divided into three great sections—the western, middle, and eastern. The western consists of a broad, mountain plain, elevated about 12,000 feet above the level of the sea, crowned by the more lofty tops and peaks of the Andes. The middle section embraces the interior from north to south. It is a great expanse of country, composed of marshy or sandy plains, furrowed by three immense rivers, and their numerous branches. The eastern section, embracing the eastern part of Brazil, consists of an elevated region, but of less extent than the western.

South America is noted for the varieties of its climate. These arise principally from the vast difference in the degrees of elevation between the highest and lowest lands. In the middle section, or low country near the equator, the temperature is that of perpetual summer. The trees, plants and shrubs are constantly clothed in verdure—flowers blossom, and fruits ripen throughout the year. The declivities and plains of the mountains enjoy a cool, delightful climate, and the temperature is that of perpetual spring. On the lofty and snowy summits of the mountains, perpetual winter reigns as severe as in the frozen regions of the north.

The majestic rivers of South America leave far behind them those of the old world, both by the length of their course and in the vast amount of water they convey to the ocean. The largest of these is the Amazon. It is formed by a great number of rivers which rise in the Andes, the largest of which is the Ucayale. It flows into the Atlantic under the equator. The width of the mouth is stated by some writers at 150, and by others at 180 miles. Boat navigation commences at Jaen, and it is said that vessels of 400 or 500 tons, may sail from the mouth throughout almost its whole extent. Its depth 1500 miles from the ocean, is stated at from 30 to 40 fathoms. The banks are covered with immense and impenetrable forests, where the foot of man has rarely or never trod, but where multitudes of wild and ferocious animals roam undisturbed. Here are found a great variety of venomous serpents, and birds of the most beautiful plumage and

song, and apes of the most fantastic appearance. The waters swarm with alligators, turtles, and a great variety of fish. The second river in South America is the La Plata. Its majestic course is full as broad as that of the Amazon, and its immense opening at its mouth might be considered as a gulf. At the distance of 200 miles from the sea it is 30 miles in width.

The vegetable kingdom in South America is noted for its variety and abundance. Among the trees, the most remarkable is the palm, of which there are eighty-seven varieties, which are equally distinguished for their beauty and size, and for their various uses, furnishing wine, oil, wax, and sugar. Besides these, the cocoa, banana, cinchona and a multitude of others abound, common to the tropical and temperate climates.

The potato, cocoa, vanilla and maize are native plants, and the soil yields a great number of medicinal plants and dye stuffs, and resinous trees. The plantations of Guiana yield all the productions of the West Indies. Cayenne produces spices, and Paraguay matte or tea. Almost every variety of grain is cultivated, and flowering shrubs exist in the greatest abundance. The most delicious fruits, as oranges, citrons, pine apples, pomegranates, pears, apples, figs, grapes, &c. grow almost spontaneously in the greatest plenty.

In the animal kingdom, the Jaguar, or American tiger, the puma, or cougar, and the ocelot, are the principal beasts of prey. The lama, guanaco and vicuna, of the sheep kind—the tapir and peccary, of the hog kind, are peculiar to the countries on the Andes. The alligator or caymen attains to a length of 15 feet or more, and there are numerous serpents of monstrous size. The birds are numerous and noted for the brilliancy of their plumage, and the sweetness of their song. The condor is the largest bird of flight known in the world. In the great grassy plains, or pampas, in the United Provinces and Brazil, roam numberless herds of wild horses and cattle, sprung from those brought to the country by Europeans; the latter are so numerous that they are killed merely for their hides.

The mineral kingdom abounds in the most precious productions. The diamond mines of Brazil are the most prolific in the world, and the extensive mines of gold, silver, platina and mercury, excel those of any other part of the globe. In Chili there is scarcely a mountain without gold, or a river without golden sand. Iron, lead, tin, copper, salt, &c. are abundant, but are little sought after.

South America formerly was divided into provinces, most of which were under the government of Spain and Portugal. But these have become independent of these powers, and with the exception of Brazil, have established republican forms of government. Considerable attention is paid to education. Several universities have been founded, and information has been extensively diffused by means of books and newspapers.

The population* of South America is composed of Whites, Indians, Negroes, Mestizoes, Mulattoes, and Samboes. The higher classes of the whites are well educated and wealthy, but dissolute in their morals; the lower classes are ignorant, indolent and generally vicious.

SOUTH AMERICA.

How is South America bounded?

New Grenada?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Venezuela?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Ecuador?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Guiana?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Peru?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Bolivia?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Brazil?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Paraguay?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Uruguay?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Buenos Ayres?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Chili?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Patagonia?			Rivers?

RIVERS.

Where does Port Desire river rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty? Camaranes? Rio Negro? Colorado? Willows? Saladillo? Dulce? Salado? Vermejo or Grand? Pilcomayo? Paraguay? Uruguay? Panama? St. Francisco? Salgado? Parnatha? Itapecura? Tocantins? Araguay? †Xingu? Tapajos? Madeira? Puros? Ucayale? Amazon? Negro? Yupura? Putumayo? Napo? Pastaca? Essequibo? Oronoco? Magdalena? Cauca?

ISLANDS.

Where is the island of Trinidad?
 Where is the island of Joannes or Marajo?
 Where are Martin Vas, Trinidad, and Saxemburg Isles?
 Where are Georgia, Aurora, and Falkland Isles?
 Where is the island of Terra del Fuego?
 Where is Staten Land?
 Where is the island of Chiloe?
 Where are Juan Fernandes and Massafuero Isles?
 Where are the islands of St. Felix and Ambrose?

* The Whites that are born in America, are called Creoles—those born in Spain, Chapatonos. The mulattoes are descendants of whites and negroes, and the mestizoes of whites and Indians;—and the Samboes of negroes and Indians.

† Zin'gu.

CAPES.

Where is Cape Vela ?
 Where is Cape St. Roque ?
 Where is Cape Horn ?
 Where is Cape Blanco ?
 Where is Cape Orange ?
 Where is Cape North ?
 Where is Cape Frio ?
 Where are Cape St. Maria and Cape St. Antonio ?
 Where is Cape Pillar ?
 Where are Cape St. Francisco and Cape Corientes ?

LAKES.

Where is Lake Titicaca ?
 Where is Salt Lake ?
 Where is Lake Colugnape ?
 Where is Lake de-los-Palos ?
 Where is Lake Maracaybo ?

BAYS.

Where is St. George's Bay ?
 Where is the Bay of St. Matthias ?
 Where is Anegada Bay ?
 Where is the Bay of All Saints ?
 Where is the Bay of Panama ?

GULFS.

Where is the Gulf of Maracaybo ?
 Where is the Gulf of Darien ?
 Where is the Gulf of Penas ?
 Where is the Archipelago of Chonos ?

MOUNTAINS.

How far do the Andes extend ?
 Where is Chimborazo, the highest peak of the Andes ?
 Where is Cotopaxi, the second highest peak ?
 Where is Mount Chillan ?

NEW GRENADA.

Sq. m. 450,000. Pop. 1,500,000. 3 on a sq. m.

How is New Grenada bounded ? What is its capital ?

New Grenada is a large, populous, and interesting State. It is distinguished for its elevated plains, lofty mountains, and for the great variety of its climate and productions.

The population is comprised chiefly in the valleys between the mountains, which are extremely fertile, producing cotton, grain, coffee, tobacco, and the various tropical fruits in abundance. The mountains are rich in mineral treasures. The gold and silver mines yield about two millions of dollars annually. There are mines of copper, tin, and lead; and on the coast is a valuable pearl fishery.

The most noted curiosity in New Grenada, is the cataract of Te-quén-da-ma, in the river Bogota, or Trunza, 15 miles from Bogota. Above the falls, the river is more than 400 feet wide, but is suddenly compressed to 35 or 40 feet in width, and at two bounds plunges down a descent of more than 600 feet, into an abyss below.

The natural bridge of Iconanzo, on the route from Bogota to Popayan, extends across a chasm more than 360 feet in depth, at the bottom of which flows a rapid torrent.

Cities.—BOGOTA is situated in the midst of a fertile plain, 8000 feet above the level of the sea. It is handsomely built, and contains many elegant edifices; among which, are a cathedral, university, government palace, and numerous churches and convents.

Carthagená, the principal port of the republic, is strongly fortified, and has an excellent harbor and considerable commerce. It is generally well built, and contains several handsome churches and convents.

In what direction from us is New Grenada? What cities can you mention in New Grenada? What rivers? In what direction is New Grenada longest? If we were at Bogota, the capital, to-day, in what direction would the sun be from us at 12 o'clock? Could we reach home by land? How? The Isthmus of Darien is 24 miles wide; how long would it take you to cross it, if you should travel 4 miles an hour?

VENEZUELA.

Sq. m. 425,000. Pop. 1,000,000. 2 on a sq. m.

How is Venezuela bounded? What is its capital?

Venezuela consists mostly of a vast plain, watered by the Orinoco and its numerous branches.

The climate is warm throughout the year, and the soil remarkably fertile, producing sugar, coffee, indigo, cotton, and tobacco, and tropical fruits in abundance. The plains, or llanos, as far as the eye can reach, are covered with tall grass, on which graze vast herds of horses, oxen, and mules. The hides of these animals constitute one of the principal articles of the commerce of the country.

Cities.—CARACAS is pleasantly situated in a valley, about 12 miles from the coast. Its streets are broad, well built, and cross each

other at right angles. In 1812, the city was mostly destroyed by an earthquake, and about 12,000 persons buried beneath its ruins. It is mostly rebuilt, and contains many elegant edifices. La Guayra, the port of Caraccas, has an extensive trade.

In what direction from us is Venezuela? In what direction is Venezuela longest? Do you think the R. Orinoco resembles the figure 6? What lake and gulf in the N. W. part? What cities can you mention in Venezuela? Rivers? If you were at S. Joaquim to-day at 12 o'clock, in what direction would your shadow fall?

ECUADOR.

Sq. m. 300,000. Pop. 600,000. 2 on a sq. m.



Quito.

How is Ecuador bounded? What is its capital?

Ecuador embraces the most interesting portion of South America. It is remarkable for its lofty mountains, its elevated plains, and its climate of perpetual spring.

Two ridges of the Andes extend through the western part, between which is one of the finest plains on the globe. It is about 30 miles in width, and at an elevation of more than 9000 feet above the level of the sea. Perpetual spring reigns in this delightful and magnificent

valley ; vegetation never ceases ; and the meadows and trees are crowned with constant verdure.

Cities.—QUITO is one of the finest cities in the world. It is situated on the eastern slope of Mount Pichincha, and is adorned with several magnificent churches and convents. It has two celebrated universities ; and its inhabitants are noted for their vivacity and politeness.

Guayaquil, situated on a Gulf of the same name, has a good harbor, and is one of the most flourishing commercial cities in America.

In what direction from us is Ecuador ? What noted mountains in Ecuador ? Chimborazo, Cotopaxi, Antisana, and Pichincha. What cities in Ecuador ? Rivers ? Which do you think would be the most pleasant place of residence, *this State*, or Ecuador ? In what direction is Ecuador longest ? If we were at Jaen, could we sail to any place in this State ? How ?

GUIANA.

Sq. m. 165,000. Pop. 200,000.

How is Guiana bounded ? What are its Capitals ?

Guiana is a level, warm, and fertile country, remarkable for the variety of its valuable productions. The principal settlements are along the coast ; the interior is in possession of native Indians.

Guiana is overspread with the most luxuriant vegetation, abounding in the finest woods, in fruits of every description, and in an infinite variety of both rare and useful plants. The chief productions are sugar, coffee, cotton, cocoa, maize, indigo, &c.

The fruit trees are in great variety, and the fruits they yield of the most exquisite delicacy and flavor. The orange and lemon trees are in bloom throughout the year, and loaded with ripe and ripening fruit. Wild animals and beasts of prey are numerous. Among these the jaguar, and cougar are the most powerful and ferocious. In the rivers are found the alligator, the tapir, and the manati, or sea cow. There are numerous kinds of serpents ; of these, the boa, or aboma, is the largest. It is an amphibious snake, from 30 to 40 feet in length. It is perfectly indifferent as to its prey, and destroys, when hungry, any animal that comes within its reach. The vampire bat is also found in Guiana, and grows to an enormous size, measuring about thirty-two and a half inches between the tips of the two wings

It sucks the blood of men and cattle when they are fast asleep. After it is full, it disgorges the blood, and begins to suck afresh, until it reduces the sufferer to a state of great weakness.

Guiana is divided into three parts;—the western is owned by the English, the eastern by the French, and the middle by the Dutch.

Cities.—GEORGETOWN, or Stabroek, the capital of English Guiana, is situated at the mouth of the Demarary river.

PARAMARIBO, the capital of Dutch Guiana, is pleasantly situated on the Surinam river, 18 miles from the sea.

CAYENNE, the capital of French Guiana, is situated on an island of the same name. It has a good harbor, which is well defended by a castle.

In what direction from us is Guiana? What town at the mouth of the †Essequibo river? E. What town at the mouth of the Demarary river? G. What town at the mouth of the †Berbice river? N.A. What town at the mouth of the Surinam river? P. What town on an island near the coast? C. How is Guiana divided? E. D. F.

PERU.

Sq. m. 450,000. Pop. 1,500,000.

How is Peru bounded? What is its Capital?

Peru is a large country, distinguished for the richness of its mines, its valuable productions, and the great varieties of its climate.

The western part, between the Andes and the Pacific, 40 or 50 miles in width, consists mostly of sandy, barren plains. The middle portion, lying between the two great ridges of the mountains, consists of table lands, 8000 feet above the level of the sea. Perpetual spring reigns in this region, and vegetation blooms throughout the year. The part east of the mountains, consists of immense plains, or *pampas*, covered only with grass.

The most important productions are cotton, grain, cocoa, sugar, coffee, and Peruvian bark. It has mines of gold, silver, copper, mercury, and lead.

Peru at the present time is divided into two States, called North Peru and South Peru. The capital of the former is Lima; that of the latter, Cuzco.

* Es-se-kee'-ho.

† Ber-bees

‡ Peru is the only country in America that produces mercury, or quicksilver.

Cities.—***LIMA** is situated on a small river in the midst of a spacious and delightful valley, 7 miles from the Pacific. It enjoys a perpetual summer climate, and is distinguished for the magnificence of its public buildings, and the rich ornaments of the churches. It was founded by Pizarro, in 1535. Callao is the port of Lima.

Cuzco, 550 miles S. E. of Lima, was the ancient capital of the Peruvian Empire, founded in 1043, by Manca Capac, the first Inca of Peru. It was taken by the Spaniards under Pizarro, in 1534. It contained a magnificent temple of the sun, and other edifices, decorated with gold, and adorned with the idols of the various nations subdued by the Incas. The city still preserves many monuments of its ancient grandeur.

In what direction from us is Peru? What large river rises in Peru and empties into the Atlantic? What three rivers rise in lake Rogaguado? P. J. J. What two other rivers in Peru? H. V. What mountains extend through the western part of Peru? A. What twelve cities on the Pacific? P. † L. T. G. H. C. P. I. C. Q. A. A. What two towns among the Andes? ‡ C. T. What three towns east of the Andes? § C. G. C. Which is the most northerly city in Peru? Which is the most southern? A.

BRAZIL.

Sq. m. 3,300,000. Pop. 5,000,000.

How is Brazil bounded? What is its Capital?

Brazil is generally level, and has a fertile soil, and in most parts, a temperate and healthy climate. It is celebrated for its mines of *gold, silver, and diamonds*.

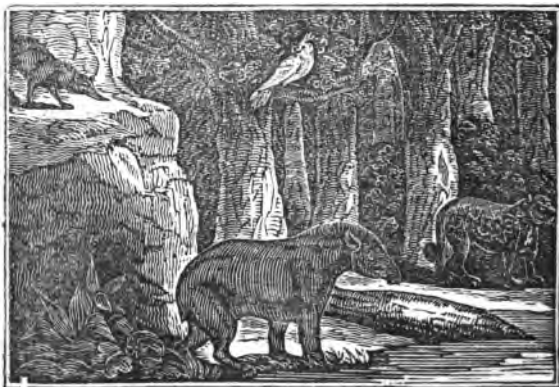
The principal productions are *sugar, tobacco, indigo, maize*, and various kinds of *dye woods*.

Brazil is a country of vast extent, and one of the richest regions of the earth. It is distinguished for its navigable rivers, for the variety of its animal and vegetable productions, and for its mines of *gold, silver and diamonds*.

Viewed from the sea, Brazil appears rugged and mountainous; but on a nearer approach, its appearance is highly romantic and picturesque, clothed as it is with the most luxuriant vegetation, its hills covered with thick woods, and its valleys with verdure.

* Lee'-ma. † Lam-ba-eké'. ‡ Cax-a-mar'-ka. § Cam-a-roé'-ke.

The interior is an immense wilderness, overspread with impenetrable forests, which abound in beautiful and useful wood, adapted for dyeing, cabinet work and ship building. The woods are filled with aromatic plants and flowering shrubs. Wild animals are numerous, and birds of the most brilliant plumage. In the interior, are vast herds of wild cattle and horses, which are hunted only for their skins. The forests swarm with insects. Serpents are numerous, some of which are from 25 to 40 feet in length.



Brazilian Forest.

Were we to examine all parts of the globe, we probably should not find a pleasanter country than Brazil—one blessed with a more genial climate or a more fertile soil—more happily diversified with wood and water, or with abundance of navigable rivers, or more famed for its precious produce of gold and diamonds. It comprises within its limits nearly all the most valued productions of the earth. Cotton, sugar, coffee, rice, &c. abound in the northern part, and wheat and other grains, fruits, &c. in the southern parts and mountainous districts.

Brazil is more particularly celebrated for its gold and diamonds, which abound in the higher regions of the interior, and are chiefly found in the beds of the mountain torrents where the stream is most rapid, or among the gravel or pebbles of the deep valleys.

The white population is principally in the southern part, and along the coast. The remainder is inhabited by Indians, who are extremely hostile to the whites.

The western part of Brazil is called Amazonia, which embraces the interior of South America. It is inhabited entirely by Indians, of whom little is known.

Cities.—RIO JANEIRO is well situated for trade, and is distinguished for its fine harbor and extensive commerce. The town is well built, and adorned with numerous churches and convents.

Pernambuco is a flourishing place, and has a large trade, principally in cotton.

In what direction from us is Brazil? In what direction is Brazil longest? What towns can you mention in Brazil? Rivers? Which part of Brazil do you imagine is warmest? Why? If we were at Almeida to-day, in what direction would our shadows fall at 12 o'clock? How many States border on Brazil on the west?

BOLIVIA.

Sq. m. 450,000. Pop. 1,350,000. 3 on a sq. m.

How is Bolivia bounded? What is its Capital?

Bolivia resembles Peru in climate, soil, and productions. It is famous for its silver mines, particularly those of Potosi, which are the richest on the globe.

Bolivia was formerly included in the province of Buenos Ayres. In 1825 it was erected into a state, and named after Bolivar, the distinguished South American General.

The silver mines of Potosi, so celebrated throughout the world, were accidentally discovered in 1545, by a Peruvian Indian named Hualpa, or Hualco, as he was pursuing some wild goats up the mountain. Arriving at a steep place, he laid hold of a bush to assist him in his course, but the shrub, unable to support his weight, was torn up by the roots, and disclosed to the hunter a rich mass of silver. For a time, Hualpa concealed the knowledge of his discovery even from his friends. But his sudden and abounding wealth soon excited their suspicions, and they at length induced him to reveal the secret to them. A quarrel happening between him and his Indian associates, Hualpa made known the existence of the mine to his master, who was a Spaniard. From the time of the first discovery to 1803, these mines yielded 1,476,372,174 dollars in silver, besides a large amount in gold.

Cities.—CHUQUISACA, or LA PLATA, is pleasantly situated in the western part. It is generally well built and noted for its beautiful scenery.

POTOSI is situated on a declivity of the mountain which contains the celebrated mines of Potosi. The streets are narrow and irregular. The houses are built of stone or brick, of only one

story, with balconies of wood, but without chimneys. The city contains a college, several monasteries and convents and 19 churches, and a mint. Potosi is the centre of trade between the United Provinces and the Pacific, and is noted for the gaiety and dissipation of its inhabitants.

In what direction from us is Bolivia? What extensive Desert in the western part? A. What seaport on the coast? C. or Port ——. What town among the Andes? L-P. What town on the Pilcomayo? P. On the Vermejo? T. What town in the interior? C.

BUENOS AYRES.

Sq. m. 750,000. Pop. 1,000,000.

How is Buenos Ayres bounded? What is its Capital?

This is an extensive country, distinguished for its majestic rivers, vast plains, and the variety of its valuable productions.

The northern and western parts of this vast region are mountainous and unproductive, and inhabited principally by Indians. The central and southern parts consist of immense plains called Pampas, similar to the Prairies in the United States. They are about 1500 miles in length and 500 in breadth, exhibiting the appearance of a vast sea of coarse grass.

Innumerable herds of wild cattle, horses, ostriches and other animals occupy these plains. The inhabitants are the Gauchos, who are of Spanish origin, but who lead a life of wild independence, living on horseback, and the Pampas Indians, who lead the same kind of life as the Gauchos, with whom they are perpetually at war. Armed with his *lasso*, or leather strap, the Gaucho or Indian rides on horseback, and with great dexterity throws it round the neck of a wild horse, bull, or other animal which he wishes to take, and by a sudden jerk, throws the animal to the ground, and gallops off with his booty.

The productions are numerous, consisting of most kinds of grain, sugar, wine, tobacco, and the various fruits of the torrid and temperate zones. There are rich mines of gold, silver, copper and lead. The principal exports are hides, tallow and beef.

Cities.—BUENOS AYRES is pleasantly situated on the La Plata, one hundred and eighty miles from its mouth. It is regularly built, and is rapidly increasing in commerce and population. It is strongly fortified, and celebrated for the mildness and salubrity of its climate. The La Plata is here 30 miles wide, but

the navigation is dangerous, owing to rocks and shoals, and frequent storms.



Buenos-Ayres.

Mendoza is pleasantly situated on the Andes, and the most convenient route over the mountains passes through it. Tucuman and Cordova are celebrated for their universities.

In what direction from us is Buenos Ayres? What towns can you mention in Buenos Ayres? Rivers? Lake? In what direction is Buenos Ayres longest? Which part of Buenos Ayres is warmest? Why? Which part of the United States is warmest? Why? If you wished to travel from Buenos Ayres to Valparaiso, what mountains must you cross? What does Buenos Ayres in Spanish signify? A. Good air. If you were at Tucuman, what would you do in order to return to this place?

PARAGUAY.

Sq. m. 75,000. Pop. 150,000. 2 on a sq. m.

How is Paraguay bounded? What is its capital?

Paraguay is a small, level, and fertile State, remarkable for its healthy climate, and for the variety and value of its productions.

The vast plains of Paraguay abound in immense herds of wild cattle, and the forests are filled with birds of the most beautiful plumage. Tropical fruits, corn, wine, sugar, rice, indigo, and various drugs, are produced in abundance. But the most noted production in this State is Matte, or Paraguay tea, which is used in most parts of S. America as the tea of China is with us.

Paraguay is governed by the celebrated Dr. Francia, who rules with absolute sway, under the title of Dictator. He has prohibited all intercourse with foreigners, and persons who enter the country are detained in prison. He lives without pomp or parade, and evidently has the good of his subjects at heart. There is perfect security of person and property. Lyceums and public schools are established throughout the State, and all the inhabitants are taught reading, writing, and arithmetic. Every one is compelled to work at some occupation, and idleness and beggary are unknown.

Cities.—ASSUMPTION is situated in the midst of a fertile country. The climate is temperate and healthy, and throughout the year the trees are either in foliage or loaded with fruit. It contains the Dictator's palace and several other elegant edifices.

Conception and Villa Rica are the next most important towns.

In what direction from us is Paraguay? Between what two rivers is it situated? What towns in it? In what direction is it longest? Under whose government is Paraguay? What singular herb in Paraguay? What use is made of Matte? Suppose we should go into Paraguay, what would Dr. Francia do with us? What right would he have to imprison us? What do you think of his regulation in regard to instructing the people, and making them work?

URUGUAY.

Sq. m. 80,000. Pop. 100,000. 1 on a sq. m.

How is Uruguay bounded? What is its capital?

Uruguay is a small State, formerly known under the name of the Banda Oriental. It is generally level and fertile, and the climate healthy.

On account of its favorable situation for commercial pursuits, this country was highly prized both by Brazil and Buenos Ayres, and great exertions made by each to obtain possession of it. After a war of several years, in which both governments became exhausted, it was declared independent of both, under the name of the "Oriental Republic of the Uruguay."

MONTE VIDEO, the capital, is situated 120 miles east of Buenos Ayres, on the La Plata. It is a well built city, with wide and regular streets, and has one of the best harbors on the river, which is

here 80 miles wide. It has a considerable trade, principally in hides, tallow, and dried beef.

In what direction from us is Uruguay? Which do you think is the largest, Uruguay or this State? How much? In what direction is Uruguay longest? Which do you suppose is warmest, Maldonado or this place? Why? If we were at Monte Video, in what direction would the sun be from us at 12 o'clock? In which State should you prefer to live, Paraguay or Uruguay? Why?

CHILI.*

Sq. m. 175,000. Pop. 1,500,000.

How is Chili bounded? Its Capital?

Chili consists of a long, narrow tract, lying between the Andes and the Pacific. It is one of the most healthy, fertile and beautiful countries in the world.

Chili has numerous mines of *gold, silver, copper, tin* and *iron*; and produces *grain, sugar, cotton, oil, wine* and *fruits* in abundance.

In some parts of Chili it seldom or never rains; but the country is well watered by means of the numerous small rivers which flow from the Andes into the Pacific. Among the Andes in Chili are fourteen volcanoes which are in a constant state of eruption. Earthquakes frequently happen, which often do extensive injury.

The *Aricanians*, an independent tribe of warlike Indians, inhabit the southern part of Chili. They are distinguished for their love of liberty, bravery and humanity.

Towns.—SANTIAGO was founded in the year 1541. It is situated in the midst of a beautiful plain, about 90 miles from Valparaiso. Its houses are built of brick, and only one story, on account of earthquakes. It has considerable trade. Its inhabitants are distinguished for gayety and hospitality.

Valparaiso, the port of Santiago, is the most commercial city in Chili. It has an excellent harbor, and considerable trade.

In what direction from us is Chili? What six towns on the Pacific? J. c. c. v. c. v. What remarkable summit of the Andes in Chili? Mt. c. How high is Mt. Chillan? What island near the southern part of Chili? c. What extensive Desert north of Chili? A. On what river is Santiago situated? A. On the river Maypo.

* Ches'-le.

PATAGONIA.

Sq. m. 370,000. Pop. 30,000

How is Patagonia bounded ?

Patagonia is a cold, inhospitable region, of which little is known except the coasts. It is inhabited by various tribes of Indians, who are said to be of gigantic size.

In what direction from us is Patagonia ? What are the three principal rivers of Patagonia ? P.D. C. N. What straits separate it from Terra del Fuego ? What two bays on the eastern coast ? E. M. What gulf on the western coast ? P. What Archipelago on the western coast ? What peninsula south of it ? What Desert in the interior ? C.D.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF SOUTH AMERICA.

How will you sail from Porto Bello to Panama ?

How will you sail from Panama to Assumption ?

What singular *herb* do you find here, and for what is it a substitute ?

How will you sail from Assumption to Cuzco ?

What can you say respecting Cuzco ?

How will you sail from Cuzco to Santa Fe de Bogota ?

What curiosity will you find near this place ?

Why are there no large rivers that empty into the Pacific ocean ?

What river empties into the Atlantic by several mouths ? O.

Through what waters must the Paranaiba river pass to reach the Atlantic ?

In what direction from us is Cape Horn ?

Supposing you were at Cape Horn *to-day*, at 12 o'clock, in what direction would your shadow fall ?

What season is it at Cape Horn *now* ?

Are the seasons in South America the same as ours ? Why ?

Which has the greatest latitude, or which is farther from the Equator, Cape Horn or this place ?

In which division of South America should you prefer to live ? Why ?

Which part of South America do you suppose is warmest, the southern or northern part of it ? Why ?

What prevents South America from being a continent by itself ?

If you should go to South America, would you probably find the people as enlightened and moral as in this state ? Why ?

Europe.

Europe is the smallest of the five grand divisions of the globe, but is distinguished for the number, learning, bravery and enterprise of its inhabitants—for the superior cultivation of the soil—for the flourishing condition of the arts, sciences and commerce, and for its power and influence over other parts of the world.

It is much noted for the salubrity of the air, and the fruitfulness of its soil. Instead of those uncultivated and extensive wastes which are met with in other portions of the earth, it presents extensive fortified cities, adorned with magnificent edifices, large and populous towns, and innumerable villages.

It is well watered by its numerous rivers, and remarkable for its bays, gulfs, and inland seas, and for its great natural advantages for commercial pursuits.

It produces most kinds of grain, beautiful garden plants, abundance of fruits, such as oranges, lemons, figs, almonds, olives, pomegranates and dates; also flax, hemp, tobacco, madder, and the best of wines, and a great variety of wood for house and ship-build-

ing. It yields most kinds of metals and minerals of superior excellence, and in great abundance.

In no part of the world are manufactures carried to such perfection as in several European countries, especially in Great Britain, France and Germany. The inhabitants work up not only European, but also foreign products, and supply all the wants and luxuries of life. Commerce is extensively carried on, promoted by well constructed roads and canals, and extends to all quarters of the world.

Europe is the seat of arts and science. To her belongs the honor of discovering the most important truths; of producing the most useful inventions, the finest productions of genius, and the improvement of all the sciences.

Literature has reached a higher degree of perfection in Europe than in any other part of the globe. There are numerous universities and colleges which provide for the higher branches of education. These are generally on a much larger scale than those in the United States. The common branches of education, however, are much neglected, and not so generally diffused among the great mass of the people as in this country. A great proportion of the poor are unable to read or write. Germany, France and England are most noted for proficiency in literature and science, and Prussia, Scotland, Switzerland, Denmark, Norway and Sweden, for the encouragement of elementary schools and the general diffusion of knowledge.

Questions.—How many square miles does Europe embrace? * How does it compare in extent with South America? Africa? What is the population of Europe? Which has the greatest number of inhabitants, South America, Europe, or Africa? How happens it that Europe, being so much smaller, contains so many more inhabitants than either of these other divisions? In which of these divisions do you imagine the land is best cultivated? Which do you think has the best roads and bridges? In which are the people most learned?

* See page 251.

GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL TABLE,
Exhibiting the density of population of the principal Divisions; the present sovereigns, with the time of their birth and accession to the throne, and also the prevailing religion of the nation.

Countries.	Pop. on sq. m.	Present Sovereign.	Born.	Began to reign.	Religion.
Russia,	22	Nicholas I.	1796	1825	Greek Church.
Austria,	105	Ferdinand,	1793	1835	Catholic.
Turkey,	46	Mahmoud II.	1785	1808	Mahometan.
France,	146	Louis Philippe,	1773	1830	Catholic.
Sweden,	13	Charles XIV.	1764	1818	Protestant,
Spain,	57	Isabella II.	1830	1833	Catholic.
Norway,*	6	Charles XIV.	1764	1818	Protestant.
Prussia,	94	Fred. William III.	1770	1797	Protestant.
Great Britain,	141	Victoria,	1819	1837	Protestant.
Naples,	152	Ferdinand II.	1810	1830	Catholic.
Portugal,	90	Donna Maria,	1819	1826	Catholic.
Ireland,†	203	Victoria,	1819	1837	Catholic.
Bavaria,	111	Louis I.	1786	1825	Catholic.
Sardinia,	146	Charles Amadeus,	1800	1831	Catholic.
Belgium,	216	Leopold I.	1790	1831	Catholic.
Holland,	208	William I.	1772	1813	Protestant.
Denmark,	72	Frederick VI.	1768	1808	Protestant.
Hanover,†	87	William IV.	1765	1830	Protestant.
Roman States,	162	Gregory XVI.	1765	1831	Catholic.
Wurtemberg,	172	William I.	1781	1816	Protestant.
Saxony,	161	Frederic Augustus	1797	1830	Protestant.
Baden,	167	Chas. Leop. Fred.	1790	1830	Protestant.
Tuscany,	174	Leopold II.	1797	1824	Catholic.
Greece,		Otho,	1815	1832	Greek Church.

MAP OF EUROPE.

How is Europe bounded ?

Portugal ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Spain ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
France ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Belgium ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Holland ?	Capital ?	Chief Thwns ?	Rivers ?
Germany ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Denmark ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Switzerland ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Italy ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Austria ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Turkey ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Greece ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

* Subject to the king of Sweden. † United with Great Britain.

Prussia ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Russia ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Sweden ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Norway ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
England ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Scotland ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Ireland ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

RIVERS.

Where does the river Ebro rise, what course does it run, and where does it empty ? Guadalquiver ? Guadiana ? Tagus ? Duero, or Douro ? Minho ? Garonne ? Loire ? Seine ? Rhine ? Rhone ? Saone ? Po ? Tiber ? Danube ? Drave ? Save ? Pruth ? Dniester ? Bog ? Dneiper ? Donec ? Don ? Volga ? Ural ? Oka ? Petchora ? Mezen ? Dwina ? Onega ? Duna ? Niemen ? Vistula ? Oder ? Elbe ? Weser ? Ems ? Tornea ? Glomma ? Thames ? Severn ? Shannon ?

LAKES.

Where are Lakes Ladoga and Onega ?
 Where are Lakes Wenner and Wetter ?
 Where are Lakes Constance and Geneva ? A. In Switzerland.

GULFS.

Where is the Gulf of Venice ?
 Where is the Gulf of Taranto ?
 Where is the Gulf of Genoa ?
 Where is the Gulf of Lyons ?
 Where is the Zuider Zee ?
 Where is the Gulf of Bothnia ?
 Where is the Gulf of Finland ?
 Where is the Gulf of Riga ?
 Where is the Bay of Biscay ?

SEAS.

Where is the Caspian Sea ?
 Where is the Sea of Azof ?
 Where is the Black Sea ?
 Where is the Sea of Marmora ?
 Where is the Archipelago ?
 Where is the Mediterranean ?
 Where is the Irish Sea ?
 Where is the North Sea ?
 Where is the Baltic Sea ?
 Where is the White Sea ?

STRAITS.

Where is the Strait of Constantinople ?*
 Where are the Dardanelles ?
 Where is the Strait of Otranto ?
 Where is the Strait of Messina ?
 Where is the Strait of Bonifacio ?
 Where is the Strait of Gibraltar ?
 Where is the Strait of Dover ?
 Where is the Skager Rack ?
 Where is the Cattegat ?

CHANNELS.

Where is the English Channel ?
 Where is St. George's Channel ?
 Where is Bristol Channel ?
 Where is North Channel ?

ISLANDS.

Where are the Luffoden Islands ?
 Where is Iceland ?
 Where are the Faroe Islands ?
 Where are the Shetland and Orkney Islands ?
 Where are the Hebrides or Western Islands ?
 Where are the Isle of Man and Anglesea ?
 Where are Guernsey, Jersey, Alderney, Sark and Wight ?
 Where are the Scilly Islands ?
 Where are Bellisle and the Isle of Rhe ?
 Where are Ivica, Majorca, and Minorca ?
 Where are Sardinia, Corsica, and Elba ?
 Where are the Lipari Islands ?
 Where is the Island of Sicily ?
 Where is the Malta or Melita ?
 Where is the Island of Candia ?
 Where are Cyprus and Rhodes ?
 Where are Negropont, Scio, Samos, Patmos ?
 Where are the Ionian Islands ?
 Where are Zealand and Funen ?
 Where are Gothland, Aland, and Oland ?

PENINSULAS.

Where is the Peninsula of Crimea ?
 Where is the Peninsula of Morea ?

* The Strait of Constantinople, the ancient Bosphorus, connects the Black Sea with the sea of Marmora. The Dardanelles connect the sea of Marmora with the Archipelago.

MOUNTAINS.

Where are the Dofrafield Mountains?

Where are the Pyrenees?

Where are the Alps?

Where are the Appenines?

Where are the Carpathian Mountains?

Where are the Hæmus Mountains?

Where are the Ural Mountains?

Where are the Olonetz Mountains?

Where are the Cevennes?

Where are the Erzeberg Mountains?

Where are the Sierra Morena, Toledo, and Cantabrian Mountains?

VOLCANOES.

Where is Mount Etna?

Where is Mount Vesuvius?

Where is Mount Hecla?

CAPES.

Where is Cape North? Cape Naze? Land's End? Lizard Point? Cape Clear? Cape La Hogue? Cape Ortegal? Cape Finisterre? Cape St. Vincent? Cape Spartivento? Cape Matapan?

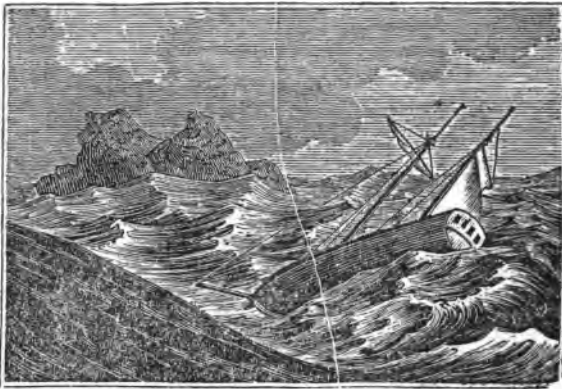
What is the length of the Volga?—Danube?—Dnieper?—Don?—Rhine?—Dneister?—Dwina? Duna? Rhone? Elbe? Loire?—Tagus? Vistula? Niemen?—Weser?—Bog? Save? Oder? Mezen?—Ebro? Drave? Po? Duero? Guadiana? Oka? Guadalquiver? Garonne? Glomma? Tornea? Onega?—Seine?—Thames? Donec? Shannon? Pruth? Tiber? Saone? Minho? Severn?

NORWAY.

How is Norway bounded? What is its Capital?

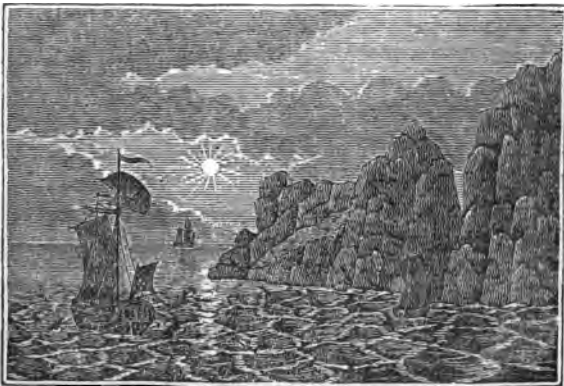
Norway is a cold, rugged, mountainous, and barren country, and abounds in the most beautiful and sublime scenery.

The chief wealth of Norway consists in its immense forests of pine, which furnish vast quantities of lumber for exportation, and in its fisheries, and mines of iron, copper, and silver.



The Maelstrom.

Norway is distinguished for the *Maelstrom, a dreadful whirlpool on its coast. It can be heard at a great distance, and is so violent, that every thing which comes near it is drawn in and dashed in pieces.



View of the North Cape at Midnight in Summer.†

* Mawl'stroom.

† In the northern part of Norway, the sun remains above the horizon for several weeks in summer, and below it an equal length of time in winter.

Character.—The Norwegians are honest, brave, and industrious, and generally well instructed in the common branches of education. [Norway was formerly an independent kingdom, but in 1397, it was annexed to Denmark, and in 1814 it was ceded to Sweden.]

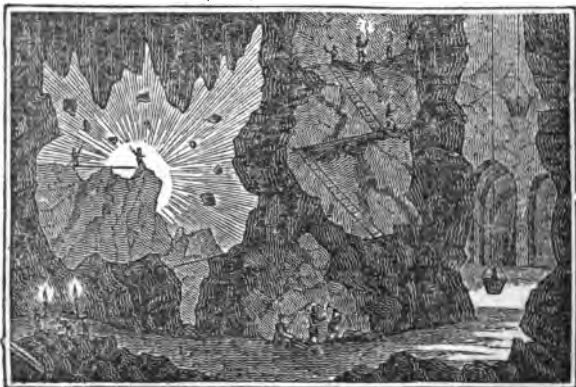
Towns.—BERGEN is finely situated for trade, and is the most populous and commercial town in Norway.

Christiana has a large share of commerce, and is the most beautiful and pleasant town in the kingdom.

Drontheim has a good harbor, and considerable trade. It was anciently the residence of Norwegian kings.

In what direction from us is Norway? What mountains separate Norway from Sweden? *D.* How many inhabitants to a square mile? [See page 183.] What is the principal river in Norway? *G.* What islands on the coast of Norway? *L.* What whirlpool on the coast? *M.* Which is the most northerly town? *P.* What town north of Bergen? *Loevig.* What town on Christiana gulf, in the 60° north latitude? *C.* What town near the mouth of the Glomma, noted for the death of Charles XII. king of Sweden? *F.* What town on the Skager Rack? *C.* What town in the interior? *X.* Which is the most northerly cape? The most southerly? How will you sail from Bergen to Stockholm?

SWEDEN.



Iron Mines.

How is Sweden bounded? What is its Capital?

Sweden is a mountainous country, and is celebrated for the number of its lakes and rivers.

The wealth of Sweden consists principally in its mines of iron, copper and lead, and in its extensive forests, which furnish timber, pitch, tar and turpentine in large quantities.

The winters in Sweden are long, and severely cold; the summers are short, and extremely warm. The soil in most parts is unproductive, and unfit for cultivation.

Character.—The Swedes are polite, brave and hospitable, and are distinguished for their general education and morality.

Towns.—**STOCKHOLM** is situated on seven rocky islands in the strait which connects lake Malar with the Baltic. It has a safe and commodious harbor, and an extensive trade.

Gottenburg is well situated for trade, and is next to Stockholm in commerce, population and wealth. It is the seat of the Swedish East India Company, and its commerce extends to all parts of Europe, America and the West Indies.

Carlsrona has a large share of commerce, and is the principal station of the Swedish navy.

In what direction from us is Sweden? What are the two principal rivers in Sweden? *v. r.* Which are the three principal lakes? *w. w.* and Ma-la'r. What town on the Cattogat? *g.* What two towns on the Baltic? *c. c.* What town north of Stockholm? *u.* What town on the river Dal? *f.* What four towns on the gulf of Bothnia? *g. v. p. r.* What town in the western part, among the mountains? *r.* What town in the southern part, on the sound of Elsinore? Malmo. What three islands in the Baltic, near the coast of Sweden? *g. o. a.* How will you sail from Stockholm to Tornea?

LAPLAND.

Lapland occupies the northern part of Norway, Sweden and Russia. It is a cold, gloomy, and barren region, and very thinly inhabited.

The principal wealth of the inhabitants is the *reindeer*, which supplies them with food and clothing, and serves also as a beast of burden.



Laplander Travelling.

In the northern part, the sun does not set during several weeks in summer, and does not rise for the same length of time in winter.

The Laplanders are under no regular government, and are a miserable, ignorant and superstitious race. They live in small huts, half sunk in the ground, in the middle of which they build their fire, and sit around it on their heels. They place their food on the ground, and eat it with their fingers. In the winter they make long excursions on the ice, in sledges drawn by reindeer.

Towns.—KOLA is the capital of Russian Lapland, and Tornea of Swedish Lapland.

In what direction from us is Lapland? What are the two principal rivers in Lapland? A. T. What three towns in Lapland? T. O. K. What town near North Cape? H. How will you sail from Tornea to St. Petersburg?

RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

In extent of territory the Russian Empire surpasses all others on the globe. It embraces nearly half of Europe, more than one third of Asia, and the northwestern part of North America.

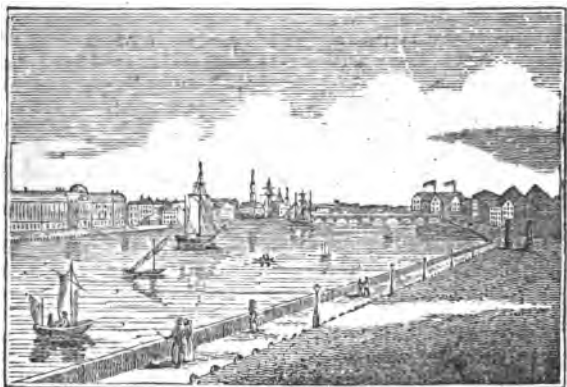
RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

How is Russia bounded? What is its Capital?

Russia is generally a level country, and is distinguished for its vast plains and majestic rivers.

The northern part is severely cold and unproductive ; the southern part is temperate, and produces *wheat, rye, oats, barley* and *Indian corn*, in great abundance.

Russia has mines of *silver, copper* and *iron*.



St. Petersburg.

The commerce of Russia is very extensive. It is carried on through the Caspian, Black, Baltic and White Seas. By means of its numerous rivers and canals, goods are easily conveyed through all parts of the interior.

The common method of travelling in winter, is in sledges, or in small houses placed on sleds.

Character.—The Russians are hardy, vigorous and patient of labor, but extremely rude, ignorant and barbarous. The lower classes are slaves to the nobles.

Towns.—**ST. PETERSBURG** was founded in 1704, by Peter the Great. It is distinguished for the width and regularity of its streets, and the general magnificence of its buildings.

Cronstadt, the seaport of St. Petersburg, is situated 20 miles distant, on an island in the gulf of Finland. and is the principal station of the Russian navy.

Moscow, the ancient capital of Russia, is situated on the Moskwa. It was burned in 1812, to prevent its falling into the hands of the

French. It has since been rebuilt, and is more regular and magnificent than before.

In what direction from us is Russia? What are the two principal lakes in Russia? o. l. What two ranges of mountains? o. u. What are the rivers of Russia? What five seas in and around Russia? c. A. B. B. w. What town at the mouth of the Danube? i. What two towns on the Dneister? n. a. What seaport on the Black sea? What four towns on the Dnieper? c. k. n. s. What town on the Don? t. What thirteen towns on the Volga and its branches? a. s. *t. o. p. v. k. p. n. m. k. †t. j. What town on the Ural? o. What town on the Petchora? e. What town at the mouth of the Mezen? m. What two towns on the river Ousa? o. and o. What three towns on the Dwina? v. a. t. What town on the Onega? o. What three towns in Finland? w. a. u. What town on the gulf of Finland, memorable for the first battle between Peter the Great and Charles XII.? A. Narva. What town on the gulf of Finland west of Narva? A. Revel. What town on the gulf of Riga? n. What town on the Duna? p. What town on the Niemen? On a branch of the Niemen? w. What town S. E. of Wilna? m. What two towns S. E. of St. Petersburg? n. v. What town in Crimea? k. What tribe of Cossacks on the river Don? d. c. Where is Pultowa, memorable for the last battle between Peter the Great, and Charles XII.? How will you sail from St. Petersburg to Warsaw?

POLAND.§

Where was Poland situated? What was its Capital?

Poland, now a part of the Russian empire, is a cold, level, and fertile country, and is noted for its extensive mines of salt.

* Za-rit-zeen.

† Ver.

‡ Po-ko'-ra.

§ Although Poland has ceased to constitute an independent and single state, still the country is distinctly separated from those which surround it, by national character, language, and manners. It is still the land of the Poles, although its detached fragments have become Russian, Austrian, or Prussian provinces, containing about 15,000,000 Poles. Poland derives its name from Pohlen, a Slavonic word, signifying a *plain*.

Poland was formerly a large, powerful, and independent kingdom, but for many centuries past, it has been remarkable for its miserable condition. It contained 284,000 square miles, and about 15,000,000 inhabitants. In 1772, it became distracted by internal dissensions. This furnished Russia, Austria, and Prussia, with a pretence for interference. They accordingly took possession of a large portion of the country, and divided it between them. In 1793, they interfered a second time, and dismembered a second portion. In 1795, they interfered a third time and divided the remainder of the country between them. Thus by an act of the grossest injustice, Poland was blotted out of the list of kingdoms. In 1815 the Congress of Vienna erected a small portion of the

The salt mine of Weiliczka, 7 miles S. E. of Cracow, is the largest in the world, and has been worked 600 years. The principal mine is more than a mile in length, about 1000 feet broad and 1,500 feet deep. The quantity of salt produced yearly at these mines is valued at 800,000 dollars. The mines exhibit a spacious plain with lofty vaulted roofs, supported by columns of salt, which have been left standing by the workmen. Since 1772 these mines have been in the possession of Austria.

Character.—The nobles are brave, hardy and active, but illiterate, haughty, and extremely fond of dress. The peasants* are ignorant, indolent, improvident, addicted to intoxication, and of course poor.

Towns.—WARSAW, the capital of the late kingdom of Poland, is pleasantly situated on the Vistula. It has a melancholy appearance, exhibiting a singular contrast of wealth and poverty, of luxury and distress, which pervade every part of this unhappy country.

Cracow is well situated on the Vistula, and has an extensive inland trade. In 1815, Cracow, with a small territory adjacent, was constituted a free state, or republic, under the protection of Russia, Austria and Prussia.

In what direction from us is Poland? How far do you suppose it is from us to Warsaw? Which is the largest, Warsaw, or this place? Which is the longest, the Vistula, or the Connecticut? How many rivers in the United States can you mention, of the same length as the Vistula? How will you sail from Warsaw to Berlin?

central part of ancient Poland—containing 47,000 square miles, and 2,800,000 inhabitants—into a state, by the name of the "Kingdom of Poland," and placed it under the government of the emperor of Russia, who in consequence, added to his title, "king of Poland." A Polish constitution was soon issued by the emperor Alexander, consisting of 165 articles, which, if faithfully executed, would have promoted the welfare of Poland. But these articles were basely violated by the Russians, and the most unjust cruelties were inflicted on the brave Poles. At length, on the 29th of November, 1830, an insurrection broke out at Warsaw, and quickly extended throughout the kingdom and other parts of ancient Poland. A powerful Russian army immediately invaded the country, and after a short but severe struggle for independence, the Poles were subdued; and by a proclamation of the emperor Nicholas, in 1832, Poland was incorporated with Russia, and has since formed an integral part of that mighty empire.

* The peasants are slaves to the nobles, and their sentiment is, "Only what I drink is mine."

PRUSSIA.

How is Prussia bounded? What is its Capital?

Prussia was formerly a small state of Germany; but by gradual accession of territory, it has become one of the first kingdoms in Europe.

It is mostly a level country, with a cold, moist, but healthy climate. The soil is various, generally better adapted to grazing than cultivation.

The most celebrated mineral production in Prussia is *amber*, which is found on the shores of the Baltic.

Prussia possesses a large extent of territory in the western part of Germany, lying on both sides of the Rhine, and bordering on Holland and Belgium.*



View in Berlin.

Character.—The higher classes are generally well informed, polite, and extremely fond of dress. The lower classes are ignorant, degraded, and superstitious. As a nation, they are distinguished for bravery and fondness for war.

Towns.—BERLIN is situated on the river Spree, a small branch of the Elbe. It is one of the most beautiful cities in Europe. It is distinguished for the splendor of its public edifices, and the extent of its manufactures.

* See the Map.

Breslau, the capital of Silesia, is a beautiful city, and is distinguished for its manufacture of linen.

In what direction from us is Prussia? Which are the three principal rivers in Prussia? v. o. e. What town is situated on the Elbe? m. What three on the Oder? s. p. b. What town on the Baltic? c. What two towns near the mouth of the Vistula? d. k. How many square miles has *Prussia? How will you sail from Berlin to Vienna?

AUSTRIA.†

How is Austria bounded? What is its Capital?

The Austrian territory was formerly of small extent; but its limits have been increased by treaty and conquest, till it has become a powerful empire.

The soil is generally fertile, and the climate mild and healthy. The chief productions are *grain*, *wine* and *olives*.



The Rialto.‡

It is rich in minerals. Hungary is distinguished for its rich mines of *gold*, *silver* and *copper*; Illyria

* See the Chart.

† Before 1804, Austria was only an Archduchy; it was then erected into an empire under Francis I., who, up to that period, was emperor of Germany.

‡ The Rialto is the most magnificent and beautiful bridge in Venice, consisting of a single arch 187 feet long and 43 feet wide.

for its mines of *mercury*; and Galicia for those of *salt*.

Character.—The nobles of Austria are ignorant, haughty and oppressive; the lower classes are active, moral and industrious.

Towns.—VIENNA is the largest city in Austria, and has an extensive trade. It contains many magnificent edifices, and is distinguished for science, arts, commerce and refinement.

Prague, the capital of Bohemia, is situated on the Muldau, a branch of the Elbe. It has the oldest university in Germany, founded in 1348. It is noted for its manufactures of linens, cottons and silks.

Venice is situated at the head of the gulf of Venice, on 72 small islands, which are connected by 450 bridges. It was once a republic, and the greatest commercial city on the globe. Though much reduced, it is yet one of the most remarkable cities of Europe. It has canals instead of streets—boats instead of cars—and gondolas instead of coaches.

In what direction from *us* is Austria? Which is the principal river in Austria? D. What three branches has the Danube? D. S. T. What river forms the boundary between Austria and Italy? P. What river rises in the northwestern part of Austria and empties into the north sea? E. What four towns on the Danube? V. P. B. P. What six towns on the branches of the Danube? B. A. T. T. I. G. What town in the S. E. part? H. In the N. E.? L. What town in the northern part, memorable for the imprisonment of LA FAYETTE? O. What town on the Elbe? P. What two towns at the head of the gulf of Venice? V. T. What two towns on the east side of the gulf of Venice? Z. R. What town on the Po, celebrated for being the birth place of Virgil? M. What two towns north of Mantua, on the Adige river? T. V. What town in the western part, capital of Austrian Italy? M. What mountains in Austria? C. E. How long are the Carpathian mountains? How many square miles has Austria? What is the population? * How many inhabitants to a square mile? How will you sail from Vienna to Berne?

SWITZERLAND.

How is Switzerland bounded? What is its Capital?

Switzerland is a small, romantic country, lying up on the Alps. It abounds in the most picturesque and sublime scenery, and is the most elevated portion of Europe.

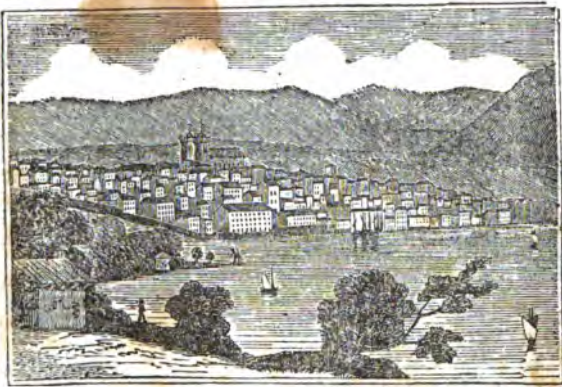
* See the Chart.

The highest summits of the Alps are covered with *glaziers*, or *fields of ice*, of vast extent and magnificence. Switzerland has almost every variety of climate and soil.

The valleys are warm, and extremely productive, producing the *vine*, *grain*, and various kinds of *fruit*. The chief occupation of the Swiss farmers is the raising of cattle.

Character.—The Swiss are intelligent, brave, hardy, and industrious, and strongly attached to their native soil.

Towns.—BERNE is a large and well fortified town, and is pleasantly situated on the river Aar, a branch of the Rhine.



Geneva.

Geneva is the largest, and one of the most beautiful cities in Switzerland. It is surrounded by a picturesque and beautiful scenery, and is distinguished for its literary institutions, and its extensive manufacture of watches.

In what direction from us is Switzerland? What mountains in Switzerland? A. What two lakes? A. Constance and Geneva. What town in the S. W. part, on the lake of Geneva? G. What town in the N. E. part, on lake Constance? C. What town between Berne and Constance? Z. What river passes through lake Constance? R. What river through Geneva lake? R. What small kingdom south of Switzerland? S. How will you sail from Berne to Frankfurt-on-the-Maine?

GERMANY.

How is Germany bounded? Its Capital?

Germany embraces thirty-five states, and four free cities; the principal of which are the following, viz.:

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| | <i>Capitals.</i> |
| 1. The Kingdom of Bavaria, | Munich. |
| 2. The Kingdom of Wirtemberg, | Stuttgard. |
| 3. The Kingdom of Saxony, | Dresden. |
| 4. The Kingdom of Hanover, | Hanover. |
| 5. The Grand Duchy of Baden, | Carlsruhe. |
| 6. The Prussian Dominions, which lie in the west-
ern part of Germany, on both sides of the river Rhine,
and border on Holland and Belgium. | |

The four free cities are Hamburg, Frankfort, Bremen and Lubec.

The states and free cities of Germany, although independent, have formed a union, for the purposes of mutual defence and protection, styled, "The confederation of the sovereign and free towns of Germany." The general concerns of the confederation are confided to a Federative Diet, which holds its sessions at Frankfort-on-the-Maine.

[The states are bound to defend each other in case of foreign invasion; and engage not to make war upon one another, but to submit their differences to the decision of the Federative Diet.]

The northern part of Germany is level; the southern is hilly and mountainous. The soil in most parts is fertile, and the climate mild and salubrious. Germany is celebrated for its mines of silver, copper, tin, zinc and coal.

Character.—The Germans are grave, industrious and persevering, and are distinguished for their proficiency in the arts and sciences.

Towns.—FRANKFORT is a free city, situated on the Maine, a branch of the Rhine. It is distinguished for its extensive commerce, and for being the permanent seat of the Federative Diet.

Hamburg is the first commercial city in Germany, and is distinguished for its charitable and humane institutions.

In what direction from us is Germany? What five rivers in Germany? E. E. W. E. D. In what part of Germany is Saxony? E. What is its capital? D. What other town in Saxony? L. In what part is Bavaria? S. E. What is its capital? M. In what part is Wirtemberg? S. What is its capital? S. In what part is Baden? S. What is its capital? *C. In what part is Hanover? N. What

* Carls-roo'-ee.

is its capital? *н.* What other town in Hanover? *с.* In what part are the Prussian possessions? Western part. What town in the Prussian possessions? *А.* Cologne.* What are the four free cities? Lubeck is in the northern part, near the Baltic. At which of the free cities does the Federative Diet hold its sessions? *г.* How will you sail from Frankfort to Copenhagen?

DENMARK.

How is Denmark bounded? What is its Capital?

Denmark consists principally of the peninsula of Jutland, and the islands of Zealand and Funen.

It is generally a level and fertile country, with a moist but healthy climate.

Denmark is well situated for trade, and has an extensive commerce. Its exports consist principally of *grain* and *cattle*.

Iceland and the Faroe Islands belong to Denmark. Iceland is a cold, barren, and mountainous island, and is celebrated for its volcanoes, and for its hot springs, called Geysers, which often spout hot water to the height of 150 feet.

Character.—The Danes are moral, intelligent, industrious and hospitable.

Towns.—COPENHAGEN is situated on the east shore of the island of Zealand. It is one of the best built cities in Europe, and has a good harbor, and an extensive commerce.

Elsinore is situated on the island of Zealand, 20 miles north of Copenhagen. It is distinguished for being the place where all foreign ships that trade to the Baltic, pay toll.

In what direction from us is Denmark? What is the strait called between Zealand and Sweden? *А.* The sound. Between Zealand and Funen? *А.* The Great Belt. Between Funen and the peninsula of Jutland? *А.* The Little Belt. What canal connects the Baltic with the North sea? *А.* The canal of Kiel. What town in the northern part? *г.* What town in the southern part? *к.* What islands belong to Denmark? *г.* and *и.* What two towns in Iceland? *н. г.* What volcano in the southern part? *н.* How high is Mount Hecla? What is a volcano? What remarkable springs in Iceland? What two small islands in the North Sea, near Denmark? *с. н.* How many square miles has Denmark?† What is the population? How many inhabitants to a square mile?‡ How will you sail from Copenhagen to Amsterdam?

* Co-lone'.

† See the Chart.

‡ See page 183.

HOLLAND.

How is Holland bounded? What is its Capital?

Holland is a small, populous and commercial kingdom, and is noted for its numerous canals, extensive manufactures, and for the industry and perseverance of its inhabitants.

It is the most level country in Europe, and resembles a large marsh that has been drained. It is lower than the level of the sea at *high water*, and is protected from being overflowed, by high mounds or embankments.

The soil in most parts is rich, and highly cultivated, and produces *wheat, madder,* tobacco, hemp, flax*, and good *pasture*. The climate is cold and damp, but generally healthy.

The canals of Holland are as numerous as the public roads of other countries. The common mode of travelling in summer, is in covered boats on canals, drawn by horses; in winter the inhabitants travel on them on skates, with most surprising rapidity.

Character.—The Dutch are honest, patient, and persevering, and remarkable for their industry, frugality and neatness.

Chief Towns.—AMSTERDAM is built in a low, marshy spot, on an arm of the *Zuider Zee*. It is the richest, most populous and commercial city in Holland, and is the seat of numerous manufactures.

The Hague is a beautiful town, 30 miles south west of Amsterdam. It is noted for the beauty of its streets, the stateliness of its buildings, the pleasantness of its situation, and for the politeness of its inhabitants.

Rotterdam, situated on the river Meuse, 10 miles southeast of the Hague, is the second city in Holland for commerce, wealth, and population. It is famous for being the birth place of the celebrated Erasmus. Population, 74,000.

In what direction from us is Holland? Holland contains 13,200 square miles; which is the largest, *this state* or Holland? How does the mode of travelling in *this state* differ from that in Holland? What season is it in Holland *now*? What city in the northern part of Holland? Which is the largest, Groningen or *this place*? What large river in the southern part of Holland? How much longer is the Rhine than the Connecticut river? Which has the greatest latitude, Amsterdam or *this place*? How will you sail from Amsterdam to Antwerp?

* Madder, a plant much used in dyeing red.

BELGIUM.*

How is Belgium bounded? What is its Capital?

Belgium is a small, new and populous kingdom, and is noted for the fertility of its soil, the mildness of its climate, and for the extent, variety, and value of its manufactures.

It is agreeably diversified with hills and plains, and abounds in the most beautiful scenery. The chief productions are *wheat, rye, oats, hemp, flax* and most kinds of *fruit*.

Character.—The Belgians are an industrious, neat and ingenious people, but generally superstitious, and noted for their fondness of religious ceremonies.

Chief Towns.—BRUSSELS, situated on the Lenne, a branch of the Scheldt, is a large, splendid and wealthy city, noted for the elegance of its buildings, public walks and squares. It is distinguished for its manufactures of lace, camblets, and carpets.

Antwerp is a large, well built, and strongly fortified city on the Scheldt, 23 miles north of Brussels. It is the greatest commercial city in Belgium. The largest vessels can ascend the river to this place, and by means of numerous canals, penetrate into the centre of the town, and there deposit their cargoes.

In what direction from us is Belgium? What city in the southern part, situated on the Maese? What city N. W. of Liege, memorable for the decisive battle between the armies of Bonaparte and Wellington in 1815? How many years since the battle of Waterloo was fought? What city in the south western part on the Scheldt, noted for the treaty of peace signed there between the United States and Great Britain in 1814? How many years since the treaty of Ghent was signed? Belgium contains 11,500 square miles; which is the largest, Belgium or *this state*? How will you sail from Antwerp to Paris?

* Belgium, formerly called the Austrian Netherlands, within a few centuries has undergone many changes. In 1713, it was ceded by Spain to Austria. In 1795, it was conquered by the French and incorporated into the kingdom of France. In 1814, after the downfall of Bonaparte, the Congress of Vienna annexed it to Holland, or the United Provinces, and these two countries formed the kingdom of the Netherlands. This union was effected by the "*Holy Alliance*," without the consent of the two nations, and it never obtained the cordial acquiescence of the Belgians, who became so dissatisfied at length with their political condition, that they broke out into an open insurrection in August, 1830, and on the 4th of October made a declaration of their independence, which has been acknowledged by the "five great powers of Europe," viz. France, Great Britain, Russia, Austria and Prussia.

FRANCE.

*Palais Royal, Paris.*

How is France bounded? What is its Capital?

France is the most beautiful and delightful country in Europe, and is distinguished for the fertility of its soil, and the mildness of its climate.

It is generally level, and produces *wheat, maize, barley, vines, mulberries, olives*, and most kinds of fruit.

France has a large share of commerce, and is noted for its silks, woollen goods, brandy and wines.

The island of Corsica belongs to France, and is celebrated as the birth place of Napoleon Bonaparte.

Character.—The French are polite, gay, active and industrious, and celebrated for their proficiency in the arts and sciences.

Towns.—PARIS is pleasantly situated on both sides of the river Seine; and for splendor, magnificence and gayety, it exceeds any city in the world. It is noted for the extent and value of its libraries, and literary institutions, and for the number and variety of its amusements.

Lyons, the second city in France, is situated at the junction of the Rhone and *Saone. It has an extensive trade, and is noted for the manufacture of silk.

* Saone.

In what direction from us is France? Which are the six principal rivers in France? *G. L. S. R. S. R.* What mountains separate France from Spain? *P.* How long are the Pyrennees? What mountains in the S. E. part? *C.* Which is the most S. W. city in France? *B.* What two cities on the Garonne? *B. T.* What three cities on the bay of Biscay? *R. R. L. O.* What five cities on the Loire? *N. T. O. N. C.* Which is the most westerly city in France? *B.* What two cities on the English Channel? *St. B. and C.* What two cities on the Seine? *P. R.* What town on the strait of Dover? *C.* What town on the border of the Netherlands? *L.* What city south of Lille? *A.* What two towns on the Moselle, a branch of the Rhine? *N. M.* What town on the Rhine? *S.* What city at the junction of the Saone and Rhone? *L.* What three cities on the Rhone? *V. A. N.* What seaport on the Mediterranean? *T.* What large seaport on the gulf of Lyons? *M.* What inland town in the southern part, distinguished for its healthy situation? *M.* How will you sail from Paris to London?

BRITISH EMPIRE.

The British Empire consists of Great Britain, Ireland, and the adjacent islands, together with numerous foreign possessions in Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.

It is the most powerful empire on the globe, and is distinguished for the extent of its commerce and manufactures, for its vast and powerful navy, and for the intelligence, enterprise, and activity of its inhabitants.

In what direction from us is Great Britain?
How is the island of Great Britain divided?
In what part of the island is Scotland?
In what part of the island is Wales?
In what part of the island is England?

ENGLAND.

How is England bounded? What is its Capital?

England is a fruitful and highly cultivated country, and is distinguished for its extensive commerce, numerous canals, and for the extent, variety and value of its manufactures.

Its surface is agreeably diversified with hills and plains, and abounds in the most beautiful and delightful scenery.

The soil is extremely fertile, and produces *wheat, barley, oats, peas, beans, &c.* and good *pasturage*.

The climate is mild, moist, and variable, and is less subject to extremes of heat and cold, than that of any other country in the same latitude.

The mineral productions of England are numerous, the most valuable of which are *coal, copper, tin, iron* and *lead*.

Character.—The English are intelligent, brave, industrious and enterprising, but possess great national pride.

Towns.—LONDON, the metropolis of the British Empire, is situated on the Thames, 60 miles from its mouth. It is the most populous city in Europe; and in commerce, manufactures, and wealth, it is the



London.

first city on the globe. It contains many magnificent buildings, and is distinguished for its numerous literary and charitable institutions.

Liverpool is situated on the Mersey, and by means of canals it is connected with the principal manufacturing towns in the interior. It is one of the most flourishing towns in England; and in commerce and wealth, it is second only to London.

Bristol is a large, flourishing and commercial city, situated on the Avon, 4 miles from its junction with the Severn. It is noted for the number of its charitable institutions.

Portsmouth, situated on the English Channel, is the chief naval station of the British Empire. Its harbor is sufficient to contain the whole British navy.

In what direction from us is England? What two capes S. W. of England? What cluster of islands near Land's End? s. What islands in the English channel belong to England? Guernsey, Jersey, Alderney, Sark and Wight. What two islands in the Irish sea? A. M. What two ports on the English channel? F. F. What town on the Thames? L. Which is the most easterly town in England? N. How is Bristol situated? What town near it? E. How is Liverpool situated? In what direction from Liverpool is Leeds, noted for its woollen manufactures? In what direction from Liverpool is Birmingham, distinguished for its hardware manufactures? What two cities on the Humber, in the N. E. part? F. H. What town in the northern part, near the North Sea, famous for its trade in coals? N. What town near the boundary between England and Scotland? C. In what direction from London is Oxford, celebrated for its university? What strait between France and England? D. What four channels around the British isles? How many square miles has the British Empire? What is the population? How many inhabitants to a square mile? How will you sail from London to Edinburgh?

WALES.

How is Wales bounded? Chief Towns?

Wales is a mountainous country, generally resembling England in climate, soil and productions.

Wales was conquered and united to England in 1283, by Edward I.

The eldest son of the king of England is styled Prince of Wales.

Character.—The Welch are the descendants of the ancient Britons. They are a passionate, but honest, brave and hospitable people.

In what direction from us is Wales? What channel south of Wales? B. What channel between Wales and Ireland? What island near the northern part of Wales, distinguished for its mines of copper? A. What two towns in Wales? St. A. and St. D.

SCOTLAND.

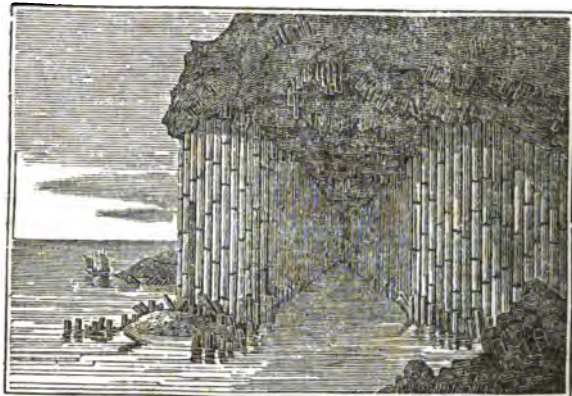
How is Scotland bounded? What is its capital?

The northern part of Scotland, called the *Highlands*, is a cold, mountainous, and barren country; the southern part, termed the *Lowlands*, is agreeably diversified with hills and plains, and is noted for the mildness of its climate, and the fertility of its soil.

The principal productions are *wheat, rye, oats, barley, &c.*

The most important minerals are *coal, iron and lead.*

The principal islands belonging to Scotland are the Orkney, Shetland and Hebrides or Western Islands.



Fingal's Cave in Staffa.

In Staffa, one of the Western Isles, is a remarkable cavern of great extent, called Fingal's Cave. It is supported on each side by ranges of columns, and roofed by the bottoms of such as have been broken away.

Character.—The Scotch are temperate, industrious, hardy, and enterprising, and are distinguished for their general education and morality.

Towns.—EDINBURGH is situated two miles from the Firth of Forth, and is surrounded on all sides, except the north, by high hills. It is elegantly built, and has long been celebrated as the seat of science and literature. Leith is the seaport of Edinburgh, situated two miles distant, on the Firth of Forth.

Glasgow is situated on the river Clyde, and in population, manufactures and commerce, is the first city in Scotland.

Greenock, on the Firth of Clyde, is the principal seaport of Scotland. It has a good harbor, and an extensive commerce.

In what direction from us is Scotland? What Firths or Friths in the eastern part of Scotland? F. M. What channel between Scotland and Ireland? What islands west of Scotland? How is Edinburgh situated? What town N. W. of Edinburgh, on the Tay, dis-

tinguished for its manufactures of linens? P. What town on the North Sea? A. What town on Murray Firth? I. What town east of Inverness? B. What town in the northern part of Scotland? W. How is Glasgow situated? What town S. E. of Glasgow, distinguished for its manufactures of cotton and linens? P. Which has the greatest latitude, Edinburgh or *this* place? In what direction from us is Edinburgh? How will you sail from Edinburgh to Dublin?

IRELAND.



Giant's Causeway.

How is Ireland bounded? What is its Capital?

Ireland is a beautiful and fertile island, agreeably diversified with hills and plains.

Ireland is distinguished for its extensive *bogs* and *morasses*, which cover one tenth of its surface, and are wholly unfit for cultivation.

The climate is mild, moist, and healthy, but subject to frequent changes.

The principal productions are *potatoes*, *oats*, *grass*, and *flax*. The chief articles of export and manufacture, are *linens* and *muslins*.

The Giant's Causeway, on the northern coast, is one of the greatest curiosities in the British Empire. It consists of several hundred thousand columns of basaltic rock, rising from 2 to 400 feet above the surface of the water.

Character.—The Irish in general are quick of apprehension, active, brave and hospitable ; but passionate, ignorant, vain, and superstitious.



View in Dublin.

Towns.—DUBLIN is situated on both sides of the river Liffey ; and in extent and population, it is the second city in the British Empire. It contains many magnificent buildings, and has one of the most beautiful harbors in Europe.

Cork is the second city in Ireland, for size, riches and importance, and possesses more foreign trade than any other port in the island.

Limerick, situated on the Shannon, is one of the most flourishing towns in Ireland. It is distinguished for its extensive manufactures and commerce.

In what direction from us is Ireland ? What town in the north of Ireland ? L. What town on the north-eastern part of the Irish Sea ? E. How is Dublin situated ? What town in the interior, S. W. of Dublin ? K. What three towns in the southern part of Ireland ? W. C. K. What two towns in the western part ? L. G. What is the principal river in Ireland ? S. What sea east of Ireland ? I. What two channels on the coast of Ireland ? How will you sail from Dublin to Lisbon ?

PORTUGAL.

How is Portugal bounded ? What is its capital ?

Portugal is a small and fertile kingdom, and is noted for its mild, pleasant and healthy climate.

The principal productions are *vines, olives, lemons, figs and grain*. The chief exports are *wines, salt and wool*.

Agriculture and manufactures are in a backward state.

Character.—The Portuguese are friendly and hospitable, but ignorant, superstitious, and fond of music and dancing.

Towns.—LISBON is built on several small hills, at the mouth of the Tagus. It was nearly destroyed in 1755, by an earthquake, but it has since been rebuilt. It has a considerable share of commerce, and the best harbor in Europe.

Oporto is situated on the Duero, and is the second commercial town in Portugal. It is noted for its strong wines, called *Port*.

In what direction from us is Portugal? What three rivers pass through Portugal? *a. r. d.* What cape has Portugal? *St. v.* What city in the south part? *r.* What city south of Lisbon? *St. v.* What two towns in the N. part? How will you sail from Lisbon to Madrid?

SPAIN.

How is Spain bounded? What is its capital?

Spain is generally a mountainous country, and abounds in beautiful and romantic scenery.

The climate is mild and pleasant in the north, but warm and unhealthy in the south. The soil is generally fertile, especially in the southern part, and produces *wheat, maize, barley, silk, oil and fruits* in abundance.

Great attention is given to the raising of merino sheep, which produce the finest wool in Europe. Agriculture and manufactures are much neglected, and the commerce of Spain is chiefly carried on by other nations.

The most noted curiosity in Spain, is Montserrat, 20 miles N. W. of Barcelona. It rises in the form of a sugar loaf, to the height of 3,300 feet, and is inhabited by thousands of monks.

The most favorite amusement of the Spaniards is bull fights; and almost every town has an amphitheatre erected for this purpose.

Character.—The Spaniards are temperate, grave, polite, and faithful to their word, but ignorant, proud, superstitious, and revengeful.



Royal Palace, Madrid.

Towns.—**MADRID** is situated on the *Manzanares, a small branch of the Tagus. It has neither commerce nor manufactures, and is important only as the capital of Spain. It is the most elevated capital in Europe, being about half a mile higher than the level of the sea.

Cadiz is situated on the island of Leon, and is the first commercial city in Spain. It has an excellent harbor, and is the centre of trade for America and the West Indies.

In what direction from us is Spain? What are the rivers of Spain? **E. G. G. T. D. M.** What three capes has Spain? **O. F. T.** What mountains between France and Spain? **P.** What three ranges of mountains in Spain? **S. M. T. C.** What six towns on the Mediterranean? **B. V. D. C. A. M.** What British fortress on the strait of Gibraltar? **G.** How is Cadiz situated? What city on the Guadalquivir? **S.** What town on a branch of the Guadalquivir, formerly the residence of the Moorish kings? **G.** What town on the Guadiana? **B.** What two towns on the Tagus? **T. T.** What two cities between the Tagus and Duero? **M. S.** What two cities on the Duero? **B. V.** On the Ebro? **S. T.** What city on a branch of the Ebro? **M.** What city between the Duero and Cantabrian mountains? **L.** What two cities between the Cantabrian mountains and the bay of Biscay? **B. O.** What two ports in the N. W. part of Spain? Corunna and Ferrol. What other town in Spain? **M.** What three islands near Spain? **I. M. M.** How many square miles has Spain? How will you sail from Madrid to Rome?

* *Man-za-na-rees.*

ITALY.



Naples and Mount Vesuvius.

How is Italy bounded? What is its capital? R.

Italy is one of the most beautiful and interesting countries in Europe, and is distinguished for the fertility of its soil, the mildness and serenity of its air, and for the beauty and diversity of its scenery.

Italy was *once* the garden of Europe, the parent of the arts and sciences, and mistress of the world; but owing to the indolence of the inhabitants, it is now one of the most feeble and powerless divisions of Europe.

Italy contains the most splendid specimens of *painting, sculpture and architecture*; and abounds with the remains of ancient monuments, such as *amphitheatres, triumphal arches, ruins of temples, bridges, aqueducts, &c.*

The principal productions of Italy are *grain, vines, olives, fruits, silks and marble*. Agriculture is in a very backward state, and commerce and manufactures receive but little attention.

Italy is divided into a number of small states, the principal of which are the following, viz.

1. The kingdom of Naples, in the southern part, which includes the island of Sicily. Capital, **NAPLES**.
2. The Roman States, or the Pope's Dominions, in the middle. Capital, **ROME**.
3. The Grand Duchy of Tuscany, northwest of the Roman States, dependent on Austria. Capital, **FLORENCE**.
4. The Republic of St. Marino, in the eastern part of the Roman States, under the protection of the Pope. Capital, **St. MARINO**.
5. The Duchy of Lucca. Capital, **Lucca**.
6. States of Parma. " **Parma**.
7. States of Modena. " **Modena**.
8. Austrian Italy, " **Milan**.
9. The kingdom of Sardinia, in the northwestern part, which includes the island of Sardinia. Capital, **TURIN**.

Character.—The Italians are affable and polite, and excel in music, painting and sculpture; but they are effeminate, superstitious, slavish and revengeful.



Rome.

Towns.—**ROME**, once the capital of the Roman Empire, and the proud metropolis of the civilized world, is situated on the Tiber, 15 miles from its mouth. In the days of Augustus Cesar, its population was 2,000,000, and its circumference fifty miles. Although greatly reduced, it is now one of the most beautiful and magnificent cities in Europe, and is distinguished for the numerous remains of its ancient grandeur. It contains many elegant edifices, among which is St. Peter's church, one of the largest and most splendid fabrics in the world.

NAPLES, situated on the bay of Naples, is distinguished for its delightful situation, and for the beauty of its surrounding scenery. It is

generally well built, but has few manufactures, and but a small share of commerce.

PALERMO, the capital of the island of Sicily, is a large and beautiful city, and has a considerable share of commerce, and extensive manufactures of silk.

FLORENCE, situated on the Arno, is one of the most beautiful cities in Europe. It is distinguished for the fine arts, and noted for being the birth place of Amerigo Vesputius.

LEGHORN, in the Grand Duchy of Tuscany, is one of the chief seaports of Italy. It is famous for its straw hats.

TURIN is situated on the Po, in the midst of a fertile and delightful country. It is a regular and handsome city.

GENOA, once the seat of a famous republic, is now the chief seaport of the kingdom of Sardinia. It is noted for being the birth place of Columbus.

In what direction from us is Italy? What range of mountains in Italy? **A.** How long are the Appenines? What volcano near Naples? How high is Mount Vesuvius? Which are the two principal rivers in Italy? **H. R.** What cape south of Italy? **S.** What three gulfs around Italy? **V. T. G.** What strait is the entrance to the gulf of Venice? **O.** What strait between Italy and Sicily? **M.** What mountain in Sicily? **E.** How high is Mount Etna? What four towns in Sicily? **P. M. C. S.** What town in the southern part of Italy? **M.** On the gulf of Taranto? **T.** What town near Naples? **S.** What four towns on the gulf of Venice? **B. P. A. R.** What town S. W. of Ravenna? ***B.** What two towns in the interior? **P. A.** What town near Rome? **C. V.** What port west of Florence, and for what is it famous? What town on the gulf of Genoa, and for what is it celebrated? **G.** How is Turin situated? What town near the Mediterranean, S. W. of Genoa? **N.** What island does the kingdom of Sardinia include? **S.** What two towns on Sardinia? **C. S.** To whom does Corsica belong? **P.** What small island between Corsica and Italy? **E.** For what is it remarkable? What is the principal town in Corsica? **B.** In what part of Corsica is Ajaccio, the birth place of Napoleon Bonaparte? What strait between Corsica and Sardinia? **B.** What small islands north of Sicily? **L.** What island south of Sicily? **M.** How will you sail from Rome to Constantinople?

TURKISH EMPIRE.

The Turkish Empire embraces Turkey in Europe, Turkey in Asia, and Egypt.

The Turks were originally from Tartary in Asia. They began their conquests about the beginning of the eleventh century.

In 1428, they overthrew the empire of the Saracens, and in 1453 took Constantinople, and put an end to the eastern Roman empire.

TURKEY IN EUROPE.



View in Constantinople.

How is Turkey bounded ? What is its capital ?

Turkey in Europe is an extensive country, and is noted for its fine climate, its fertile soil, and its favorable situation for commercial pursuits.

The northern part is level, consisting chiefly of immense plains ; the southern is mountainous, and abounds in beautiful scenery.

The soil, though poorly cultivated, produces *wheat, cotton, rice, vines, figs* and *oils* in abundance, and rich pasture.

Commerce and manufactures receive but little attention, and are chiefly in the hands of foreigners. The principal articles of export are *carpets, muslins, gauzes, crapes, wool, camel's hair, muskets, pistols, swords, corn, wine* and *fruits*.

Turkey possesses superior natural advantages for agriculture, manufactures and commerce. Its climate, soil, and situation are unequalled ; but owing to its despotic government, there are no motives to exertion, and every thing languishes.

Character.—The Turks are honest, grave, and hospitable to strangers ; but haughty, bigoted, insolent and revengeful.

Towns.—**CONSTANTINOPLE**, the ancient *By-zan'-ti-um*, is situated on the strait of Constantinople, between the Black sea and the sea of Marmora. It contains more than 300 mosques, or Mahometan temples, 23 Greek, 3 Arminian, 1 Russian and 9 Catholic churches; 11 academies, 518 seminaries, and 1300 schools for children, 13 public libraries, and a mathematical and nautical school. The view of the city from the water, is one of the finest in the world. It is well fortified, and has one of the best harbors in Europe.

Adrianople is situated in ancient Thrace, on the river Maritza. It contains many mosques, an imperial palace, and in regard to population, is the second city in Turkey in Europe. It was taken in 1360, by Amurath, the Turkish sultan, and from that time it continued to be the residence of the Turkish emperors until the conquest of Constantinople in 1453.

In what direction from us is Turkey? Which is the principal river in Turkey? How does the Danube compare with the Connecticut river? What mountains in Turkey? What city on the Pruth, memorable for being the place where Alexander Ypsilanti first raised the "standard of liberty" for the emancipation of Greece from the Turkish yoke, March 7th, 1821? *J.* What five cities on and near the Danube? *I. S. B. W. E.* What seaport on the Black Sea? *V.* What town west of Varna, called, on account of its strong fortifications and military importance, "*the gates of Constantinople*?" *S.* What seaport S. E. of Shumla or Choumla, situated on the gulf of Burgas? *B.* What city N. W. of Adrianople, among the mountains, noted for its warm baths? *S.* What city south of Sophia? *S.* What city S. W. of Seres, on the gulf of Salonica, noted for its extensive commerce? *S.** What city in the southern part, on the river Peneus, noted for its manufactures and commerce? *L.* What town on the strait of Otranto? *A.* Which has the greatest latitude, Constantinople or this place? What is the probable distance between us and Constantinople? Who is the present Sultan of the Turkish Empire? How will you sail from Constantinople to Napoli di Romania?

GREECE.

How is Greece bounded? What is its capital?

Greece† is a small, new, and interesting kingdom, and is distinguished for its mild climate, fertile soil, and for its magnificent ruins.

* This city was anciently called Thessalonica, to whose inhabitants St. Paul addressed two epistles.

† Ancient Greece consisted of a number of independent States. These were subjected by Philip, king of Macedon, 338 B. C. Macedon and all

It is generally a mountainous country, and abounds in the most beautiful scenery. The principal productions are *corn, oil, wine, cotton, wool, silk, rice and fruits.*

Greece was the first civilized and enlightened country in Europe. Its heroes, orators, statesmen, philosophers, and painters, surpassed all others of antiquity; and to them mankind are indebted for the first rudiments in most of the arts of civilized life.

Character.—The modern Greeks are a brave, active, ingenious and courteous people, but possess little information.

Towns.—NAPOLI DI ROMANIA, or Nauplia, is a strongly fortified place, on the gulf of Nuplia or Argolis. It has a safe and capacious harbor, and carries on a considerable trade in corn, oil, wine and cotton. It was taken by the Greeks in 1823, and in 1824 became the seat of government. [Written *Napoli* on the map S. of Corinth.]

ATHENS, formerly the capital of Attica, and birth place of the most distinguished orators, heroes and sages of antiquity, is now a small insignificant town. It is distinguished for its magnificent ruins, some of which are the most splendid remains of antiquity.

In what direction from us is Greece? What cape south of Greece? What large island east of Greece, noted for the fertility of its soil, and the abundance of its corn, wine, silk, honey, oil and fruits? *x.** What island east of Negropont, near the coast of Asia Minor, memorable for the dreadful massacre of its inhabitants by the Turks, in 1822? *s.* What island S. E. of Scio, noted for being the birth place of Pythagoras? *s.* What small island S. W. of Samos, famous for being

the different states of Greece were subjugated by the Romans, B. C. 148, and formed into a Roman province. In A. D. 329, Constantine the great, emperor of the Romans, transferred the seat of empire from Rome to Byzantium, or Constantinople. This was then called the Byzantine, or Eastern Roman empire. In 1453, the Turks took Constantinople, and put an end to the Byzantine empire. Since the conquest of the country, the Turks have ever treated the Greeks with the greatest cruelty and oppression. They were looked upon by their insolent masters as an inferior race of beings; and only fit to perform the lowest offices of drudgery. The Greeks submitted to these oppressive acts, till 1821, when they revolted from the Turkish yoke, asserted their independence, and established a republican government. The Turks attempted to reduce them to subjection; a destructive war ensued, which lasted several years; at length the governments of Russia, France, and England interfered, and the Sultan of Turkey was compelled to consent to the independence of Greece. Since that time, the Greeks have succeeded in establishing an efficient government, and are at this time, comparatively speaking, in a prosperous and happy condition. The kingdom of modern Greece contains about 20,000 square miles, and 650,000 inhabitants.

* Negropont, or Egripo, contains 1610 square miles, and 60,000 inhabitants. It is separated from the continent by a strait, over which is a bridge 900 feet long.

the place where St. John wrote the "Revelation?" *r.* What large island south of the Archipelago, once famous for "its hundred cities and the laws of Minos?" *c.** What island N. E. of Candia, noted for its ancient commerce and naval power, and for its Colossus, one of the seven wonders of the world? What large island in the eastern part of the Mediterranean, formerly noted for its fertility, population and wine, and as the abode of pleasure? *c.* What islands west of Greece? *i.* Where is Athens situated? What town west of Athens, noted for being the principal strong hold of the Greeks till 1826, and for the death of Lord Byron in 1824? *m.* What town S. W. of Athens, on the isthmus of Corinth, once famous for its wealth and magnificence, to the inhabitants of which St. Paul addressed two epistles? *c.* What town S. W. of Napoli di Romania, situated near the site of the ancient Sparta, formerly capital of the Morea? *t.* What town S. W. of Tripolizza, celebrated in ancient song as the seat of happiness and pleasure? *a.* What isthmus connects the two portions of Greece? *c.* [The gulf of Lepanto is on the west of the isthmus of Corinth, and the gulf of Egina on the east.] Which extends farther north, Greece or this state? Who is the present king of Greece? How will you sail from Athens to Washington?

IONIAN REPUBLIC.

The Ionian Republic, or Republic of Seven Islands, consists of seven small islands in the Ionian Sea, west of Greece, viz. Corfu, Cephalonia, Zante, St. Maura, Cerigo, Ithaca and Paxo.

Cephalonia is the largest of these islands, and Corfu is the seat of government. The population of these islands is 800,000, composed principally of Greeks and Italians. The republic is under the protection of Great Britain.

In what direction from us is the Ionian Republic? Which is the most northern of the Ionian isles? *c.* How many islands constitute the Ionian Republic? What are their names? In what sea are they? In what direction from Zante is Candia? Malta? Great Britain? Which is the largest of these islands? Which is the seat of government?

* Candia, formerly called Crete, is 160 miles long, and from 14 to 50 broad. It contains 4026 square miles, and 300,000 inhabitants. It was taken by the Turks in 1669, after a war of 25 years. The capital of the island is Candia, population 15,000.

GENERAL QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF EUROPE.

Which Division of Europe extends farthest south ? *s.*

Which Division extends farthest north ?

What Divisions of Europe border on the Atlantic ?

What three Divisions border on the gulf of Venice ?

Which are the two most mountainous Divisions ? *n. s.*

Where was ancient Greece ?

What country did the ancient Romans inhabit ?

Which is the first commercial nation in Europe ? *x.*

Which is the most gay and polite nation in Europe ? *r.*

Which country is most distinguished for canals ? *h.*

* Which country has the most dense population ?

* Which country has the least number of inhabitants to a square mile ?

* Which has the most dense population, France or Great Britain ?

Through what divisions will you pass in travelling on the coast from cape St. Vincent to North Cape ?

Through what divisions will you pass in travelling on the coast from cape St. Vincent to cape Matapan ?

Which is the largest city in Europe ? *l.*

Mention the next five in the order of their population. *r. c. St. f. m. and n.*

Mention the four next in the same order.

Which are the highest mountains in Europe ?

What strait, 22 miles wide, separates two of the most powerful kingdoms of Europe ?

What lake in Europe lies north of the island of Cyprus ?

What town on the Elbe due north of Rome ?

What constitutes the kingdom of Denmark ?

What three gulfs border on Italy ?

Which extends farthest west, Ireland or Portugal ?

Which extends farthest north, Scotland or Denmark ?

A certain kingdom in Europe is less in size than an island which belongs to it ; what are the names of both ? *d. and i.*

Through what must the waters of the Tornea river pass to reach the ocean ?

Which is the longest river in Europe ?

Which is the next longest ?

Which is the next ?

Where does the Dnieper empty ?

There are two large gulfs in Europe, at nearly opposite points ; what are their names ?

Through what division must an army pass, in going from Madrid to Moscow? From Moscow to Naples?

Which capital in Europe is situated half a mile above the level of the sea?

The initials of certain cities in Europe form the sentence, BONA-PARTE WAS BANISHED TO ST. HELENA; what are their names, and how are they situated?

TRAVELS ON THE MAP OF EUROPE.

How will you sail from London to St. Petersburg.

How is Russia bounded? What is its capital?

For what is St. Petersburg distinguished?

For what is Russia distinguished?

Who is the emperor of Russia at this time?

How will you sail from St. Petersburg to Stockholm?

How is Sweden bounded? Its capital?

For what is Sweden celebrated?

In what does the wealth of Sweden consist?

What is the character of the Swedes?

Who is the king of Sweden at this time?

How will you sail from Stockholm to Bergen?

How is Norway bounded? Its capital?

For what is Norway distinguished?

To what government does Norway belong?

How will you sail from Bergen to Copenhagen?

How is Denmark bounded? Its capital?

Of what does Denmark consist?

Who is the king of Denmark at this time?

How will you sail from Copenhagen to Berlin?

How is Prussia bounded? Its capital?

For what is Berlin distinguished?

What is the character of the Prussians?

Who is the present king of Prussia?

How will you sail from Berlin to Vienna?

How is Austria bounded? Its capital?

What is the character of the Austrians?

What mines in Austria?

Who is the present emperor of Austria?

How will you sail from Vienna to Rome?

How is Italy bounded? Its capital?

What can you say of Italy? For what distinguished?

Can you describe Rome? Who is the present Pope?
In what do the Italians excel? Did you ever see an Italian?
Where is Naples? For what distinguished?
For what is Florence noted? Genoa?
What did Americus Vesputius do? Columbus?
How will you sail from Rome to Amsterdam?

How is Holland bounded? Its capital?
For what is Holland noted?
What is the character of the Dutch?
Can you describe Amsterdam? The Hague?
Which do you suppose is most level, Holland or this state?
How will you sail from Amsterdam to Constantinople?

How is Turkey bounded? Its capital?
For what is Turkey noted? Its productions?
Who is the present sultan of Turkey?
What is the character of the Turks?
Can you describe Constantinople? Adrianople?
How will you sail from Constantinople to Antwerp?

How is Belgium bounded? Its capital?
For what is Belgium noted?
Who is the present king of Belgium?
Describe Antwerp. Brussels.
What is the character of the Belgians?
Are our productions similar to those of Belgium?
How will you sail from Antwerp to Athens?

How is Greece bounded? Its capital?
For what is Greece distinguished?
Who is the present king of Greece?
Describe Athens. For what are we indebted to Greece?
What is the character of modern Greeks?
How do our productions compare with those of Greece?
How will you sail from Athens to Paris?

How is France bounded? Its capital?
What can you say of France? Its productions?
Who is the present king of France?
What is the character of the French?
Which do you suppose is most pleasant, France or this state?
What can you say of Paris? Of Lyons?
How will you sail from Paris to Edinburgh?

How is Scotland bounded? Its capital?
What can you say of Edinburgh?

Into how many parts is Scotland naturally divided?
 Which do you think most pleasant, the Highlands or Lowlands?
 What curiosity do you find in Staffa?
 How will you sail from Edinburgh to Cadiz?

How is Spain bounded? Its capital?
 In what does Spain abound?
 What amusement shall we find in Spain?
 What noted curiosity in Spain?
 What is the character of the Spaniards?
 What can you say of Madrid? Cadiz?
 How will you sail from Cadiz to London?

How is England bounded? Its capital?
 What can you say of England?
 Who is the present sovereign of England?
 What is the character of the English?
 Describe London? Liverpool?
 Are the minerals of this state similar to those of England?
 How will you sail from London to Lisbon?

How is Portugal bounded? What is its capital?
 What can you say of Portugal?
 How do the productions of Portugal compare with those of this state?
 What is the character of the Portuguese?
 How long since the great earthquake at Lisbon?
 What is an earthquake? What causes it?
 How will you sail from Lisbon to Dublin?

How is Ireland bounded? Its capital?
 What can you say of Ireland?
 For what is it distinguished?
 What are the principal productions?
 What noted curiosity in Ireland?
 What is the character of the Irish?
 Where will you sail next?

In which of the countries of Europe should you prefer to live?
 Why? In which shall we find the pleasantest climate? The best fruits? The most gay, cheerful, kind, polite and happy people?
 How many of the nations of Europe speak the same language that we do? A. None but the English. In which country shall we find the most learned men? The best musicians? Which European nation differs most from us in dress, manners, customs, &c. do you suppose? The Turks or the English? Why?

Asia.

Pop. to a Sq. Mile 27.	Pop. Sq. Mile 3.
A S I A	N. AMERICA
16 Million Square Miles	8 M. Sq. Miles
Pop. 440 Million	Pop. 25 M.

Comparative View of Asia and North America.

Asia is the largest, richest, and most populous division of the globe. It is remarkable for having been the scene of some of the most important events that the history of the world can furnish.

It was in Asia that our first parents were created, and there occurred the most noted transactions recorded in the scriptures. There lived the patriarchs and prophets; and there appeared the Saviour, and introduced his gospel, which is ultimately to bless all nations.

In Asia, likewise, successfully flourished some of the greatest and most powerful empires that the world has ever seen,—as the Assyrian, the Babylonian, the Median and Persian. This favored portion of the globe was also foremost in civilization, arts, science and commerce. Indeed edifices were reared, cities built, and empires founded, while Europe, Africa and America were uninhabited and unexplored.

Asia is distinguished for its large and numerous rivers, its salt lakes, its vast elevated plains and deserts, and for the variety of its climate and its animal, vegetable and mineral productions.

Asia excels all other parts of the earth in the deliciousness of its fruits; the fragrancv of its plants,

spices and gums; the salubrity of its drugs; the quantity, variety and beauty of its gems; the richness of its metals; and the fineness of its silks and cottons; and produces, also, an abundance of all the necessities of life.

Nature has spread over Asia, all the treasures of the earth,—but most abundantly in India. Her bounties are distributed by imperceptible gradations through all its three zones. In the torrid zone—whose genial warmth converts the juices of plants to spices, balsam, sugar and coffee, with which Asia has enriched the West Indies—the sago, cocoa, date and umbrella palms reach a height of 200 feet, and the white elephant attains a size surpassing that of all other quadrupeds. From this region the silk-worm was brought to Europe, and hence to America.*

This portion conceals in its bosom the most beautiful diamonds and richest metals, while its waves flow over the purest pearls and corals. The temperate zone has given to the other divisions of the globe, the melon, the vine, the orange and many of their most agreeable garden fruits, as well as the most productive kinds of grain, and the most charming flowers; and unites in its productions, symmetry with richness, particularly in its western regions. Here the oldest traditions place Paradise; here lie the enchanting Cashmere, and the Garden of Damascus; here blossoms the rose of Jericho near the cedars of Lebanon.*

The eastern countries in the same latitude, possess the tea shrub and the genuine rhubarb. The camel, the Angora goat, the Thibetian sheep, the pheasant, and the horse, are natives of this zone. In the north blossoms a few Alpine flowers, and from the icy soil grows the dwarf-like Siberian cedar, till at 70° vegetation mostly ceases. Here live the smallest of quadrupeds. The shrew-mouse of the Yenisei, sables, ermines, foxes, otters, &c. afford the finest fur. The mineral kingdom furnishes rich ores, rare precious stones, and remarkable fossil remains, especially those of the mammoth and elephant in high northern latitudes.†

The human mind for centuries, seems to have remained stationary in Asia. Ancient forms are preserved most rigidly, and no advances are, apparently, made in the arts and sciences. The internal commerce is still carried on by caravans‡ as in the most ancient

* British Cyclopaedia.

† Fossil remains here mean those parts of animals dug out of the earth, as teeth, bones, tusks, &c.

‡ A caravan consists of a number of merchants or pilgrims, who travel on camels. Their number often amounts to several thousands. They are provided with arms to defend themselves from the attacks of the wandering Arabs, and other tribes of robbers.

*A Caravan.*

times—before Abraham and Moses—when merchandise was transported from India through Bactria to Colchis, as at present to Cairo, Constantinople and Moscow. The foreign commerce is wholly in the hands of Europeans,—English, Dutch, French and Russians, and of Americans.

Questions.—How does Asia compare with the other grand divisions of the globe? For what is Asia remarkable? Which grand division of the globe was first peopled? Can you mention any events that occurred in Asia? What great empires flourished in Asia? Which division took the lead in civilization and arts, science and commerce? For what is Asia distinguished? In what respect does Asia excel other parts of the earth? Did you ever see any thing that was brought from Asia? If you could go to Asia, which part should you prefer to visit? Why? Do any of the nations of Asia speak the same language that we do? A. They do not; neither do they use the same characters in writing and printing that we do. The British own a large part of Hindoostan, and of course speak the English language. In which country do you think you should prefer to live, the United States or Hindoostan? Can we sail from the United States to Asia? Will you describe the voyage?

MAP OF ASIA.

How is Asia bounded?

Arabia?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Turkey?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?

Persia ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Beloochistan ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Afghanistan ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Hindoostan ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Farther India ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Chinese Empire ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
I. Tartary ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Siberia ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Caucasus ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

RIVERS.

Where does the river Jordan rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty ? * Euphrates ? Tigris ? Indus ? Nerbuddah ? Kristna ? Godavery ? Ganges ? Sampoo, or Burram-pooter ? Irrawaddy ? Mecon, or Cambodia ? Hoang Kiang ? Kiang Ku ? Hoang Ho, or Yellow river ? Amoor, or Saghalien ? Anadir ? Lena ? Olensk ? Anabara ? Piacina ? Toongooska ? Yenisei ? Obi ? Irtish ? Ural ? Sihon ? Jihon ? Tedzen river ?

SEAS.

Where is the Red Sea ?
 Where is the sea of Arabia ?
 Where is the China Sea ?
 Where is the Blue Sea ?
 Where is the Yellow Sea ?
 Where is the Sea of Corea ?
 Where is the Sea of Okhotsk ?
 Where is the Sea of Kamtchatka ?
 Where is the Sea of Anadir ?
 Where is the Sea of Obi ?
 Where is the Sea of Kara ?
 Where is the Sea of Celebes ?
 Where is the Caspian Sea ?
 Where is the Aral Sea ?
 Where is the Dead Sea ?

BAYS.

Where is the Bay of Bengal ?
 Where is Tominee Bay ?
 Where is Illano Bay ?

* The Jordan rises in mount Hermon, in the S. W. part of Turkey, and runs a southerly course, passing through the sea of Tiberias, or sea of Galilee, and empties into the Dead Sea. Its length is about 160 miles.

LAKES.

Where is Lake Baikal?
 Where is Lake Tshany?
 Where is Lake Altan?
 Where is Lake Falcati?
 Where is Lake Durra?

GULFS.

Where is the Persian Gulf?
 Where is the Gulf of Ormus?
 Where is the Gulf of Cutch?
 Where is the Gulf of Cambay?
 Where is the Gulf of Siam?
 Where is the Gulf of Tonquin?

PENINSULAS.

Where is the Peninsula of Kamtchatka?
 Where is the Peninsula of Corea?
 Where is the Peninsula of Malacca?

STRAITS.

Where is Bhering's Strait?
 Where is the Strait of Sangar?
 Where is the Strait of Corea?
 Where is the Strait of Macassar?
 Where is the Strait of Malacca?
 Where is the Strait of Babelmandel?
 Where is the Channel of Tartary?

CAVES.

Where is Cape Taymour?
 Where is Cape Skolatskoi?
 Where is Cape Lopatka?
 Where is East Cape?
 Where is Cape Romania?
 Where is Cape Comorin?
 Where is Cape Rosalgat?
 Where is Cape Kanseli?

MOUNTAINS.

Where are the Altay Mountains?
 Where are the Great Altay Mountains?
 Where are the Little Altay Mountains?
 Where are the Alak Mountains?
 Where are the Belur Tag Mountains?
 Where are the Himmaleh Mountains?
 Where are the Gaut Mountains?

Where are the Ramleah Mountains ?
 Where is Mount Sinai ?
 Where is Mount Taurus ?
 Where is Mount Ararat ?
 What is the length of the Altay Mountains ? Himmaleh ? Ural ?

DESERTS.

Where is the Great Desert of Cobi or Shamo ?
 Where is the Great Sandy Desert ?
 Where is the Sandy Desert ?
 Where is the Salt Desert ?
 Where is the Steppe of Issim ?
 Where is the Desert of Ahkaf ?

ISLANDS.

Where is the island of Socotra ? Laccadives ? Maldives ? Ceylon ? Andaman ? Nicobar ? Sunda Isles, viz. Sumatra, Java, Banca and Timor ?—Borneo ? Celebes ? Gilolo ? Booro ? Coram ? New Guinea ? Salibro Isles ? Pelew Isles ? Philippine Islands, viz. Luzon, Mendanao, Samar, Lyte and Negros ?—Palawan ? Hainan ? Bashee Isles ? Formosa ? Loo Choo, or Leo Keo ? Sulphur Isles ? Bonin Isles ? Japan islands, viz. Nippon, Sikoke and Kiusiu ? Jesse ? Saghalien ? Kurile islands ? Bhering's ? First Isle ? Second Isle ? New Siberia ? Nova Zembla ?

ARABIA.

How is Arabia bounded ? What is its capital ?

Arabia consists chiefly of immense deserts, interspersed with fertile spots like islands. It has no large rivers or lakes, and in many places it is destitute of water.

It is divided into three parts, viz. *Arabia Petraea*, in the north-western part ; *Arabia Deserta*, embracing the interior and north-eastern part ; and *Arabia Felix*, in the southern part.

The climate is excessively warm on the plains, and subject to a destructive wind called the Samiel or Simoom, but mild and healthy on the mountains.

The principal productions of Arabia are *coffee*, *gum-ar-a-bic*, *frankincense*, *myrrh* and *aloes*.

The most useful animal in Arabia is the *camel, and next to this, the horse, which is celebrated for beauty, swiftmess, hardiness and docility.

Character.—The Arabs are an ignorant, savage and barbarous people. Those on the coast are *pirates*; those in the interior are *robbers*. During the middle ages they were called Saracens, and were distinguished for learning and science, but at present they are so illiterate, that but few can be found who are able either to read or write.

Towns.—MECCA is situated in a narrow valley, 40 miles from the Red Sea. It is a well built city, and is celebrated as the birth place of Mahomet. It is supported by pilgrims who resort thither from all parts of the Mahometan world.

Medina, 180 miles north of Mecca, is celebrated for containing the sepulchre of Mahomet.

Mocha is the principal seaport of Arabia, and is celebrated for its excellent coffee.

In what direction from us is Arabia? What mountains in the northern part? *r.* What mountains near the northern extremity of the Red Sea? *s.* What town on the gulf of Suez? *s.* What town on the Euphrates? *b.* What place on the Persian gulf? *L.* On the gulf of Ormus? *m.* What three towns on the sea of Arabia? *h. h. k.* What seaport on the straits of Babelmandel? *m.* What three towns on the Red Sea? *L. c. y.* What five towns near the Red Sea? *s. s. m. m. h.* What two towns in the interior? *d. y.* What two capes has Arabia? *r. k.*

TURKEY IN ASIA.

How is Turkey bounded? What is its capital?

Turkey is the most interesting portion of Asia. It includes within its limits, most of the places recorded in the Holy Scriptures. It comprises the Holy Land, the ancient residence of the Jews; Syria, Asia Minor, Armenia and Mesopotamia.

It was once the seat of many flourishing and cele-

* The camel is the only animal that can endure the toil of traversing the vast deserts. It can travel six or eight days without water, and can carry 700 or 800 pounds upon its back. It kneels down to receive its load, and rises when it is put on.

brated cities, which are now in ruins. Among them were Babylon, Nineveh, Troy, Balbec, Palmyra, Antioch and Tyre.



Ruins of Palmyra.

Turkey is a mild, healthy and fertile country, and is beautifully diversified with mountains, plains, hills, and valleys. It is famous for its *wines, fruits, pomegranates* and *olives*.

Agriculture is much neglected. The chief manufactures are *carpets, silks* and *leather*.

Inhabitants.—The population consists of Turks, Greeks, Armenians, Jews, Kurds and Arabians. The Turks are the ruling people, and like those of Turkey in Europe, are honest, grave, and hospitable to strangers; but haughty, bigoted, indolent and revengeful.

Towns.—CONSTANTINOPLE.—[See Turkey in Europe.]

Aleppo, the capital of Syria, is situated about 70 miles from the Mediterranean, and is the largest city in Asiatic Turkey. It has a considerable share of commerce, and is distinguished for its manufactures of silk and cotton.

Bagdad, once the renowned seat of the Caliphs, and one of the most splendid cities in the world, is situated on the Tigris, 300 miles N. W. of Bassora. It is the resort of caravans from India, Persia, and Arabia, but retains little of its ancient splendor.

Damascus is delightfully situated in the midst of a fertile plain, about 50 miles from the sea. It is celebrated for its manufacture of

silk and cotton goods. It has an extensive commerce by means of caravans, and is one of the best built cities in the Turkish Empire.

Jerusalem, the ancient capital of Judea, is situated about 40 miles from the Mediterranean. It was once the metropolis of the powerful kingdom of David and Solomon, and had its temples built of the cedar of Lebanon, and ornamented with the gold of Ophir. It retains but little of its former splendor, and is distinguished for being the resort of pilgrims from various parts of the Christian world.

Palmyra, or Tadmor in the wilderness, is situated in the Syrian desert, about 150 miles S. E. of Aleppo. It is now only distinguished for its magnificent ruins, which surpass all other remains of antiquity.

In what direction from us is Turkey? Which are the two principal rivers in Turkey? E. T. What four seas border on Turkey? M. A. M. E. What three towns on the Tigris? E. M. D. What city on and near the Euphrates? E. and A. What three places on the Mediterranean? A. T. T. What three cities near the Mediterranean? A. D. J. What city on the Archipelago? S. What port on the Black Sea? T. What three other towns in the northern part? A. A. E. What small sea in the southwestern part? D. What river empties into it. A. The Jordan? What mountain in the western part of Turkey? T. How many square miles has Turkey? What is its population? +

PERSIA.

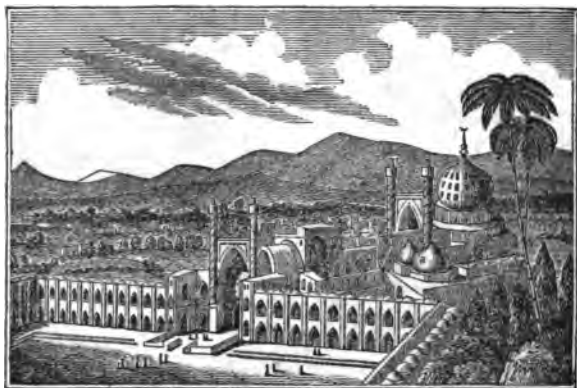
How is Persia bounded? What is its capital?

Persia, one of the most celebrated and powerful kingdoms of antiquity, at present exhibits scarcely a vestige of its former greatness.

It consists principally of immense desert plains and barren mountains, interspersed with numerous salt lakes and marshes. It is generally destitute of trees and rivers.

Some of the valleys and plains are fertile, and produce *grain, wine, silk, tobacco, fruits and drugs* in abundance.

The Persians are distinguished for the extent and variety of their manufactures, which consist of the most beautiful *carpets, brocade, silk, shawls, porcelain, &c.*



Ispahan.

On the western part of the coast of the Caspian Sea, are fountains of *naphtha* or *pure rock oil*. The earth around them, when dug to the depth of two or three inches, readily takes fire on applying to it a live coal. Here still reside the Persees or fire worshippers.

Character.—The Persians are polite, gay, polished and hospitable, but indolent, vain, avaricious, and treacherous.

Towns.—TEHEREN is situated 60 miles south of the Caspian Sea, and 300 north of Ispahan. Its situation is low, and its appearance mean.

Ispahan, the ancient capital of Persia, and formerly one of the most splendid cities of the east, is situated on the Zenderoud, about midway between the Caspian Sea and Persian gulf. It is at present much reduced, and a considerable part of the city is in ruins.

Bushire is the principal seaport.

In what direction from us is Persia? What river forms part of the boundary between Persia and Arabia? *z*. What river forms part of the boundary between Persia and I. Tartary? *Ted'zen*. What city on a branch of the *Tedzen*? *m*. What city in the N. W. part? *z*. What seaport on the Persian gulf? *b*. What two cities in the interior? *i*. *x*. What city on the straits of Ormus? *g*. What desert in the interior? What mountain in the N. W. part of Persia? *A*. For what is Mount Ararat remarkable?*

* See Genesis, chapter viii. 4th verse.

AFGHANISTAN.

*Oriental Scenery.*

How is Afghanistan bounded? What is its capital?

Afghanistan is a modern kingdom of Asia, and like Persia, is greatly diversified with mountains, valleys, hills and deserts.

It has almost every variety of climate and soil. The principal productions are *wheat, barley* and various kinds of *fruit*.

Character.—The Afghans are a brave, fierce and warlike people, and are distinguished for hospitality, not only to strangers, but to their most implacable enemies.

Chief Town.—CABUL is situated on the river Cabul, a branch of the Indus, and has a considerable trade with India, Persia and Tartary.

In what direction from us is Afghanistan? What lake in Afghanistan? D. What river empties into it? H. What town in the interior? K. What river forms the boundary between Afghanistan and Hindoostan? J. How is Cabul situated? Herat? Balk?

BELOOCHISTAN.

How is Beloochistan bounded? Its capital?

Beloochistan has seldom been traversed by Europeans, and therefore but little is known respecting it. As far as it has been explored, it is generally mountainous and barren.

Inhabitants.—Beloochistan is inhabited by two tribes; the Beloochees, who subsist by plunder and robbery; and the Brahooes, a peaceable and industrious people, who inhabit the mountainous districts, and subsist principally on their flocks and herds.

Town.—KELAT is situated on the Maskid river. It is generally well built, and contains about 24,000 inhabitants.

In what direction from us is Beloochistan? What desert in the southern part of Beloochistan? s. What river forms the boundary between Beloochistan and Hindoostan? i. What city near the mouth of the Indus? r. What city in the interior, south of Kelat? n.

HINDOOSTAN.



The Banian Tree.

How is Hindoostan bounded? Its capital?

Hindoostan is the most beautiful country in Asia, and has been famous in all ages for its civilization, valuable productions, and for its wealth and extensive manufactures.

Hindoostan is mostly a level country, and is distinguished for its numerous rivers and the general fertility of its soil, which produces two crops in a year.

The climate in the northern part is mild and healthy; in the south it is warm, and the heat is often oppressive.

Almost every variety of production is found here; the most important are *rice, cotton, wheat, sugar, indigo, opium, tobacco, millet* and various kinds of *fruit*.

The *Baniam Tree* is the most singular and beautiful production of India. The branches extend to the earth, and take root, and thus form new trunks, so that each tree is a grove. One of these trees, on an island in the Nerbuddah river, has 3000 trunks, and 7000 persons may repose under its shade.

Hindoostan has long been celebrated for its *diamonds*, which are found principally at Golconda.

The British possessions in India consist of Bengal, Bahar and Benares, on the banks of the Ganges, of which Calcutta is the capital; of other places on the coast of Coromandel, of which Madras is the capital; of the island of Bombay, Surat, and several districts on the Malabar coast, of which Bombay is the capital.



The four Castes.

CEYLON belongs to Great Britain. It is a rich,

healthy, and fertile island, and is distinguished for the variety and value of its productions, the most important of which are *cinnamon, ginger, pepper, sugar, cotton, &c.* It has valuable *pearl fisheries*, and is rich in precious stones and gems.

COLUMBO, the capital, is a handsome and well fortified place, but has a poor harbor.

Inhabitants.—The Hindoos are indolent, spiritless, and superstitious. They are mild and servile to superiors, but haughty and cruel to their inferiors. They are the most ingenious manufacturers of muslins, silks, shawls, &c.

The Hindoos are divided into four classes or castes: 1. The Brahmins, or priests; 2. The soldiers; 3. The merchants and agriculturists; 4. The sudras or laborers. These castes are kept entirely distinct, and are never allowed to intermarry, or even to eat and drink with each other.

Towns.—CALCUTTA is situated on the Hoogly, an outlet of the Ganges, about 100 miles from its mouth. It has an extensive commerce, and is one of the most splendid cities in Asia.

Benares, the ancient seat of Braminical learning, is situated on the Ganges, 460 miles N. W. of Calcutta. It has an extensive trade in diamonds, gems, &c. and is a place of great wealth.

Delhi, formerly the capital of Hindoostan, and seat of the Mogul empire, is situated on the Jumna, a branch of the Ganges.

In what direction from us is Hindoostan? What are the rivers of Hindoostan? i. n. k. g. g. What mountains between Hindoostan and the Chinese Empire, the highest on the globe? n. What mountains in the southern part of Hindoostan? g. What desert in the N. W. part of Hindoostan? g-s. What two gulfs on the western coast of Hindoostan? c. and c. What gulf between Hindoostan and Ceylon? A. The gulf of Ma-naar'. What three cities on the Indus and its branches? c. l. m. What four towns on the Ganges and its branches? B. A. A. D. What town on the gulf of Cambay? c. What city on Taptee river, which empties into the gulf of Cambay? s. What four towns on the Malabar coast? B. G. c. c. What five towns on the Coromandel coast? c. g. o. m. p. What five towns in the interior? N. B. H. N. s. What two clusters of islands S. W. of Hindoostan? L. M. What large island south of Hindoostan? c. What town on Ceylon? What point at the southern extremity of Ceylon? Dondra Head. How many square miles has Hindoostan? What is its population? What small kingdom in the northern part of Hindoostan? Napaul.

FARTHER INDIA.

How is Farther India bounded? Its capital?

This vast portion of Asia, extending from the Bay of Bengal to the China Sea, is scarcely known to Europeans, except along its shores.

It is divided into the Birman empire, kingdoms of Tonquin, Cochin China, Cambodia, Laos, Siam, and the peninsula of Malacca.

It is remarkably fertile, and produces *wheat, rice, cotton, sugar, tobacco, indigo, spices, gums*, and various tropical *fruits*. It has mines of *gold, silver, tin, copper, iron*, and *precious stones*.

The climate in most parts is extremely warm, but it is said to be generally healthy.

It abounds in wild animals; the most numerous and dangerous of which is the tiger, which attacks indiscriminately either man or beast. It is famous for its elephants, which are used as beasts of burden, both in peace and war.



A Tiger attacking Hunters.

The **BIRMAN EMPIRE** embraces the four ancient kingdoms of **Ava, Pegu, Arracan and Cassay**. It is inhabited by a brave, warlike people, who are noted for activity, enterprise and intelligence.

UMMERAPOORA, the capital of the Birman empire, is situated on the

Irrawaddy, 400 miles from its mouth. It was founded in 1783, and in 1800 the population was 175,000.

Rangoon, on the Irrawaddy, 30 miles from its mouth, is the principal seaport of the Birman empire.

In what direction from us is Farther India? Which are the two principal rivers in Farther India? *r* and *c*. In what part of Farther India is the Birman empire? What city in the western part of the Birman empire on the bay of Bengal? Arracan. What three cities on the Irrawaddy? *r*. *v*. *p*. In what part is Tonquin? Cochin China? What is the capital of Cochin China? Hue, or Tai Foo. What town at the mouth of the Cambodia river? Saigon. What town on the Meinam river, at the head of the gulf of Siam? *s*. Where is Malacca? What is the capital of Malacca? A. Malacca, situated on the straits of Malacca. What other Town? Patani. What cape south of Malacca? *n*. What straits between Malacca and Sumatra? *m*. What two gulfs on the coast of Farther India? *s*. and *t*. What island in the gulf of Tonquin? *n*. What two clusters of islands west of Farther India, in the bay of Bengal? *a*. *n*. What large island S. W. of Malacca? *s*. What town in the north-western part of Sumatra? A-cheen'. What is the length of the China Sea?

CHINESE EMPIRE.

How is the Chinese Empire bounded? Its capital?

The Chinese Empire embraces China, Thibet, Corea, and Chinese Tartary, and is one of the most extensive and populous empires on the globe.

CHINA.

How is China bounded? Its capital?

China is celebrated for the great antiquity of its government; for its immense population; for the variety of its manufactures and peculiar productions; for the excellence of its inland navigation, and for its reserve and jealous policy towards all other nations.

China has a mild, healthy climate, and a rich, fertile soil, which is under the highest state of cultivation.

The productions are numerous; the most celebrated among them is *tea*, which is the leaf of a shrub, that grows from 8 to 12 feet high.

The principal exports are *teas*, *silks* and *porcelain*, or *China ware*.



The Tea Trade.

One of the greatest curiosities of China, is the Chinese wall. It is 1,500 miles in length, from 20 to 30 feet in height, and sufficiently wide for six horsemen to ride abreast. It is said to have been finished 214 years before the Christian era. It was built as a defence against the Tartars.



The Chinese Wall

Character.—The Chinese are mild, intelligent, courteous, and extremely industrious ; but generally vain, timid, artful, and jealous of strangers.

Towns.—PEKING, the capital of the Chinese Empire, is situated in a fertile plain about 50 miles from the great wall. It is 14 miles in circumference, and is surrounded by a wall 30 feet high. It is the most populous city on the globe.

Nanking was formerly one of the most splendid cities in China, but is now much decayed. It is distinguished for the extent of its manufactures, particularly *silks*, *crapes*, and *nankeens*. It is famous for its Porcelain Tower, which is 200 feet high.

Canton, situated on Canton river, is the first commercial city in China, and the only one to which Europeans and Americans are permitted to trade. The chief article of export is tea.

In what direction from us is China ? What are the three principal rivers in China ? H. K. H. What city in the N. E. part ? Shin Yang. What city on the Hoang Kiang river ? Y. What city N. W. of Canton ? F. What city N. E. ? F. What two cities S. E. of Nanking ? H. and Ning-po-fou. What three cities are situated on the Kiang Ku and its branches ? N. M. T. What two cities near the Hoan-Ho, or Yellow river ? S. Y. What three seas border on China ? Y. B. C. What large island near the coast of China ? F. What cluster of isles east of the Blue Sea ? L. C. What island in the bay of Canton ? M. In what part is the Imperial Canal ? What stupendous work of antiquity do you find in the northern part ? What article in common use among us is produced only in China ? Upon what does it grow ? Which of the cities of China is distinguished for its high Tower ?

THIBET.

How is Thibet bounded ? What is its capital ?

This is one of the most elevated divisions of Asia. The Himmaleh mountains, in the southern part, are the highest range on the globe ; Dawalageri, the principal summit, is five miles high.

It is a cold and barren country, but abounds in a variety of animals ; the most noted among them is a species of goat, from the hair of which the Cashmere shawls are manufactured.

The religion of Thibet consists in worshipping the Grand Lama, who is regarded by his worshippers as the vicegerent of God.

LASSA, the capital, is distinguished as the residence of the Grand Lama, and is generally thronged with people from various parts of Asia, who come to worship his sacred majesty.

In what direction from us is Thibet? What four large rivers rise in Thibet? s. i. c. k. What mountains between Thibet and Hindoostan? H. What small kingdom in the southern part of Thibet, subject to the Grand Lama? B. How is Lassa situated? What small kingdom among the mountains, west of Thibet? L-T.

CHINESE TARTARY.

How is Chinese Tartary bounded?

Chinese Tartary is a thinly populated country, consisting principally of a vast elevated plain, between the Himmaleh and Altay mountains.

Little is known respecting the country or the inhabitants. Most of the tribes are said to lead a wandering pastoral life, and to be worshippers of the Grand Lama.

In what direction from us is Chinese Tartary? In what part of Chinese Tartary is Soongaria? Little Bucharía? Little Thibet? Kalmucks? Mongolia? Mantchooria? What extensive desert in Chinese Tartary? Which is the principal river? A. What mountains between Chinese Tartary and Independent Tartary? B-T. What mountains in the western part of Chinese Tartary? G-A. and A. What mountains form part of the boundary between Chinese Tartary and Russia? What town in little Bucharía on the river Cashgar? C. What two towns in Mongolia? K. K. What two towns near the Chinese wall? C. Z. What four towns on the Amour and its branches? N. O. N. S. What channel east of Chinese Tartary? What two large islands? S. J. What lake in the western part of Chinese Tartary? Palcati. What town near lake Palcati? Harcash. In what empire is Chinese Tartary included?

COREA.

Corea is little known. It is said to be a healthy, fertile, and populous country.

The capital is King-ki-ta'-o.

What two seas border on Corea? Y. C. What straits between Corea and the Japan islands? C.

EMPIRE OF JAPAN.

*Sedan Chair.*

The empire of Japan consists of the islands of Nippon, Jesso, Kiusiu, and several smaller ones adjacent.

It is a rich, populous, and remarkable empire, holding no intercourse with any nation, except the Dutch and Chinese.

The climate is mild and healthy, and the soil productive. Agriculture is held in high estimation, and no portion of the soil, except the most barren wastes, is left uncultivated.

The chief productions are *rice, millet, wheat, barley, &c.* It has valuable mines of *gold, silver, iron and copper*; and most of the islands abound in *coal*.

Inhabitants.—The Japanese are the most civilized people in Eastern Asia, and are remarkable for their industry and ingenuity. They excel most nations in the manufacture of silk and cotton goods, and in Japan and porcelain ware. Great attention is paid to education; and they have several schools for the higher branches, as Rhetorick, Astronomy, Mathematics, &c.

Towns.—Jedo is a large, populous, and commercial city, in the eastern part of the island of Nippon. It is the seat of flourishing manufactures, and contains many splendid edifices.

Miaco, the ecclesiastical and literary capital of the empire, is situated in the interior, 160 miles S. W. of Jedo. It has an extensive commerce, and is distinguished for the extent and value of its manufactures.

Nangasaki, on the island of Kiusiu, is a large and commercial seaport, and the only place where the Dutch are permitted to trade.

In what direction from us is Japan? What strait between Nippon and Jesso? San-gar'. What town in the northern part of Nippon? a. How is Jed'o situated? Where is Mi-a'-co? What seaport on the island of Kiusiu? Nan-ga-sa'-ki. Which is the largest of the Japan islands? What strait between the Japan islands and Corea? How do the ladies go to make their morning visits in Japan? [See the cut.] Which has the greatest latitude, Jedo or *this* place? In what direction from this state is the island of Nippon?

INDEPENDENT TARTARY.



Tartars Exercising with the Bow and Lance.

How is independent Tartary bounded? Its capital?

Independent Tartary is inhabited by several tribes of Tartars; the two principal of which are the Usbecks in the south, and the Kirgees in the north.

The climate in most parts is mild, and the soil generally fertile. Agriculture and manufactures receive but little attention.

This country was formerly the seat of the most powerful empire in Asia, under Ghengis-Khan, Tamerlane, and others, and still presents many monuments of its ancient civilization.

Character.—The Tartars are a wandering people, and rove from place to place, with their flocks and herds. Their employment consists in tending their flocks, hunting and exercising with the bow and lance. They are ignorant and superstitious, but brave, and remarkable for their hospitality to strangers and travellers.

Chief Towns.—BUKHARA, the capital of Great Bukhara, is 100 miles west of Samarcand, on the Sogd. It contains many colleges for instruction in the Mahometan law.

Samarcand is situated on the Sogd, a branch of the Jihon or Amoo river. It was once the capital of the empire of Tamerlane, and was a celebrated seat of science, but retains little of its former magnificence.

In what direction from us is independent Tartary? What sea west of Independent Tartary? What in Independent Tartary? What two rivers empty into the Aral sea? s. j. What five towns on the Jihon and its branches? k. s. b. s. f. What two towns on the Sihon? t. o. What mountains between Independent Tartary and the Chinese empire? What mountains unite with the Belur Tag mountains on the north? v. On the south? h. On the east? a. What outlets have the Caspian and Aral seas? How many square miles has Independent Tartary? What is its population? What is the favorite amusement of the Tartars? [See the cut.]

SIBERIA.

How is Siberia bounded? Its capital?

Siberia is a cold, desolate, forlorn and extensive region, and is inhabited by a number of barbarous tribes, who are subject to Russia.

It is mostly a level country, consisting of vast plains, or *steppes*, many of which are entirely destitute of vegetation.

Siberia has rich mines of *gold, silver, copper, lead* and *iron*; and abounds in wild animals, many of which are highly valuable on account of their furs; particularly the *martin, sable, beaver, and ermine*.

Besides these, there are *elks, wolves, bears, reindeer, foxes, hares, &c.* In Kamtchatka, *dogs* are used for drawing carriages.



Travelling in Kamtchatka.

Character.—The inhabitants are generally ignorant, filthy, and barbarous.

Towns.—TOBOLSK, the capital of Siberia, is noted as a place of banishment for criminals sent from Russia, and is the centre of the Russian fur trade.

IRKOUTSK, the chief town of Eastern Siberia, is the principal mart of commerce between Russia and China. It is the most splendid and prosperous city in Siberia.

In what direction from us is Siberia? What two seas border on Kamtchatka? o. κ. What small sea in the eastern part of Siberia? α. What river empties into the sea of Anadir? α. What two seas in the N. W. part of Siberia? κ. o. What six rivers empty into the Arctic ocean? L. o. α. P. Y. O. Which is the most northern cape of Russia? τ. Which is the most eastern? ε. The most southern? L. What two towns in Kamtchatka? N. κ. and Pe-tro-pau'lowsk. What town on the sea of Okhotsk? o. What town north of it? s. What four towns on the Lena and its branches? s. Y. v. κ. What town on lake Baikal? ι. What town on the Olensk? o. What towns on the Yenisei and its branches? T. J. L. T. Y. α. What eleven towns on the Obi and its branches? o. B. s. T. T. T. O. κ. B. κ. τ. What mountains separate Siberia from Russia in Europe? υ. What is their length and height? Where is the Steppe of Issim?

Where is lake Baikal? Lake Tshany? Lake Altan? How many square miles has Siberia? What is its population? How do they travel in Kamtchatka? Which has the greatest latitude, Tobolsk or *this place*? Have they schools in Siberia?

CAUCASUS.



Selling a Circassian Female.

How is Caucasus bounded? Its capital?

Caucasus embraces the country between the Caspian and Black Seas, and is inhabited by a number of nations who are subject to Russia.

It is a rough, broken, and mountainous country, entirely destitute of plains; the climate in the valleys is mild and healthy, and the soil fertile.

The Circassians and Georgians are the two principal nations in this division. The Circassians inhabit the northern declivity of the Circassian mountains, and are a ferocious and barbarous people.

The Georgians possess the country south of the Caucasian mountains, and are friendly and hospitable, and said to be the handsomest people in the world.

These nations are celebrated for the beauty of their females; numbers of whom are sold by their parents to the Turks and Persians, and are considered the brightest ornaments of their seraglios.

TEFLIS, the capital of Georgia, is situated on the river Kur. It is

strongly fortified, and contains a number of churches, and is the residence of the Russian governor.

In what direction from us is Caucasus? What three seas border on Caucasus? B. A. C. What is the length of the Black Sea? What is the length of the Caspian Sea? What two towns on the Caspian Sea? A. Bá-kou and Der'bent. In what part is Teflis? In what part is Circassia? In what part is Georgia? For what is Georgia celebrated?

ASIATIC OR EAST INDIA ISLANDS.



A View in Borneo.

The Asiatic or East India Islands, are those which lie between Asia and Australia or New Holland, and consist principally of five groups, viz.: 1. The Sunda isles. 2. The Molucca or Spice Islands. 3. Celebes. 4. Borneo, and a number of small islands adjacent. 5. The Manillas, or Phillipine islands.

The soil in most of these islands is remarkably fertile, and produces in abundance the richest fruits of the torrid zone, and the finest spices and gums.

These islands are rich in minerals, and abound in wild animals, among which are the rhinoceros, tiger, orang-outang and crocodile.

The climate is extremely warm, and generally unhealthy, especially to foreigners.

A TABULAR VIEW OF THE PRINCIPAL EAST INDIA ISLANDS.

Sunda Isles.

<i>Names.</i>	<i>Possessed by</i>	<i>Sq. miles.</i>	<i>Population.</i>	<i>Chief Towns.</i>
Sumatra.	Natives,	180,000	4,500,000	Bencoolen.
Java,	Dutch,	52,000	4,230,000	Batavia.
Banca,	Dutch,	5,600	80,000	_____
Timor,	Dutch & Por.	6,000	100,000	Lifas.

Moluccas, or Spice Islands.

Amboyna,	Dutch, -	450	45,000	Amboyna.
Ceram,	Dutch,	4,000	120,000	_____
Gilolo,	Dutch,	12,000	_____	Santanag.
Banda Is'ls	Dutch,	_____	_____	_____

Borneo.

Borneo	Natives,	300,000	3,000,000	Borneo,
--------	----------	---------	-----------	---------

Celebes.

Celebes,	Dutch,	90,000	3,000,000	Macassar.
----------	--------	--------	-----------	-----------

Manilla, or Philippine Islands.

Luzon,	Spaniards,	70,000	1,200,000	Manilla.
Mindinao,	Spaniards,	30,000	900,000	Mindinao.
Samar,	Spaniards,	800	84,000	_____
Negros,	Spaniards,	500	75,000	_____

Which is the most eastern of the Sunda isles? *r.* Where is Banca? *A.* South of cape Romania. For what is it distinguished? *A.* For its extensive mines of tin. Where are the Moluccas or Spice islands? For what are they celebrated? *A.* For the richest spices. What sea north of Celebes? *c.* What strait between Celebes and Borneo? *m.* What island north of Borneo? *p.* Which is the largest of the Philippine isles? *L.* What cape north of Luzon? *x.* What large island north of Luzon? *p.* What small islands between Luzon and Formosa? *B.* Which is the largest of the East India islands? *B.* What is its chief town? *B.*

Australasia.

Australasia embraces Australia, Van Diemen's Land, New Guinea, New Britain, New Ireland, Solomon's Island, New Hebrides, New Zealand, and numerous smaller islands surrounding them.

AUSTRALIA, OR NEW HOLLAND.

Australia is the largest island on the globe, being 2,600 miles in length, from east to west, and 1,960 in breadth, from north to south, containing 3,000,000 square miles.

Australia was discovered in 1606, by the Dutch. Little is known respecting the island, except the coasts.

The climate is mild and healthy, and the soil fertile, producing *wheat, maize, barley, oranges, lemons*, and other tropical fruits.

The country along the eastern coast for an indefinite extent, is claimed by Great Britain, and is called New South Wales.

An English colony has been established at Port Jackson, or Botany Bay, consisting principally of convicts banished from Great Britain.

The natives are small, ill shaped, and among the most degraded of the human species. They have no regular religion, and but a faint idea of a future state.

SIDNEY is the chief town and capital of the English colony. Population, 7,000.

VAN DIEMEN'S LAND.

Van Diemen's Land is a healthy, fertile island, 170 miles in length, and about 158 in breadth. An English colony was established here in 1803, and in 1818 it contained about 6000 inhabitants, about one half of whom were convicts from Great Britain and New South Wales.

The natives resemble those of Australia or New Holland. Hobart Town is the capital of the colony. It was laid out in 1804, and now contains a number of elegant buildings.

PAPAU, OR NEW GUINEA.

Little is known respecting New Guinea or the adjacent islands. They are said to be populous and fertile, producing most of the fruits of the torrid zone. The inhabitants are negroes, and generally resemble the people of Australia or New Holland.

NEW ZEALAND.

New Zealand consists of two large islands, separated by Cook's strait. These islands are mountainous, and have a mild, healthy climate.

The natives are tall, well formed, and possess uncommon sagacity and strength of mind. They are cannibals, and when provoked, are extremely ferocious.

An English settlement has been established here for introducing the blessings of civilization and Christianity. The natives manifest a strong desire for improvement, and have made considerable progress in the arts of civilized life.

 QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE WORLD.

In what part of Australia is New South Wales? To whom does it belong? What is the capital of the English colony? s. What name has been given to the southern part of the island? n. What name to the west coast? h. What gulf in the north part? c. What strait separates Australia from New Guinea? r. What strait between Australia and Van Diemen's Land? b. Which is the largest, Australia or the United States and Territory? What is the chief town on Van Diemen's Land? What cape south of Van Diemen's Land? South Cape. How wide is the strait between Australia and Van Diemen's Land? A. 100 miles. In what direction from us is Australia? In what direction from Australia is New Guinea? In what direction from New Guinea is New Britain? New Ireland? Solomon's isle? What strait between the islands of New Zealand? What three capes around them? n. e. s. What bay in the northern part? r. What season is it in Australia *now*? Is the climate colder or warmer in New Guinea than in *this* place? If you were at cape South in New Zealand *to-day* at 12 o'clock, in what direction would your shadow fall?

 Polynesia.*

Polynesia embraces the numerous islands of the Pacific lying east of the Asiatic islands and Australasia.

The principal groups are the Pelew islands, and the Ladrões, Carolinas, Sandwich islands, and Mulgrave's isles, lying north of the equator; and the Marquesas, Society isles, Friendly isles, and Navigator's isles, south of the equator.

* Derived from two Greek words, signifying *many islands*.



A View of Otaheite.

These islands have generally a fertile soil, and a mild, healthy climate. The most important productions are the *bread fruit, cocoa nuts, bananas, oranges, &c.*

The inhabitants are tall, well formed, and generally of amiable dispositions. They were formerly Pagans, and were accustomed to sacrifice human victims to their gods. But in the Sandwich and Society islands, they have destroyed their idols, and have received christian missionaries. Many have been taught to read and write; and numbers have been converted to christianity.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE WORLD.

In what direction from Mindinao are the Pelew isles? Where are the Ladrões? Which are the three principal islands among the Ladrões? F. G. G. Where are the Carolinas? What cluster of islands in the Pacific about midway between Asia and America? S. When, and by whom were the Sandwich islands first discovered? A. In 1778, by Capt. Cook and Capt. King. Which is the most noted of the Sandwich islands? O. What are the next? A. M. In what direction from the Sandwich islands are Mulgrave's isles? What eight islands north of Mulgrave's isles? S. B. G. R. B. P. D. St. P. C. C. What considerable island S. E. of Mulgrave's isles? C. Where are the Marquesas or Washington isles? Where are the Society isles? Which is the principal island among the Society isles? O. What cluster of isles S. W. of the Society isles? F. Which is the principal island among the Friendly isles? T. What group of isles N. E. of the Friendly isles? N. What four islands N. W. of Navigator's isles? S. B. B. D. What group of islands on both sides of the equator, near the coast of South America? G.

parts separated from each other, by arid deserts of formidable extent, which cannot be traversed without the most imminent danger, and the severest suffering. Hence we see the reason why Africa has remained so long unexplored, and the progress of civilization so much slower than in any other quarter of the globe.*

The most remarkable of the African deserts is the Sahara. This is a vast plain, but little elevated above the level of the ocean, and covered with sand and gravel, with a mixture of sea shells, and appears like the basin of an evaporated sea. Amid the desert there are springs of water, which burst forth and create verdant spots, called Oases. There are thirty-two of these, which contain fountains, and date and palm trees; twenty of them are inhabited. They serve as stopping places for the caravans, and often contain villages. Were it not for these, no human being could cross this waste of burning sand. So violent, sometimes, is the burning wind, that the scorching heat dries up the water of these springs, and then frequently, the most disastrous consequences follow. In 1805, a caravan, consisting of 2000 persons, and 1800 camels, not finding water at the usual resting place, died of thirst, both men and animals. Storms of wind are more terrible and destructive on this desert than on the ocean. Vast surges and clouds of red sand are raised and rolled forward, burying every thing in their way, and it is said that whole tribes have thus been swallowed up.

In no part of the earth, do the empire of fertility and that of barrenness come into closer contact than in Africa. Wherever moisture and heat are united, vegetation displays great vigor and magnificence. The inhabitants find abundant food at a trifling amount of labor. The corn stalks bend under their load,—the vine attains a gigantic size—melons and pumpkins acquire enormous bulk—millet and holcus, a species of grain which is common over three fourths of Africa,

* Living in abundance, but separated from one another by deserts; surrounded by copious and excellent food of spontaneous growth, but encountering obstacles in all their attempts at artificial culture; enjoying a climate which required no clothing to protect them from cold, nor dwelling to shelter them from rain, the Negro, or Ethiopian, and probably also the Caffre or Troglodyte, never felt that stimulus of necessity which creates industry and reflection. Enjoying a wild happiness of condition, they satisfied the demands of sense, and scarcely possessed any notion of an intellectual world. But they felt the presence of an invisible power. They looked for its residence in the tree which gave them food—in the rock which shaded them—in the serpent which they dreaded—and even in the monkeys and parrots which flitted around them. Some believed that a piece of wood, or polished stone, was the seat of supernatural power. They were delighted to think that their deities could be carried along with them in all their motions. This system, which is called FETTERISM, and which is the rudest form of Pantheism, seems common to every climate and to every race; but it prevailed, to the exclusion of every other, in Africa, and especially among the negroes.

though badly cultivated, yield a crop of two hundred fold; and the date tree, which furnishes an important article of food, is able to withstand the fiery winds of the neighboring deserts. The forests of mount Atlas are equal to the finest of Italy and Spain. The soil, when well watered, is luxuriant beyond what the inhabitants of more northern climates can well conceive, producing plants and fruits, at the same time the most nutritious, the most refreshing, and the most wholesome.

The animal kingdom presents still greater variety. Africa can enumerate five times as many species of quadrupeds as Asia, and three times as many as all America. Among these are some of the most vigorous, ferocious, and beautiful varieties. The African lion is the only one worthy of the name. The unwieldy hippopotamus, the majestic giraffe, and the largest of birds, the ostrich, are peculiar to this division. Among the other animals are the elephant, rhinoceros, zebra, panther, leopard, hyæna, jackal, wolf. But the most beneficent gift of nature to the African is the camel, the constitution of which is in every respect adapted to the country and climate. Africa abounds in serpents of monstrous size and deadly poison, and swarms with insects of the most troublesome and destructive kinds.

The inhabitants of Africa belong to two distinct races, viz. the European and African. The former includes the natives of the Barbary States, Egypt, Nubia and Abyssinia;—the latter embraces those of the central and southern parts, distinguished by the blackness of their complexion, the short, crisped, woolly nature of their hair, the thickness of their lips and the flatness of their noses. They are termed Negroes or Africans, and form the most numerous class of inhabitants.

By reference to the map, it will be seen that Africa is more favorably situated for commerce than any other division of the globe. Placed almost in the centre of the world, it enjoys an easy communication with Europe, Asia, and America. It abounds in all the necessities and luxuries of life, and its inhabitants need only to be enlightened, and directed by the generous spirit of the gospel, to render them the most happy of mankind.

Questions.—How does Africa compare with North America in size? What is its probable population? How many square miles does it contain? For what is it remarkable? Have civilized nations ever known much about the geography of Africa? What celebrated nations once flourished in Africa? What has become of them, do you suppose? What do you imagine will be the situation of this nation three thousand years hence? Did you ever see any animals that were brought from Africa?

MAP OF AFRICA.

How is Africa bounded ?

Morocco ?	Capital ?	Principal Towns ?
Algiers ?	Capital ?	Principal Towns ?
Tunis ?	Capital ?	Principal Towns ?
Tripoli ?	Capital ?	Principal Towns ?
Barca ?	Capital ?	Principal Towns ?
Egypt ?	Capital ?	Principal Towns ?
Nubia ?	Capital ?	Principal Towns ?
Abyssinia ?	Capital ?	Principal Towns ?

Where is Fezzan ? What is its capital ?
 Where is Senegambia ? Its chief towns ?
 Where is Sierra Leone ? What is its chief town ?
 Where is Liberia ? What is its chief town ?
 Where is Guinea ? What are its four principal kingdoms ?
 Where is Loango ? What are its chief towns ?
 Where is Congo ? What is its capital ?
 Where is Benguela ? Its principal towns ?
 Where is Cimbebas ? What two capes has it ?
 Where is South Africa ? How is it divided ?
 Where is Monomotapa ? Its chief towns ?
 Where is Mozambique ? Its chief town ?
 Where is Zanguebar ? Its chief towns ?
 Where are Ajan and Adel ?
 Where is Ethiopia ? What town in it ?
 Where is Nigritia ? Its principal towns ?
 Where is Darfur ? What is its capital ?

RIVERS.

Where does the Nile rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty ? Niger ? Senegal ? Gambia ? Grande ? Mesurado ? Lagos ? Formosa ? Congo ? Coanza ? Orange ? Zak ? Keiskamma ? Zimbezi ?

ISLANDS.

Where are the Azores ?
 Where are the Madeira Isles ?
 Where are the Ca-na'-ry Isles ?
 Where are the Cape Verd Isles ?
 Where are Fernando Po, Prince's, St. Thomas and Anabon Isles ?
 Where is St. Matthew's Isle ? Ascension Isle ?
 Where is St. Helena ? For what is it remarkable ?
 Where is Madagascar ? What towns on it ?
 Where is the Isle of France and Bourbon Isle ?
 Where are the Comoro Isles ?

Where are the Cosmoledo Isles ?
 Where are Providence and Assumption Isles ?
 Where are Almirante Isles and Mahe Isles ?
 Where is the island of Socotra ?

CAPES.

Where is cape Bon ?
 Where is cape Guardafui ?
 Where is cape of Good Hope ?
 Where is cape Verd ?
 Where is cape Spartel ?
 Where are cape Bedouin and cape Bassa ?
 Where is cape Delgado ?
 Where is cape Lagullus ?
 Where are cape Serra and cape Frio ?
 Where is cape Ledo ?
 Where is cape Three Points ?
 Where are cape Palmas and cape Mesurado ?
 Where is cape Roxo ?
 Where are cape Blanco, cape Barbas and cape Bojadar ?
 Where is cape Ambro ?
 Where is cape St. Mary ?

DESERTS.

Where is Sahara, or Great Desert ?
 Where is the Lybian Desert ?

MOUNTAINS.

Where are the Atlas mountains ?
 Where are the mountains of the Moon ?
 Where are the mountains of Kong ?
 Where are the Crystal mountains ?
 Where are the Brenas mountains ?
 Where are the Lupata mountains ?

LAKES.

Where is lake Tchad ?
 Where is lake Dembea ?
 Where is lake Maravi ?

GULFS.

Where is the gulf of Cables ?
 Where is the gulf of Sidra ?
 Where is the gulf of Biafra ?
 Where is the gulf of Guinea ?
 Where is the gulf of Benin ?

BAYS.

Where is Delegea Bay ?

Where is Algoa Bay ? Where is Table Bay ?

Where is Walwich Bay ?

STRAITS.

Where is the strait of Babelmandel ?

Where is the strait of Gibraltar ?

Where is the channel of Mozambique ?

EGYPT.



Grand Cairo.

How is Egypt bounded ? What is its capital ?

Egypt is celebrated for its great antiquity ; for the early civilization of its inhabitants, and for being the parent of the arts and sciences. But like most seats of early renown, it has lost its former greatness, and is now distinguished for the magnificence of its ruins.

Egypt is divided into two parts, Upper and Lower. Upper Egypt extends from Nubia to Cairo ; and Lower Egypt from Cairo to the Mediterranean.

The cultivated part of Egypt consists principally of a fertile vale, 15 or 20 miles in breadth, on both

sides of the river Nile. The remainder of the country is mountainous and barren.

The climate in summer is extremely warm ; in winter it is mild and agreeable.

The chief productions are *maize, rice, wheat, barley, &c.* and most of the *fruits* of the torrid and temperate zones.

Rain is very uncommon in Egypt, but owing to the annual flood of the Nile, and the heavy dews, the soil seldom suffers for want of moisture. The Nile annually overflows its banks, and spreads over the country like a sea. The rise of the Nile commences about the middle of June, and begins to subside about the first of September. The lands thus overflowed are extremely fruitful and easily cultivated. Manufactures are in a low state.

Inhabitants.—The inhabitants consist of Copts, Arabs, Turks and Jews. The Copts are the most numerous class, and are the descendants of the ancient Egyptians. They are active, ingenious, and well skilled in business.

Towns.—CAIRO, the capital of Egypt, is one of the largest and most interesting cities in the world. It is about ten miles in circuit, and is remarkable for the great number of gardens it contains, and for the beautiful plantations and groves around it. The houses are built of stone and brick, with terraces and flat roofs, and the windows are often glazed with colored glass. There are 80 public baths, 300 magnificent mosques adorned with lofty minarets, 2 Greek, 12 Coptic, 1 Arminian church, and 36 synagogues ; also numerous manufactories of silk, camblet, tapestry, gunpowder, leather, linen, cotton, &c. It contains likewise a Mahomedan high school, a printing office, and a library of about 25,000 volumes. It is the centre of trade between Europe, Asia and the interior of Africa, and the resort of travellers from various parts of the world. Although a large city, yet its present appearance can scarcely be compared with the idea of its ancient glory, when it was the metropolis of Africa, the second capital of the east, the scene of the wonders of Arabian romance, and of the real incidents of Arabian history, scarcely more credible than those of oriental fiction.

Alexandria was built by Alexander the Great, 331 years B. C., and for a long time was the seat of learning, commerce, and magnificence, and remarkable for its palaces and temples, and for its large library, consisting of 700,000 manuscript volumes. It is *now* greatly decayed, and abounds in the ruins of its ancient grandeur ; among which are Pompey's Pillar, 75 feet high, two obelisks, and the catacombs. In the height of its splendor, it is said to have contained 600,000 inhabitants.

Antiquities.—Egypt abounds in the most stupendous monuments of antiquity, as pyramids, temples, obelisks, catacombs, &c. The pyramids have been the wonder of all ages of the world. The largest of them is that of Cheops, near Cairo. It is 500 feet high, and covers more than 11 acres. When, by whom, and for what purpose they were erected, is entirely unknown. Near one of the pyramids, is the celebrated Sphynx, a statue of a huge monster, cut out of the solid rock. It has the face of a virgin, the body of a lion, and is 125 feet in length.

In what direction from *us* is Egypt? What two cities on the Mediterranean? B. A. What city at the mouth of the Nile? E. What four cities on the Nile? C. S. T. S. What town in the S. W. part? S. What town on the gulf of Suez? S. What town on the Red Sea? C.

BARBARY STATES.

Which are the Barbary States? M. A. T. T. B.

The northern part of Africa, now included in the Barbary States, once contained several kingdoms and states, eminent for power, wealth, and commerce. But these have been repeatedly conquered, and scarcely exhibit a vestige of their former greatness.

The inhabitants of the Barbary States are divided into four classes, viz. Moors, Jews, Arabs and Berbers. The former are ignorant, rapacious and cruel, and have long been noted for their piracies and political debasement.

Between the Atlas mountains and the Mediterranean, the climate is mild and pleasant, and the soil is fertile, but miserably cultivated.

The chief productions are *oil, wine, fruit, sugar, cotton*, and most kinds of *grain*.

Between the Atlas mountains and the Desert, the country produces little except dates, but these grow in such abundance, that it is called *Biledulgerid*, or *the land of dates*.

These states are distinguished for the number of noxious animals which infest the mountains and desert tracts; the most noted and ferocious among them are lions, panthers and hyenas.

Venomous serpents of an enormous size are also common. The

boa constrictor, or *serpent of the desert*, is often 80 feet long, and moves with such incredible swiftness that no animal can escape from it.

Among the great variety of insects in these states, the most formidable is the *locust*, which often comes from the desert in such immense swarms as to devour every species of vegetation.

BARCA.

How is Barca bounded? What is its capital?

Barca, the ancient Lybia, is nominally dependent on Tripoli, though it seems to be the property of no government or people. The interior is mostly a desert, and once contained the temple of Jupiter Ammon.

The coast of Barca, once famed for its threefold crops, is still fertile, but badly cultivated.

The sovereignty is divided between two Beys, one of whom resides at Derne; the other at Bengazi.

DERNE is situated about half a mile from the Mediterranean. It was taken in 1805, by Gen. Eaton, a native of Brimfield, Mass.*

In what direction from *us* is Barca? What gulf west of Barca? *a*. What town on the gulf of Sidra? *b*. In what part is Derne? What two towns near the southern boundary of Barca? *a. s.* What division of Europe opposite to Barca? *c*. What large island north of Barca? *c*. What Desert south of Barca? *L*.

TRIPOLI.

How is Tripoli bounded? What is its capital?

Tripoli, the ancient Tripolis, is the most civilized, but the weakest of the Barbary States, and abounds in the remains of antiquity.

TRIPOLI, the capital, is a regular, well built and fortified city, and has an excellent harbor.

* See Olney's History of the United States, page 198.

In what direction from *us* is Tripoli? What two gulfs north of Tripoli? c. s. What town N. W. of Tripoli? s. What kingdom south of Tripoli? r.

TUNIS.

How is Tunis bounded? Its capital?

Tunis, the ancient *Africa Propria*, and the seat of the Carthaginian power, is one of the most powerful states of Barbary.

TUNIS, the capital, is situated about six miles from the gulf of Tunis, and is one of the first cities in Africa. It has considerable trade, and valuable manufactures.

About 12 miles N. E. of Tunis are the ruins of ancient Carthage, which was founded by Dido, 869 years before Christ. For a long time, Carthage was the emporium of northern Africa, the empress of the sea, and the formidable rival of Rome. It was destroyed by the Romans under Scipio Africanus, at the close of the third *Punic* war, 146 years B. C.

In what direction from *us* is Tunis? What gulf in the eastern part of Tunis? c. What cape north of Tunis? s. What large island between Tunis and the southern part of Italy? s. What small island east of Tunis? x. What separates Tunis from Fezzan? What ancient city once stood near the northern part? c. When and by whom was Carthage founded? By whom was it destroyed?

ALGIERS.

How is Algiers bounded? What is its capital?

Algiers, the ancient Numidia, is the most fertile and healthy of the Barbary states, and is noted for the valuable coral fishery on its coast.

Algiers,* the capital, is a large and strongly fortified town. It has a good harbor, and considerable commerce.

Constantina is a large city of the interior, and occupies the site of ancient Cirta. It is 160 miles east of Algiers, and is said to contain many elegant buildings.

* During the year 1830, the French took Algiers and still hold it in their possession.

In what direction from *us* is Algiers? What mountains in Algiers? A. What two towns on the Mediterranean? A. O. What town in the interior? C. What gulf on the coast of Guinea directly south of Algiers? B. In what direction from Algiers is Liberia? Darfur? The colony of Sierra Leone? Fezzan? Where was Cirta situated the ancient capital of Numidia?

MOROCCO.

How is Morocco bounded? What is its capital?

The empire of Morocco, the ancient Mauritania, embraces the kingdom of *Fez, Morocco, Tafilet, and Tarudant*, and is noted for the fertility of its soil, and its abundance of *fruits, grain, olives, &c.*

MOROCCO, the capital, is situated in the midst of a fertile plain, about 120 miles from the Atlantic. It is surrounded by a high wall, and contains many splendid temples and mosques, but is much decayed.

Fez, the capital of the ancient kingdom of Fez, is the most splendid city in the Barbary States. It is situated in a beautiful valley, and was once famous for its institutions of learning.

In what direction from *us* is Morocco? What three cities in the southern part? T. T. N. What four cities on the Atlantic? N. S. C. M. S. What town on the straits of Gibraltar? T. What town in the northern part, in the interior? N. What mountains in Morocco? A. What straits between Morocco and Spain? What English fortress on the straits of Gibraltar? G. What islands west of Morocco? M. P. S. What cluster of islands S. W. of Morocco? C. Which is the most celebrated among them? Teneriffe.

SENEGAMBIA.

Senegambia embraces a number of small populous states, and in general, is a well watered and fertile country. The climate is intensely warm, and at most seasons of the year, extremely unhealthy to foreigners.

Respecting the various tribes of *Negroes*, that inhabit this coast, little is known with certainty. The most numerous tribes are the *Foulahs, Jalloops, Felops* and *Mandingoes*. They are ignorant, superstitious and indolent, and are acquainted with but few of the

arts of civilized life ; but their natural dispositions are mild and benevolent.

The principal articles of export are *gum, gold, ivory* and **SLAVES**



African Animals.

Senegambia abounds in almost every species of wild animals. Elephants are extremely numerous, and furnish almost all the ivory of commerce. This region is much infested by venomous *insects*, disgusting *reptiles*, and clouds of *locusts*.

Teembo is the capital of Foota Jallo, and is represented as one of the largest cities in this part of Africa. The population is said to be 70,000.

[The Foulahs, or inhabitants of Foota Jallo, are scattered over a great part of Africa. The great body of the nation live about the sources of the Gambia and Rio Grande. Besides these, there are tribes of them south of Fezzan, and on the confines of Bornou ; likewise on the Niger and Senegal. They are said to be *mild, humane, polite, industrious* and *hospitable*.]

In what direction from *us* is Senegambia ? What three rivers in Senegambia ? *a. e. e.* What two capes on the coast ? *v. z.* What small island between cape Verde and cape Roxo, once the greatest military station of the French in Africa ? Goree isle. What cluster of islands west of Senegambia ? *c. v.* What town situated on an island at the mouth of the Senegal, the capital of all the French possessions in Africa ? *St. L.* What town near the Senegal ? *x.* What British settlement at the mouth of the Gambia ? *z.* What large town in the southern part, the capital of Foota Jallo ? *z.*

SIERRA LEONE.

The English settlement of Sierra Leone was formed in 1787, for the purpose of civilizing the Africans, and of facilitating the abolition of the slave trade. The colony contains about 17,000 inhabitants, composed chiefly of liberated negroes, taken from captured slave ships.

Here are about twenty missionaries, actively engaged in the benevolent employment of instructing the Africans in the elements of learning and religion, and in the arts of civilized life; and their labors thus far have been attended with encouraging success.

FREETOWN, the capital of Sierra Leone, is situated near the mouth of Sierra Leone river, and has an excellent harbor and about 5,000 inhabitants.

In what direction from *us* is Sierra Leone? Where is Sierra Leone? What island on the coast? *s*. What is the principal town in Sierra Leone? *r*.

LIBERIA.

In 1820 a settlement was commenced at the mouth of the river Mesurado, by the "American Colonization Society," by the name of Liberia.

The object of this settlement is to furnish a place for the colonization of the free Africans and emancipated slaves of the United States. Numbers have been transported thither, and the colony is *now in a prosperous condition.

In what direction from *us* is Liberia? Where is Liberia? What names have been given to the coast? *g*. and *i*. What two capes on the coast? *p*. *m*. What is the principal river? *m*. What is the chief town? *m*. In what direction from Liberia is Sierra Leone? St. Matthew's isle? Ascension? St. Helena?

GUINEA.

Guinea embraces a number of small kingdoms, the principal of which are Ashantee, Dahomey, Benin, and Biafra.

ASHANTEE is the most powerful, civilized, and commercial kingdom in the western part of Africa. The capital of *Ashantee* is *Coomassie*, which is said to contain 40,000 inhabitants.

DAHOMEY is a powerful and fertile kingdom, and is inhabited by a *savage*, ferocious and warlike people. The capital of Dahomey is *Abomey*, which is merely a large collection of huts.

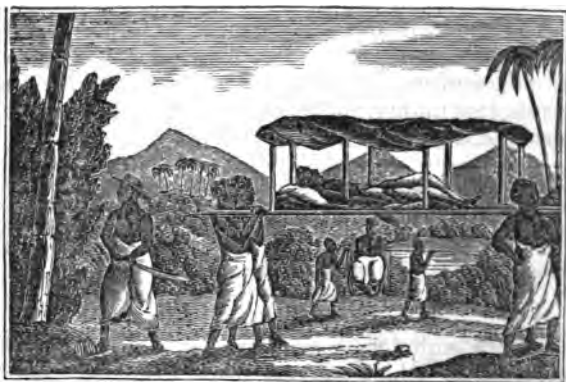
BENIN is scarcely known to Europeans, but it is represented as a fertile and well watered country, and said to be inhabited by an industrious and humane people. The capital is *Benin*.

BIAFRA borders on the gulf of Biafra, and is almost wholly unknown. Its capital is *Biafra*.

The coast of Guinea is divided into the Grain, the Ivory and Gold coast; each portion being named from its principal article of commerce. The coast of Guinea is extremely fertile, and thickly inhabited. The climate is hot, and in most parts unhealthy to foreigners.

In what direction from *us* is Guinea? What mountains between Guinea and Nigritia? *K*. What four rivers in Guinea? *M. L. F. G*. What cape on the coast? *3 P*. What two gulfs on the coast? *B. B*. What large gulf south of Guinea? *G*. What two towns on the coast? *C. C. P*. In what part is Ashantee? What is its capital? Benin? Biafra? Dahomey? What three islands on the coast of Guinea? *F. P. B. St. P*.

CONGO.



Method of carrying the Nobility.

The coast of Congo embraces Loango, Congo, Angola and Benguela.

It is an extensive, fertile and populous country. The natives are rude and barbarous, and extremely stupid.

It abounds in wild animals, venomous serpents, &c.

St. SALVADOR, the capital of the kingdom of Congo, is situated in the interior on the top of a high mountain. Its position is extolled as one of the most healthy in the world. The Portuguese have several settlements in Congo, for the purpose of carrying on the slave trade, the capital of which, and of all their settlements in this part of Africa, is Loando-St. Paulo. This city contains about 18,000 inhabitants, and has an extensive commerce, principally in slaves.

In what direction from *us* is Congo? Where is Loango? Angola? Benguela? What bay on the coast of Loango? St. c. What three towns in Loango? s. B.-L. and m. What two rivers has Congo? z. c. What cape on the coast of Congo? L. What mountains separate Congo from Ethiopia? c. What is the capital of Congo? St. s. What Portuguese settlement in the west part? L. St. P. What river separates Benguela from Ethiopia? c. What settlement on the Coanza? P.-N. What two towns in Benguela? N.-B. and St. P. How do they carry the nobility in Congo? [See the cut.]

CIMBEBAS.

The country between Congo and South Africa has been called Cimbebas, from the name of a powerful tribe which is said to inhabit the interior. The inhabitants are said to be extremely ignorant and filthy, and have no other clothing than the skins of animals.

In what direction from *us* is Cimbebas? What two capes on the coast? F. s. What point in the N. W. part? What bay on the coast? w. How do you like the water in Cimbebas? Why? What tribe of Hottentots in the south part? d. What season is it in Cimbebas *now*? In what direction from *us* is Cimbebas? Should you like to dress as the inhabitants of Cimbebas do?

South Africa.

South Africa embraces the country south of the tropic of Capricorn, and is divided into the Cape Colony, Caffraria and the country of the Hottentots.

The HOTTENTOTS are divided into various tribes; the principal of which are the *Damaras* and *Nemaquas* tribes in the N. W. part; the *Koranas* in the southern part, and the *Boorolongs* in the northern

part. The Hottentots, generally speaking, are an ignorant, stupid, and filthy people. They build their houses in a circular form, with the doors opening towards the centre, and thus form a kind of court, into which their cattle are collected at night to preserve them from the beasts of prey.



Hottentot Village.

CAFFRARIA is little known. The inhabitants generally resemble the other tribes of Hottentots in their manners, but are more hardy and enterprising.

In what direction from *us* is South Africa? What are the rivers of South Africa? *x. o. z. y.* What large Hottentot town in the interior, usually considered the capital of South Africa? *l.* What tribe of Hottentots in the N. W. part? *d.* What tribe in the west part? *n.* What tribe in the southern part? *k.* What tribe in the northern part? *b.* What is the principal town among the Boorolongs? *x.* What town between Kur-ree-cha'-nee and Lattakoo'? What town on the Yellow River? *c.* What mountains in South Africa? *s.* What port or harbor on the coast of Caffraria? What river between Caffraria and Cape Colony? *x.*

THE CAPE COLONY.

The Cape of Good Hope was discovered in 1497 by the Portuguese. It was afterwards colonized by the Dutch; but in 1806 it was taken by the English, in whose power it still remains. It is the most important possession of the English in Africa, being the place where the East India fleets stop for refreshment.

The climate is temperate and salubrious, and the soil is generally fertile.

The chief articles of export are *wine* and *brandy*.

CAPE TOWN is regularly and handsomely built, and is an important and commercial town. Population, 18,000. [Cape Town was founded in 1652, and was peopled by exiles from Holland.—*M. Malte Brun.*]

In what direction from *us* is the Cape Colony? What two rivers in the Cape Colony? *z. k.* What three bays in the Cape Colony? *n. a. t.* What two capes? What mountains in the northern part of Cape Colony and Caffraria? *A.* The Snow Mountains. What town in the *S. W.* part? What town among the Snow Mountains, in the north part? *s. e.* What missionary station in the *S. E.* part? *B.* What gulf in Africa north of the cape of Good Hope? *s.*

Eastern Africa.

The eastern coast of Africa extending from Caffraria to Abyssinia, contains a number of separate kingdoms, of which we have but little knowledge.

MONOMOTAPA is said to be a populous and fertile country, and to contain mines of gold of considerable value. At Sofala, the Portuguese have a settlement.

MOZAMBIQUE embraces a large extent of country, and is nominally subject to the Portuguese.

The city of Mozambique is the capital of all the Portuguese possessions in this part of Africa. Population, 3,000.

ZANGUEBAR is said to be an unhealthy country, and to abound in wild animals, serpents, crocodiles, &c.

MELINDA is the capital of a kingdom of the same name, which is partially dependent on the Portuguese.

AJAN is a Mahometan state, and has a considerable trade in gold, ivory, and ambergris. Many parts of it are barren and desolate.

ADEL is a fertile and populous kingdom, and is noted for its frankincense and myrrh.

In what direction from *us* is Eastern Africa? How is the eastern coast of Africa divided? *m. n. z. a. a.* What river between Monomotapa and Mozambique? *z.* What town on a branch of the Zimbezi? *z.* What Portuguese settlement on the channel of Mozambique? *s.* What are the two chief divisions of Monomotapa? *s.* and *s.* What mountain in Monomotapa? *A.* Mount Fura. What mountains in Mozambique? *L.* What lake between Mozambique and Ethiopia? *m.* What tribe in the western part? *B.* What cape

on the coast? *D.* What Portuguese settlement on the channel of Mozambique? *M.* What three towns on the coast of Zanguebar? *M. M. Q.* What three islands near the coast? *D. P. Z.* What three capes on the coast of Ajan? *G. B. B.* What mountains extend into Adel and Ajan? *M.* What island near cape Guardafui? *S.* What town in the northern part of Adel, distinguished for its frankincense, gum-ar-a-bic and myrrh? *B.*

ABYSSINIA.

Abyssinia, the ancient Ethiopia, is a mountainous country, and has a fine, healthy climate, and a rich, fertile soil.

The principal productions are *wheat*, and a small grain called *teff*, *balsam*, *myrrh*, &c.

Among the other vegetable productions is the *papyrus*, so celebrated among the ancients, as the original material of paper.

Inhabitants.—The Abyssinians are in the lowest state of civilization; and in many of their customs, they are extremely barbarous and brutal. They scarcely regard human life, and are fond of eating raw flesh, cut from the living animal, in its warm, palpitating state. They profess Christianity, but it is more in name than in reality.

GONDAR is situated on a hill, surrounded by a deep valley. It has a mean appearance, its houses being built of clay, and only of one story. Population, 50,000.

Axum, the former capital, is distinguished for its extensive ruins.

In what direction from *us* is Abyssinia? What lake in Abyssinia? *D.* What mountains south of Abyssinia? *M.* What celebrated river rises in the mountains of the Moon? *N.* What straits lead into the Red Sea? *B.* What town near the straits of Babelmandel? *Z.* What town in the north part, on a branch of the Nile? *A.* How is Gondar situated? In what direction from Abyssinia is Liberia?

NUBIA.

Nubia contains several kingdoms; the two principal of which are Sennaar and Dongola.

Nubia is mostly an extensive tract of sandy and rocky deserts, and but thinly inhabited.

The wind here moves the sand like the waves of the sea; and so rapidly that nothing can escape it. The *Simoon*, or *poisonous blast*

from the desert blows here, which if received into the lungs, causes instant death.

The climate is extremely warm, but generally dry and healthy. The soil on the banks of the Nile is rich and fertile.

The principal articles of commerce are *gold dust*, *ivory* and *slaves*.

Nubia is celebrated for its magnificent remains of antiquity.

The most noted among them is the temple of Ipstambul, which is cut out of a solid rock, and is 86 feet high, and 117 wide. It is in a complete state of preservation, although it is supposed to have been built more than 2,000 years.

Inhabitants.—The inhabitants consist of numerous tribes of Arabs, most of whom are noted for their treachery, intemperance and ferocity.

Towns.—DONGOLA, the capital of the kingdom of Dongola, is situated on the Nile, 280 miles south of Syene. It is a meanly built town, and is in a state of decay. [It is now in the possession of the Mamelukes, who have been expelled from Egypt.]

SENNAAR, the capital of the kingdom of Sennaar, is situated on a branch of the Nile. It is a large, populous, and meanly built town, and has considerable commerce.

In what direction from *us* is Nubia? What celebrated river passes through Nubia? What six towns on the Nile? s. g. s. d. m. l. What two ports on the Red Sea? m. s. What town between the Red Sea and Nile? c. What town west of the Nile? s. What town west of Dongola near the boundary of Nubia? t. Which are the two principal kingdoms of Nubia? In what part is Dongola? What is its capital? d. In what part is Sennaar? What is its capital? s. What division in Asia lies opposite to Nubia? What kingdom lies S. W. of Nubia?

Central Africa.

The interior of Africa is very little known. It is divided by the Jibbel Kumra, or Mountains of the Moon, into Soudan, or Nigritia, on the north, and Ethiopia on the south.

ETHIOPIA has never been visited by white men, and consequently its geography is *entirely unknown*.

SOUDAN, or NIGRITIA, is divided into a great number of small king-

doms, most of which have never been explored by Europeans. Those parts which have been explored are well watered and extremely fertile, producing all the luxuries of the vegetable kingdom, and abound in almost every species of wild animals.



The Lion.

The inhabitants consist of Negroes, who are said to be more mild and humane than those living on the coast.

The *Niger* is the principal river in Soudan, or Nigritia; and has excited an extraordinary degree of interest, by reason of the various and contradictory accounts, relative to its source and termination. But it is now ascertained that it empties into the gulf of Guinea. In 1830, Richard and John Lander, two enterprising English travellers, set out for the purpose of tracing the course of the river to its mouth. They reached it a short distance from Sackatoo, and then descended it to its termination in the gulf of Guinea. Its course is through a rich and populous country, the inhabitants of which have made considerable progression in civilization.

The principal kingdoms of Nigritia, known to Europeans, are *Darfur*, *Bergoo*, *Begharmi*, *Bornou*, *Houssa*, *Yaoor*, *Tombuctoo*, *Bambarra*, *Tauricks*, *Asben*, *Kuar*, and *Fezzan*.

DARFUR is a considerable kingdom, and is inhabited by an industrious people, who are principally engaged in agriculture. *Cobbe* is the capital, and contains about 6,000 inhabitants.

BERGO is an extensive kingdom, but little known. *Wara* is its capital.

BEGHARMI is a small kingdom dependent on Bornou. The capital is *Babalia*.

BORNOU embraces an extensive, fertile tract, and is the most power-

ful and flourishing kingdom in Nigritia. Kouka is the capital, and is said to be a large city.

HOUSSA is a large kingdom, and is inhabited by an intelligent people, who have considerable skill in agriculture and manufactures. The chief town and great emporium of the kingdom of Houssa, is Kano, which is said to contain 40,000 inhabitants.

*The Felatah empire is of modern date. It is represented as a powerful empire, and is said to hold several kingdoms in subjection. The capital is Sackatoo. It was built in 1805, and is said to be a large, populous town.

YAOOR is subject to the Felatah empire.

TOMBUCTOO is a large, fertile, and powerful kingdom, and one of the most civilized in Nigritia. Tombuctoo, the capital of the kingdom, is situated about 10 miles from the Niger. It is the centre of commerce for Nigritia, and is the resort of caravans from Egypt, Nubia, Barbary and Abyssinia. Population supposed to be 200,000.

BAMBARRA is a large, fertile, and powerful kingdom. Sego, the capital, is situated on both sides of the Niger, and contains about 30,000 inhabitants.

The TAURICKS are a barbarous and powerful race, who wander over all the adjoining countries, and subsist mostly by plunder.

ASBEN is a powerful kingdom, lying north of Bornou. The capital is Aghadem, and is a place of extensive trade.

KUAR is an extensive tract, lying west of Dongola, consisting mostly of deserts, interspersed with a few fertile spots like islands. It is inhabited by the Tibboos, who are a wandering tribe, and possess all the regions south and S. E. of Fezzan.

FEZZAN is a large kingdom tributary to Tripoli. It consists of an extensive oasis, or fertile spot, in the northern part of the Desert, surrounded on all sides, except the west, by mountains. It is chiefly important as the centre of trade for the caravans which traverse the interior. The chief productions are *dates*. The capital is Mourzouk, and is the grand depot for the commerce carried on between the Barbary States and central Africa.

In what direction from *as* is Nigritia? What lake in Nigritia? *t*. What city situated on lake Tchad? What is the principal river? *n*. What two ranges of mountains south of Nigritia? *x. m*. What bounds Nigritia on the north? What kingdom in Nigritia? What are their capitals? What other towns? What kingdom in the eastern part of Nigritia? *d*. What branch of the Nile rises in Darfur? Where is Fezzan? What is its capital? *m*. What two other towns? *g. tr*. In what direction from Fezzan is Kuar? The Tibboos? The Tauricks? What four towns south of Tegherhy? *B. A. S. H*. What three resting places in the Desert south of Fezzan? *T. T. E. W*.

* Clapperton's Travels in Africa.

† Te-gé-re.

African Islands.

THE AZORES, or WESTERN ISLANDS, are nine in number, and belong to Portugal. They have a fine climate and fertile soil, producing *wheat, maize, barley, vines, oranges, &c.* They are subject to earthquakes, by which they have often been laid waste. Angra, on the island of Terceira, is the capital. Population, 160,000.

THE MADEIRA ISLANDS consist of Madeira, Porto Santo, and the Desert Isles. Madeira, the principal island, is distinguished for its *wines*, which are exported to various parts of the world. The capital is Funchal. These islands belong to Portugal. Population, 90,000.

THE CANARY ISLANDS are thirteen in number, and belong to Spain. They are distinguished for their *wines, fruits, and Canary birds.* Teneriffe is celebrated for its lofty peak, which rises about two and a half miles above the level of the sea. Population, 160,000.

THE CAPE VERD ISLANDS are fourteen in number, and belong to Portugal. They have an unhealthy climate, and generally a barren, rocky soil. The principal exports of these islands are *salt and goat skins.* Population, 40,000.

ST. HELENA is a lofty and rocky island, and belongs to the English. There is only one harbor, which is of difficult access and easy defence. This island is remarkable for the imprisonment and death of Napoleon Bonaparte. Population, 3,000.



Crocodile seizing an Ox.

MADAGASCAR is one of the largest islands on the globe. It has a healthy climate and a fertile soil, and is said to be rich in minerals. The crocodile grows to a great size in this island, and infests all the principal rivers, and has frequently been known to carry away an ox. It is inhabited by a number of petty tribes of different races—Ara

bians, Malays and Africans—most of whom are in a savage state, and but little acquainted with the arts of civilized life.

The chief productions are *rice, sugar cane, cocoa nut, banana*, and the common productions of tropical climates. Population, 4,000,000.

MAURITIUS, or ISLE OF FRANCE, belongs to the English. It is a rugged and mountainous island, producing tropical *fruits*; likewise *ebony*, and other valuable kinds of wood. Population, 70,000.

Bourbon belongs to France. It is composed of two mountains; one of which is a volcano, and is in constant action, and serves as a light-house to mariners. Population, 80,000.

Which are the two principal islands among the Azores? *r.* and *St. m.* Which are the four principal islands among the Canaries? *t. r. f. c.* Which are the six principal islands among the Cape Verd isles? *St. A. St. N. St. J. B. B. S.* Which is the most northern group of the African islands? Which is the most eastern island? Which is the most western group? Which is the largest? What four capes has Madagascar? What five towns has it? *p. b. t. t.* and *p. d.* What two islands east of Madagascar? To whom do they belong? What small island near Cape Verd, distinguished for being the principal French military station on the western coast of Africa? *a.*

Map of the World.*

Where are the Galapagos? Marquesas? Drummond's? Byron's? Duke of York's? Queen Charlotte's? Lord Howe's isle?

Where is Hood's isle? Dog? Society isles? Otaheite? Navigator's isle? Vavao? Friendly isles? Feejee isles? Solitary isle? Santa Cruz? New Hebrides?

Where is St. Felix? St. Ambrose? Easter isle? Ducies? Pitcairn's? Tongataboo? Sunday isle? New Caledonia? Norfolk isle?

Where is Juan Fernandez? Chiloe? Chatham? Bounty? New Zealand?

Where is Sandwich Land? South Orkney isles? South Shetland?

Where is Calvert's isle? Chatham's? Mulgrave's? Christmas?

Where is St. Bartholomew's? Brown's isles? Pescadores? Gaspar Rico? Dawson's isle? St. Pierre? Owyhee? Re-vil-la-gi-gé-do isles?

* In learning these islands, I have thought it more easy for the pupil to ask them in general questions; as, What islands lie between the equator and 10° S. latitude? Between 10° and 20° S. latitude, &c. and have arranged them accordingly.

Where are the Sandwich islands ?

Where are the Aleutian, or Fox islands ? Bhering's isle ?

Where is Tristan d'Acunha ? Amsterdam ? St. Paul's ?

Where is Gough's isle ? Marseveen ? Dema ? Prince Edward's ?

Marion and Crozer's isles ? Kergeulen's isle ?

Where is Nova Zembla ? Where is Spitzbergen ?

Which is the most southern land yet discovered ?

Which is the most northern island yet discovered ?

Which is the largest island on the globe ? *A.* or *N.-E.*

Which is the next largest island ? *B.*

Which is the next largest island ? *C.*

What two islands due south of Nova Zembla ?

What two islands south of Ireland ? *St. M.* and *St. K.*

PART THIRD.

LATITUDES AND LONGITUDES.

N. B.—In answering the following questions, if the division does not lie *wholly* between the degrees mentioned in the question, the scholar will specify what part is included, whether the *northern*, *middle* or *southern* part.

DIVISIONS.

What divisions lie between the equator and 10° N. lat. ?

What divisions between 10° and 20° N. lat. ?

What divisions between 20° and 30° N. lat. ?

What divisions between 30° and 40° N. lat. ?

What divisions between 40° and 50° N. lat. ?

What divisions between 50° and 60° N. lat. ?

What divisions between the equator and 10° S. lat. ?

What divisions between 10° and 20° S. lat. ?

What divisions between 20° and 30° S. lat. ?

CAPITALS.

What capitals between the equator and 10° N. lat. ?

What capitals between 10° and 20° N. lat. ?

What capitals between 20° and 30° N. lat. ?

What capitals between 30° and 40° N. lat. ?

What capitals between 40° and 50° N. lat. ?

What capitals between 50° and 60° N. lat. ?

What capitals between the equator and 10° S. lat. ?

What capitals between 10° and 20° S. lat. ?

What capitals between 20° and 30° S. lat. ?

ISLANDS.

- What islands between the equator and 10° N. lat. ?
 What islands between 10° and 20° N. lat. ?
 What islands between 20° and 30° N. lat. ?
 What islands between 30° and 40° N. lat. ?
 What islands between 40° and 50° N. lat. ?
 What islands between 50° and 60° N. lat. ?
 What islands between 60° and 70° N. lat. ?
 What islands between the equator and 10° S. lat. ?
 What islands between 10° and 20° S. lat. ?
 What islands between 20° and 30° S. lat. ?
 What islands between 30° and 40° S. lat. ?

DIVISIONS.

- What divisions are intersected by the equator ?
 What divisions are intersected by the Tropic of Cancer ?
 What divisions are intersected by the Tropic of Capricorn ?
 What divisions are intersected by the 10° N. lat. ?
 What divisions are intersected by the 20° N. lat. ?
 What divisions are intersected by the 30° N. lat. ?
 What divisions are intersected by the 40° N. lat. ?
 What divisions are intersected by the 50° N. lat. ?
 What divisions are intersected by the 60° N. lat. ?
 What divisions are intersected by the 10° S. lat. ?
 What divisions are intersected by the 20° S. lat. ?
 What divisions are intersected by the 30° S. lat. ?

ISLANDS.

- Through what islands does the equator pass ?
 Through what islands does the Tropic of Cancer pass ?
 Through what islands does the Tropic of Capricorn pass ?

DIVISIONS.

- What divisions are intersected by 10° E. longitude ?
 What divisions are intersected by 20° ? 30° ? 40° ? 50° E.
 longitude ?
 What divisions are intersected by 60° ? 70° ? 80° E. long.
 What divisions are intersected by 40° W. longitude ?
 What divisions are intersected by 50° ? 60° W. longitude ?
 What divisions are intersected by 70° ? 80° W. longitude ?

CITIES.

- What city in 41° N. latitude, and 29° E. longitude ?
 What city in 55° N. latitude, and 12° E. longitude ?
 What city in 49° N. latitude, and 2° E. longitude ?
 What city in 40° N. latitude, and 75° W. longitude ?

What city in 40° N. latitude, and 116° E. longitude?
 What city in 30° N. latitude, and 90° W. longitude?
 What city in $40\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N. latitude, and 74° W. longitude?
 What city in $42\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N. latitude, and $70\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ W. longitude?
 What city in 39° N. latitude, and 78° W. longitude?
 What city in $34\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ S. latitude, and $58\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ W. longitude?
 What city in 12° S. latitude, and 76° W. longitude?
 What city in 60° N. latitude, and 30° E. longitude?
 What city in $22\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N. latitude, and $88\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ E. longitude?
 What city in 23° S. latitude, and 43° W. longitude?
 What city in 47° N. latitude, and 70° W. longitude?
 What city in $19\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N. latitude, and 100° W. longitude?
 What cape in 34° S. latitude, and 18° E. longitude?
 What cape in 56° S. latitude, and 67° W. longitude?
 What cape in 8° N. latitude, and 78° E. longitude?
 What cape in $36\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N. latitude, and 22° E. longitude?
 What cape in $59\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N. latitude, and 43° W. longitude?
 What island in 16° S. latitude, and 6° W. longitude?

QUESTIONS ON THE CHART.

Which is the largest Political Division on the globe? How many square miles does the Russian empire embrace? How many square miles in Russia in Europe? What is the population of Russia in Europe? Population of Siberia? How much larger is the Russian empire than the United States? Which is the second largest Political Division? How many square miles does the Chinese empire embrace? How much larger is the Chinese empire than the United States? How many square miles do the United States embrace? What is the population of the United States? What other Division of the same extent as the United States? What is the population of Brazil?

Note.—The teacher can ask similar questions respecting the other political divisions.

QUESTIONS ON THE DIFFERENT MAPS.

CITIES.

Which is the most populous city on the globe? p. What is the population of Peking? What city is next in population? n. Which is the third? l. Which are the two next? c. and j. Which is the next? p. Which is the seventh? c. Which is next to Calcutta? b. Mention the three next. c. s. and m. What is the population of Miaco? Mention the next. k. Which are the seven next? St. p. m. n. c. h. m. and f.

Note.—The teacher can extend this lesson so as to embrace all the principal cities.

RIVERS.

Which is the longest river on the globe? **A.** Which is the next longest? **M.** Which is the third? **M.** Which are the fourteen next? **CHALK MANVY PROP.** Which are the two next? **N.** and **G.** Which are the nine next longest rivers? **SOME CRUST.** Which are the two next? **I.** and **S.** Which are the seven next longest rivers? **WAIN KIF.**

Civil Geography.

There are five grand varieties of the human species, viz.: The European race,—the Asiatic or Mongolian race,—the Malay race,—the African race,—and the American race; but they imperceptibly approach and are lost in each other.

1. The *European race* has regular features and fair complexions, and includes the Europeans and their descendants in America, Turks, Tartars, Arabians, Persians, Hindoos, Abyssinians, Egyptians and Moors.

2. The *Asiatic or Mongolian race* has a brown, or olive complexion, having flat foreheads, small eyes, coarse, straight black hair, and wide mouths. The race includes the Chinese, Japanese, Mongolians, Siberian tribes, Nova Zem-blans, Laplanders, Greenlanders and Esquimaux Indians.

3. The *Malay race* has a dark brown complexion, with large features, strong hair, broad nostrils, and great mouths. This race includes the inhabitants of Malacca, of the Asiatic islands, of Australasia, and of Polynesia.

4. The *African race* has a jet black complexion, woolly hair, flat noses, prominent chins, and thick lips. This race includes the Negroes of Africa.

5. The *American race* has a copper color, coarse straight black hair, high cheek bones, sunken eyes, and stout masculine limbs. This race includes all the Indians dispersed over the American continent, except the Esquimaux.

Notwithstanding the numerous varieties in the human species, the Scriptures inform us that they are the offspring of one common parent; that the delicate European and the swarthy Ethiopian are brothers descended from the same ancestor.

Climate, or the temperature of the air, is the principal cause of the different complexion, and the external form of the varieties of the human race, which, when extremely warm or cold, produces in process of time, a dark, and when temperate, a fair complexion. Difference of education, food, clothing, modes of life, and particular customs may be assigned as other causes.

To which race do you belong? Why?

STATE OF SOCIETY.

The different nations of the earth are divided according to their habits of life, and state of improvement, into **FOUR CLASSES**, viz.: *Savage, Half-civilized, Civilized, and Enlightened.*

In the *savage state*, men subsist principally by hunting, fishing, and the spontaneous productions of the earth. They possess but little knowledge of agriculture, or the mechanic arts. They live in huts formed of poles or stakes covered with bark or leaves, or plastered with clay. The most noted in this state of society are the North American Indians.

In the *half-civilized state*, men subsist by agriculture and pasturage, and understand many of the arts; but science, literature, and foreign commerce are almost unknown. They have established laws and religion, and some of their finer manufactures they have carried to a high degree of perfection. The most noted in this state of society, are the Chinese.

In the *civilized state*, men are acquainted with the arts and sciences, and derive their subsistence from agriculture, manufactures and commerce.

In the *enlightened state*, men have carried the arts and sciences to a high degree of perfection, and are distinguished for their industry, intelligence, ingenuity and enterprise. Among enlightened nations, the most noted are the people of the United States, the English, French, and Germans.

To which state of society do you belong? Why?

GOVERNMENTS.

Government is the system, or power, by which the laws of a country are made and executed.

There are three simple forms of Government, viz.: Monarchy, Aristocracy, and Republican.

There are two kinds of Monarchies; absolute and limited.

An absolute monarchy is a government in which the *will* of the monarch is the law; as in Turkey and Persia.

Questions on the Chart.—Under what form of government do we live? What is the government of the Russian empire? Of the Chinese empire? Of the Turkish empire? Of Persia? Afghanistan?

A limited monarchy is a government in which the power of the sovereign is limited by law; as in England.

Questions on the Chart.—Under what form of government is France? Spain? Austria? How many countries of Europe have limited monarchies?

An aristocracy is a government administered by a few men, usually styled the nobility.

A Republic is a free government, in which the people choose their own rulers; as in the United States.

Questions on the Chart.—Under what form of government is Mexico? Switzerland? What other countries have a republican government?

The government among savage nations is usually that of patriarchs or chiefs, who are elected to office on account of their bravery, wisdom, and experience. They are generally called Independent Chiefs; as among the North American Indians, Arabians, &c.

A Viceroy is the governor of a kingdom or country, who is appointed by a monarch, and who rules with regal authority.

Questions on the Chart.—Under what government is British America? Egypt?

RELIGIONS.

The four prevailing religions of the world are Christian, Mahometan, Jewish, and Pagan, or Heathen.

Questions on the Chart, exhibiting the progress of Christianity.—How many Christians are there on the globe? How many Jews? How many Mahometans? How many Pagans?

Christians are those who believe in Jesus Christ as the Saviour of mankind.

There are three great divisions of Christians, viz.: Roman Catholics, Greek Church, and Protestants.

The Roman Catholics are those who acknowledge the supremacy of the Pope.

The Greek Church, in its forms and ceremonies, resembles the Roman Catholic, but denies the supremacy of the Pope.

Protestants are those who disclaim the jurisdiction of the Pope, and take the Bible as the only foundation of Christian faith and worship.

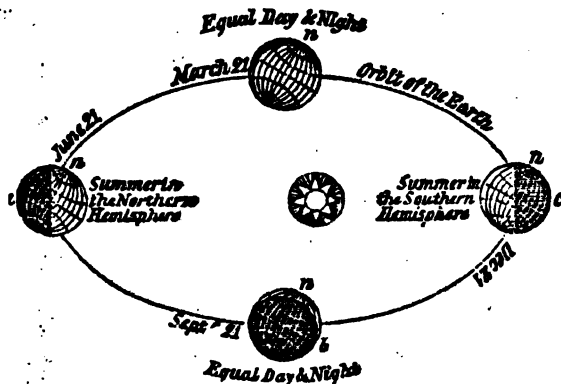
Protestants are divided into various sects; the principal of which are Episcopallians, Presbyterians, Congregationalists, Baptists, Methodists, and Friends. Mahometans are those who believe in Mahomet, an impostor of Arabia, who flourished 600 years after Christ.

The Jews are those who believe in the Old Testament and reject the New, and expect a Saviour yet to come.

Pagans, or Heathen, are those who believe in false gods, and worship idols, beasts, reptiles, &c.

PART FOURTH.

Introduction to Astronomy.



THE SEASONS.

Astronomy is the science which teaches the motions and the magnitudes of the heavenly bodies.

The Solar System consists of the sun, planets, asteroids and comets.

It is called the *Solar System*, because the sun is supposed to be placed in the centre, having all the planets revolving round it, at different distances and in different periods of time.

The Sun is an immense spherical body, placed in the centre of the system, and gives light and heat to the planets, moons, asteroids and comets. It revolves on its axis once in 25 days and 10 hours.

This revolution is determined from the motion of the spots on its surface.

A planet is an opaque body which appears to us like a star, and shines only by reflecting the light of the sun.

There are two kinds of planets, viz.: *primary* and *secondary*, to which may be added the *asteroids*. The primary planets are those which revolve round the sun and regard him only as their centre. The secondary planets, called also *moons*, or *satellites*, are smaller planets, which revolve round the primaries, and serve to give them light.

There are seven primary planets: 1. Mercury; 2. Venus; 3. Earth; 4. Mars; 5. Jupiter; 6. Saturn; 7. Herschel.

There are eighteen secondary planets. The earth has 1; Jupiter 4; Saturn 7; Herschel 6.

The asteroids are four very small planets, situated between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter, called Ceres, Pallas, Juno and Vesta.

SUN AND PLANETS.

	Diameter in miles.	Day, or revolution on the axis. D. H. M.	Year or revolution round the sun. Y. D. H. M.	Distance from the Sun in miles.	Bulk, the Earth being 1
Sun	883246	25 10 0			1380000
Mercury	3224	unknown	0 87 23 14	36000000	$\frac{1}{8}$
Venus	7687	0 23 22	0 224 16 41	68000000	$\frac{1}{6}$
Earth	7928	0 23 56	1 00 0 00	96000000	1
Mars	4189	1 00 39	1 321 18 23	144000000	$\frac{1}{4}$
Jupiter	89170	0 9 56	11 315 14 39	491000000	1400
Saturn	79042	0 10 16	29 164 7 19	901000000	1000
Herschel	35112	unknown	83 294 8 39	1800000000	90

COMETS.*

Comets are large, solid, opaque or dark bodies, which revolve round the sun in very elliptical orbits.

The number of comets belonging to our system is supposed to be 540. The figures of comets are very different. Some of them emit luminous matter on all sides, resembling hair;* others have a long, luminous, transparent tail, projecting from that part which is opposite to the sun.

Their apparent magnitudes are also very different. Some appear no larger than the fixed stars; others as large as Venus; and others much larger.

The velocity of a comet is greater than that of a planet, and increases as it approaches the sun. That of 1680, when nearest the sun, moved with the amazing velocity of 880,000 miles an hour.

FIXED STARS.

The fixed stars are those luminous bodies which appear in the heavens, far beyond the planets, from which they are distinguished by their *twinkling*.

They are called *fixed stars*, because they always keep the same situation in relation to each other, and appear to have one proper motion of their own. The distances of the fixed stars from the earth, is almost inconceivable: light, which flies 164,000 miles in a second, would be more than three years in passing from one of them to the earth.

These stars being at such an immense distance, cannot receive their light from the sun as the planets, but must shine by their own light; and hence they are supposed to be suns to other systems, and to have worlds revolving round them, inhabited, perhaps, by intelligent and immortal beings.

The number of the fixed stars is unknown. With the naked eye we can see about 2,000, but by the help of telescopes many millions can be discovered.

* The word *comet*, is derived from *coma*, or cometa, a Greek word signifying hairy.

THE EARTH.

The Earth has two motions; one round its axis, the other round the sun. It revolves on its axis once in 24 hours, and causes continual succession of day and night, and an apparent motion of the heavenly bodies from east to west.

It completes its revolution round the sun once in a year, and occasions the difference in the length of the days and nights, and the agreeable variety of the seasons.

The earth is not a perfect sphere, but an oblate spheroid, elevated at the equator, and depressed at the poles; the equatorial diameter being 34 miles longer than the polar.

The earth is surrounded by a thin, invisible, elastic fluid, called *air*, which extends to a considerable height above it. The air, together with the clouds and vapors that float in it, is called the *atmosphere*. The height to which the atmosphere extends, has never been fully ascertained, but it is supposed to be about 45 miles.

THE MOON.

The Moon is an opaque, or dark body, like the earth, and shines entirely by light received from the sun. Its diameter is 2,180 miles, and its distance from the centre of the earth 240,000 miles. Its bulk to that of the earth is as 1 to 49.

The moon revolves round the earth, from change to change, in 29 days, 12 hours, 44 minutes.

The surface of the moon is greatly diversified with inequalities, which through a telescope have the appearance of hills and valleys.

When the moon is in conjunction, or in the same part of the heavens with the sun, it is called the *new moon*; when it is in opposition, or 180 degrees distant, it is called the *full moon*.

The moon revolves on its axis but once in its revolution round the earth, and consequently its day is a little longer than 29 1/2 of our days.

ECLIPSES.

An eclipse is a partial, or total privation of the light of the sun or moon.

An eclipse of the sun is caused by the interposition of the moon between the earth and the sun, and consequently must happen when the moon is in conjunction with the sun, or at the *new moon*.

An eclipse of the moon is caused by an interposition of the earth between the sun and moon, and therefore must happen at the full moon, or when the moon is 180 degrees distant from the sun.

The diameter of the sun and moon is supposed to be divided into 12 parts, called *digits*; and an eclipse is said to be so many digits, according to the number of those parts which are involved at the greatest darkness.

THE SEASONS.

The different seasons are occasioned by the axis of the earth, being inclined to the level of its orbit always in one direction, in its circuit round the sun; so that one end of the axis is directed *towards* the sun at one season of the year, and *from* the sun at another. This also occasions the variation of climate, and the different lengths of day and night.

From the 20th of March to the 22d of September, the north pole inclines to the sun, and it is *summer* in the *northern* hemisphere and *winter* in the *southern*; from the 22d of September to the 20th of March, the north pole declines from the sun, and it is *winter* in the *northern* hemisphere and *summer* in the *southern*.

In the same manner it will be seen that during one half of the year the north pole is continually illuminated by the sun, while the south pole is in darkness: and consequently the days in the *northern* hemisphere will be more than 12 hours long, and those in the *southern* hemisphere, less than 12 hours and

during the other half of the year, the south pole is constantly in the light, and the north pole in darkness, and consequently the days in the southern hemisphere will be more than 12 hours long and those in the northern less than 12 hours; thus causing the different lengths of day and night.

At the equator the days and nights are always equal, being 12 hours each; but as you proceed from the equator, they vary in length according to the latitude and season.

In latitude $16^{\circ} 44'$, the day is 13 hours long; in $41^{\circ} 24'$ it is 15 hours in length; in $61^{\circ} 18'$, it is 19 hours; in $66^{\circ} 32'$, it is 24 hours; in $67^{\circ} 18'$, the longest day is one month; in $69^{\circ} 33'$, it is two months; in $77^{\circ} 40'$, it is four months; and at the poles, six months.

[See the scale on the map of the world, representing the longest days and nights, also the zones and climates.]

Questions.—What is the length of the days and nights at the equator? What is the length of the longest day in $8^{\circ} 34'$? What is the length of the longest day in $16^{\circ} 44'$? In $24^{\circ} 12'$? In $30^{\circ} 48'$? In $36^{\circ} 31'$? In $41^{\circ} 24'$? In $45^{\circ} 31'$? In $49^{\circ} 2'$? In $54^{\circ} 30'$? What is the length of the longest day in $67^{\circ} 18'$? In $69^{\circ} 33'$? In $73^{\circ} 5'$? What is the length of the longest day at the poles? What is the length of the longest night? How many days and nights are there at the poles in a year?

CLIMATES.

Climate is a portion of the earth's surface contained between two small circles parallel to the equator, and of such a breadth that the longest day in the parallel nearest the equator is half an hour shorter than in the next more remote, in the torrid and temperate zones—and one month in the frigid zones.

All places in the same latitude, are in the same climate—but it must not be inferred from thence that they have the same atmospherical temperature, as this depends on various causes. Mountains, lakes, deserts, plains, &c have great effect on the atmosphere; as high mountains under the equator are covered with perpetual snow, and deserts are parched with constant heat.

Questions.—How many climates between the equator and each polar circle? A. 24. How many climates between each polar circle and its pole? A. 6. In what latitude does the first climate end? [See the scale on the Map of the World.] A. In $8^{\circ} 44'$. In what latitude does the second climate end? A. In about $16^{\circ} 1-20^{\circ}$. In what latitude does the third climate end? Fourth climate? Fifth? Sixth? Seventh? Eighth climate? &c. &c.

NOTE.—It will be seen that the climates are placed in regular order on the scale as far as $49^{\circ} 2'$, increasing in length half an hour as you proceed from the equator; after which they are not laid down regularly till you come to the polar circle. Here you will perceive by the scale that the days in each climate, instead of being only half an hour longer than in the one nearer the equator, are one month longer as you approach the pole.

WINDS.

Wind is air put in motion, occasioned chiefly by means of heat.

When any part of the air is heated by the sun or otherwise, it expands and ascends towards the higher parts of the atmosphere, and the neighboring air rushes in to supply its place; and there will therefore be a stream or current of air from all parts towards the region in which the heat predominates. This pressure of the air is what is called wind.

The velocity of wind is various. A gentle breeze moves about 4 miles an hour; a common brisk wind about 15 miles; a high wind 30; a storm 60; a violent hurricane 100 miles an hour.

There are three kinds of tropical winds, viz. : The *general trade winds* ; the *monsoons* ; the *land* and *sea breezes*.

1. The general trade winds blow from east to west, extending to nearly 30° of latitude on each side of the equator, nearly round the globe.

2. The monsoons are periodical winds, which prevail in the Indian Ocean, and blow six months in one direction, and during the other six months in an opposite direction. Their change at the vernal and autumnal equinox is accompanied with terrible storms of rain, lightning and thunder.

3. The land and sea breezes are periodical winds, which blow from the land during the night, and from the sea during the day.

Winds are affected by the countries over which they pass, being rendered pestilential by the heat of deserts, and the putrid exhalations of lakes and marshes.

In Africa and Arabia, a wind blows from the deserts called the *Samiel* or *Simoom*, which frequently produces instant death.

On the western coast of Africa is a similar wind, called *Harmattan*, producing a dryness and heat almost insupportable.

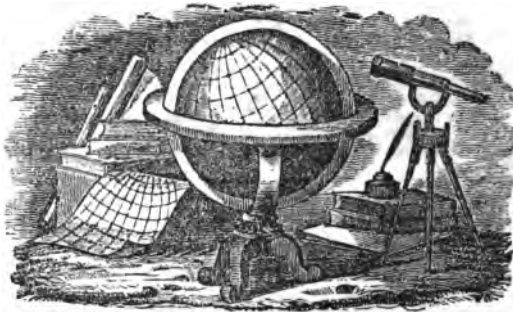
A warm, unpleasant wind from Africa, prevails in the southern part of Europe, called the *Sirocco*, producing great uneasiness and debility in the system.

TIDES.

The Tide is the regular elevation and depression of the ocean, which happens twice every 24 hours, caused by the attraction of the moon and of the sun.

At the *new* and *full* moon, the tides are greatest, and are called *spring tides* ; at the first and last quarters, they are least, and are called *neap tides* ; and the highest are near the time of the equinoxes.

Introduction to the use of the Globes.



A Globe is a round body, whose surface is every where equally remote from the centre.

There are two kinds of artificial globes, terrestrial and celestial.

A terrestrial globe is a correct representation of the earth, having the whole surface of the land and water upon it ; also the boundaries of states and kingdoms ; the situation of towns ; the courses of rivers and mountains, &c. delineated as they are upon the earth itself.

A celestial globe is an artificial representation of the heavens, on which the stars are laid down in their natural situations.

The axis of the earth is an imaginary line passing through the centre of it, upon which it is supposed to turn.

The poles of the earth are the two extremities of the axis, where it is supposed to cut the surface of the earth.

The brazen meridian is the circle in which the globe turns, and is divided into 360 equal parts, called degrees.

The quadrant of altitude is a thin slip of brass, divided into 90°, and is generally used to determine the distance of one place from another.

The hour circle is a small circle of brass, with an index or pointer fixed to the north pole.

The horizon is a great circle which separates the visible half of the heavens from the invisible. The horizon is represented on the artificial globe by the wooden circular frame on which the globe stands.

The ecliptic is the great circle which the earth describes annually in its revolution round the sun.

The ecliptic is divided into twelve equal parts of 30 degrees each, called *signs*.

The names and characters of the signs, with the months in which the sun enters them, are as follows:

<i>Northern Signs.</i>		<i>Southern Signs.</i>	
♈ Aries,	March 21st	♎ Libra,	Sept. 23d
♉ Taurus,	April 19th	♏ Scorpio,	Oct. 23d
♊ Gemini,	May 20th	♐ Sagittarius,	Nov. 22d
♋ Cancer,	June 21st	♑ Capricornus,	Dec. 21st
♌ Leo,	July 22d	♒ Aquarius,	Jan. 20th
♍ Virgo,	Aug. 22d	♓ Pisces,	Feb. 19th

The first six are called *Northern signs*, because they are north of the equator; the last six are called *Southern signs*, because they are south of the equator.

The zodiac is a broad belt in the heavens, 16° wide, in the middle of which is the ecliptic. It comprehends the orbits of all the planets.

QUESTIONS ON THE TERRESTRIAL GLOBE.*

Which Grand Division extends farthest north?

At what place does Asia extend farthest north?

At what place does Europe? North America?

Suppose the Arctic ocean was navigable, in what directions must you sail in going from North Cape, in a direct line, to Icy Cape?

What place is there on the globe, from which you can travel only in one direction?

What cape in Asia opposite to Baffin's Bay?

Towards what two points of the compass must you steer in sailing from Spitzbergen to Bhering's Strait, across the north pole?

Through what countries will you pass, and what waters will you cross in travelling on the Arctic Circle round the globe, commencing at Bhering's Strait?

Travel in the same manner, on the tropic of Cancer, beginning at cape St. Lucas.

The equator, commencing at Quito.

The tropic of Capricorn, beginning at Rio Janeiro.

The parallel of 40° N. lat. beginning at Philadelphia.

There are two routes from New York to Canton; describe each.

In what direction from Philadelphia is Cairo? Peking? London? Rio Janeiro? Calcutta? St. Petersburg? Rome? Morocco? Quito?

Does Asia or North America extend farther south? South America or New Holland?

One of the tropics passes near the centre of one of the continents; which tropic, and what continent?

* These questions can be answered from the two Maps of the World.

- What places are directly south of the north pole ?
 What waters will you cross in sailing from Boston to Okhotsk ? From Okhotsk to Buenos Ayres ? From Buenos Ayres to Cincinnati ?
 Describe the limits of each zone.
 Which grand division of the globe lies mostly in the torrid zone ?
 In what zone is icy cape ? Cape Horn ? Cape Comorin ? Cape Taymour ? Cape Verd ?
 Which way must a ship steer in sailing from New York to the cape of Good Hope ?
 From the cape of Good Hope to Batavia ?
 From Batavia to cape Horn ?
 From cape Horn to London ?
 From London to New York ?
 Is there more land or water on the surface of the earth ?
 How much of the earth's surface is covered with water ? A. About two thirds.
 What land do you find in the south frigid zone ?
 What places are north of 90° of S. latitude ?
 What sea in the western hemisphere, nearly in the latitude of the China sea ?
 What four seas are intersected by the parallel of 40° N. latitude ?
 Does Europe or Africa extend farther west ?
 What places have no latitude ?
 There are twenty-five seas on the globe ; what are their names and where are they ?
 Which grand division of the globe has the greatest number of seas in and around it ?
 On which side of the equator is there the most land ?
 What places are south of 90° of N. latitude ?
 There are two routes by which you can sail from Boston to Calcutta : mention each.
 Which is the most northern island on the globe ?
 Which is the most southern island ?
 What is longitude ?
 From which meridian is longitude generally reckoned ?
 What is the greatest longitude a place can have ?
 Why can a place have no more than 180° of longitude ?
 In what direction from Iceland is Cape Verd ?
 In what direction from the island of Hainan is Owyhee ?
 In what direction from Spitzbergen is the cape of Good Hope ?
 Is the eastern coast of Greenland, or the western coast of Africa farther east ?
 What places have noon, or mid-day, at the same time ?
 Suppose the southern ocean was navigable, towards what two points of the compass must a ship steer, in sailing from the island of New Zealand to St. Helena over the south pole ?
 Which extends farthest east, Asia or New Holland ?
 What are meridians ?
 How many meridians are drawn on the globe you are using ?
 What length of time does it require for the sun to pass from one meridian to another ?
 What is the difference of time between Quito and Rome ?
 Is the time at Rome faster or slower than at Quito ? Why ?
 What is the difference of time between London and Peking ?
 Supposing it 6 o'clock in the morning at Philadelphia, what time is it at London ? Rome ? Constantinople ?
 What is the difference of time between Cape Verd and the gulf of Darien ?
 When it is noon at Washington, what time is it at Irkutsk ? Rome ? Quito ? Bhering's Straits ? Bencoolen ?
 Does South America or Greenland extend farthest east ?
 Which extends farthest east, Europe or Africa ?
 Which is farthest north, lake Baikal or lake Winnipeg ?
 What places have the same seasons of the year ? A. Those in the same lat.
 When it is summer in the United States, what season is it in China ? Chili ? France ? New Holland ? Spain ? Patagonia ?

When it is winter at the cape of Good Hope, what season is it in England in this place? Why?

Why should not the ecliptic be drawn parallel to the equator?

Problems.

PROBLEM I.

To find the Latitude of any place.

RULE.—Bring the given place to the brass meridian, and the degree above the place is the latitude.

What is the latitude of Philadelphia? A. 40° N. Of Boston? A. 42° N. Cape Horn? London? Peking? Cape of Good Hope? Paris? Calcutta?

What places have no latitude?

PROBLEM II.

To find the Longitude of any place.

RULE.—Bring the place to the brass meridian, and the degree on the equator under the meridian is the longitude.

What is the longitude of Philadelphia? 75° W. Boston? New York? Peking? Lima?

What places have the same longitude as New York? Stockholm? London?

When it is 12 o'clock at Stockholm, what inhabitants of the earth have the same hour?

PROBLEM III.

To find any place whose Latitude and Longitude are given.

RULE.—Find the longitude on the equator, and bring it to the brass meridian; then find the latitude on the meridian, and under it is the place sought.

What place has 77° W. longitude and 39° N. latitude? A. Washington.

What places have the following latitudes and longitudes?

<i>Latitude.</i>	<i>Longitude.</i>
52° 1° north,	13° 1° east.
39° north,	51° 1° west.
23° south,	42° 1° west.
23° 1° north,	88° 1° east.

PROBLEM IV.

To find the distance between any two places.

RULE.—Lay the quadrant of altitude over both places, and the degrees between them multiplied by 69 1° $2'$ will give the English miles.

What is the distance between the Island of Bermuda and St Helena?

A. 73° 1° $2'$ $\times$ 69 1° $2'$ = 5109 1° $4'$ miles.

PROBLEM V.

To rectify the Globe for the latitude of a place.

RULE.—Elevate the pole till the horizon cuts the meridian in the latitude of the place. Rectify the Globe for the latitude of London.

PROBLEM VI.

The hour at one place being given, to find what hour it is at any other place.

RULE.—Bring the place where the hour is given to the meridian, and set the index of the hour circle to that hour; then turn the Globe till the place where the hour is required comes under the meridian, and the index will point to the hour at that place.

When it is 10 o'clock in the morning at London, what hour is it at St. Petersburg? A. The difference of time is two hours—12.

When it is noon at Hartford, what hour is it in London? Constantinople?

PROBLEM VII.

To find the Sun's declination.

RULE.—Find the sun's place in the ecliptic, and bring it to the brass meridian, and the degree over it is the sun's declination.

What is the sun's declination on the 15th of April? A 10° N. Jan. 21? June 21? Sept. 21? Nov. 21?

PROBLEM VIII.

To find the time of the Sun's rising and setting at any place.

RULE.—Find the sun's declination and elevate the north or south pole, according as the declination is north or south so many degrees above the horizon, as are equal to the sun's declination; bring the given place to the brass meridian, and set the Index of the hour circle to 12. Turn the globe eastward till the given place comes to the horizon, and the Index will shew the time of the sun's rising. Turn the globe to the west verge of the horizon, and the Index will shew the time of his setting.

At what time does the sun rise and set at Hartford on the 5th of February?

A. The sun rises at 7, and sets at 5.

PROBLEM IX.

To find the length of the day and night at any time in the year.

RULE.—Double the time of the sun's rising and it gives the length of the night. Double the time of his setting and it gives the length of the day.

What is the length of the shortest day at Hartford? A. 8 h. 56 min.

What is the length of the longest day and shortest night at Edinburgh?

PROBLEM X.

To find the Antæci, Periæci, and Antipodes of any place.

EXPLANATION.

The Antæcians are those who have the same longitude as ours, but have the same latitude south as we have north. Their summer is our winter.

RULE.—Bring the given place to the brass meridian, and count as many degrees on the meridian south of the Equator as the given place is north; and you will find the Antæci.

The Periæcians are those which lie under the same degree of latitude, but have 180° difference of longitude. They have contrary hours; noon when we have midnight.

RULE.—Bring the given place to the brass meridian, set the Index to 12, turn the globe till the Index points to the other 12, then under the latitude of the given place you will find the Periæci.

The Antipodes are those who have the same latitude south that we have north, and differ 180° of longitude. Their hours, days, and seasons differ from ours.

RULE.—Bring the given place to the brass meridian, turn the globe half round, then count as many degrees south of the Equator as the given place is north, and you will have the Antipodes.

Require the Antæci, Periæci and Antipodes of Hartford.

A. Antæci are in the northern part of the island of Chiloe. The Periæci are in the Desert of Shamo in the Chinese Empire. The Antipodes are in the Southern Ocean south-east of the island of St. Paul.

PROBLEM XI.

To find how many miles make a degree of longitude in any given parallel of latitude.

RULE.—Lay the quadrant of altitude parallel to the equator between any two meridians in the given latitude, which differ in longitude 15 degrees; the number of degrees intercepted between them multiplied by 4, will give the length of

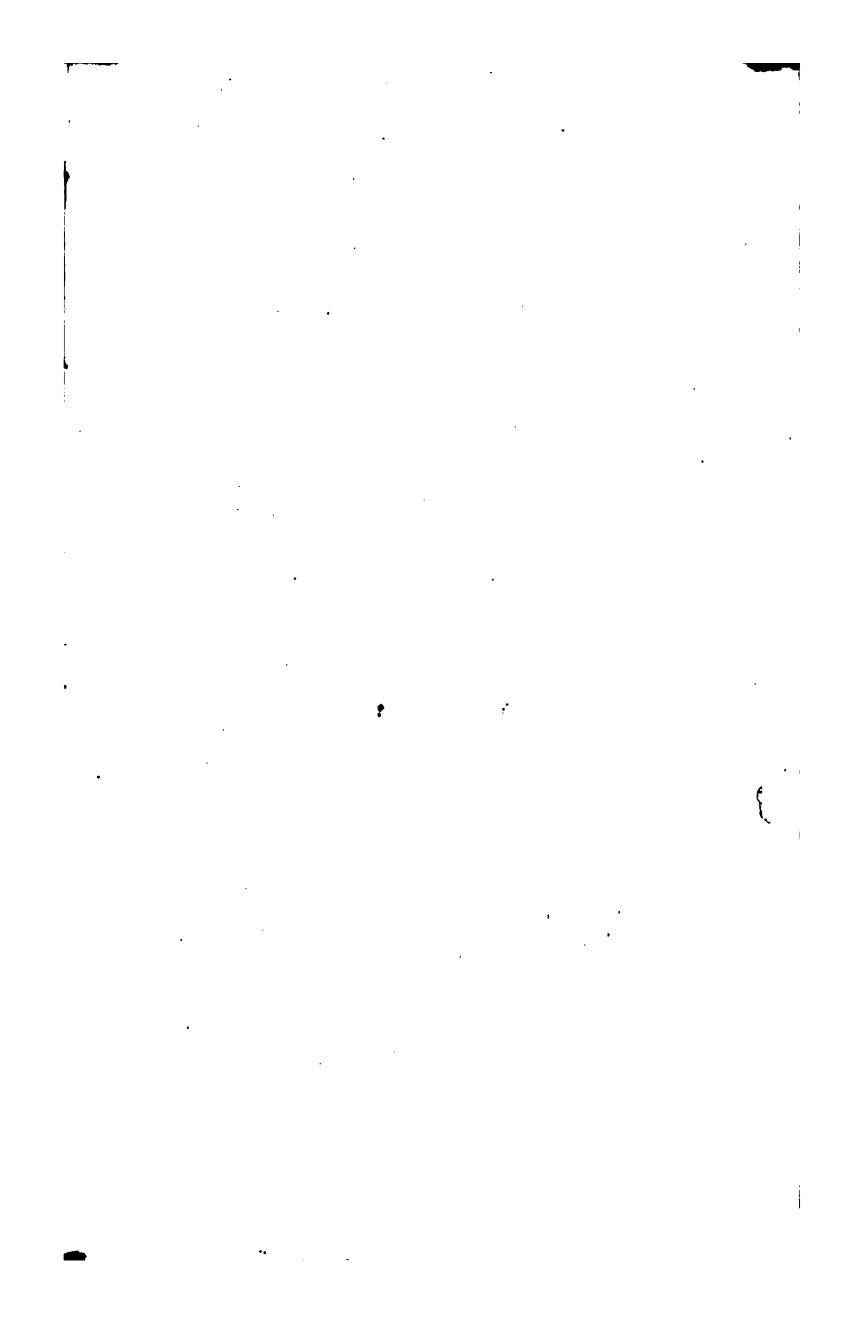
a degree in geographical miles. The geographical miles may be brought in to English miles, by multiplying by 116, and cutting off two figures from the right hand of the product.

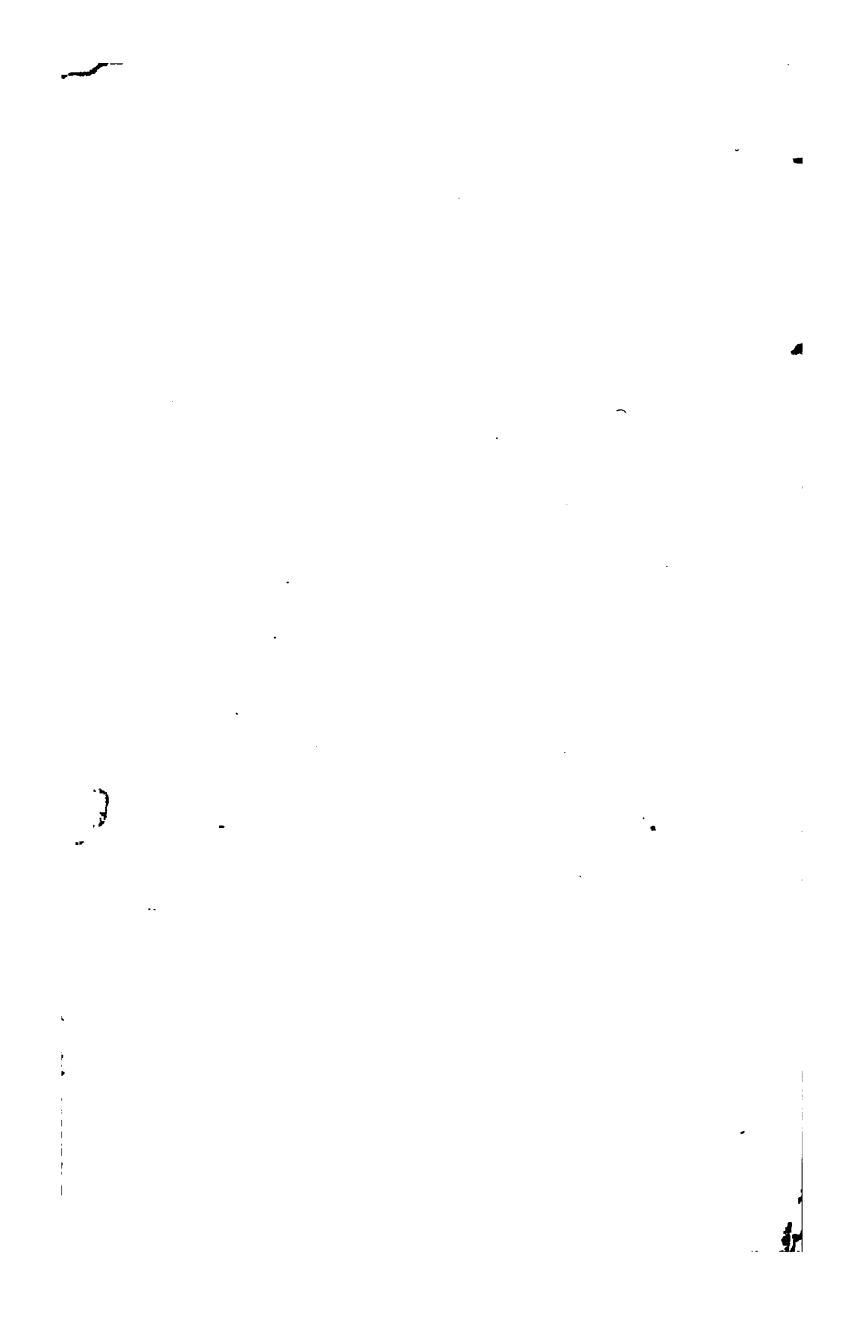
EXAMPLE.—How many geographical and English miles make a degree in the latitude of Peking?

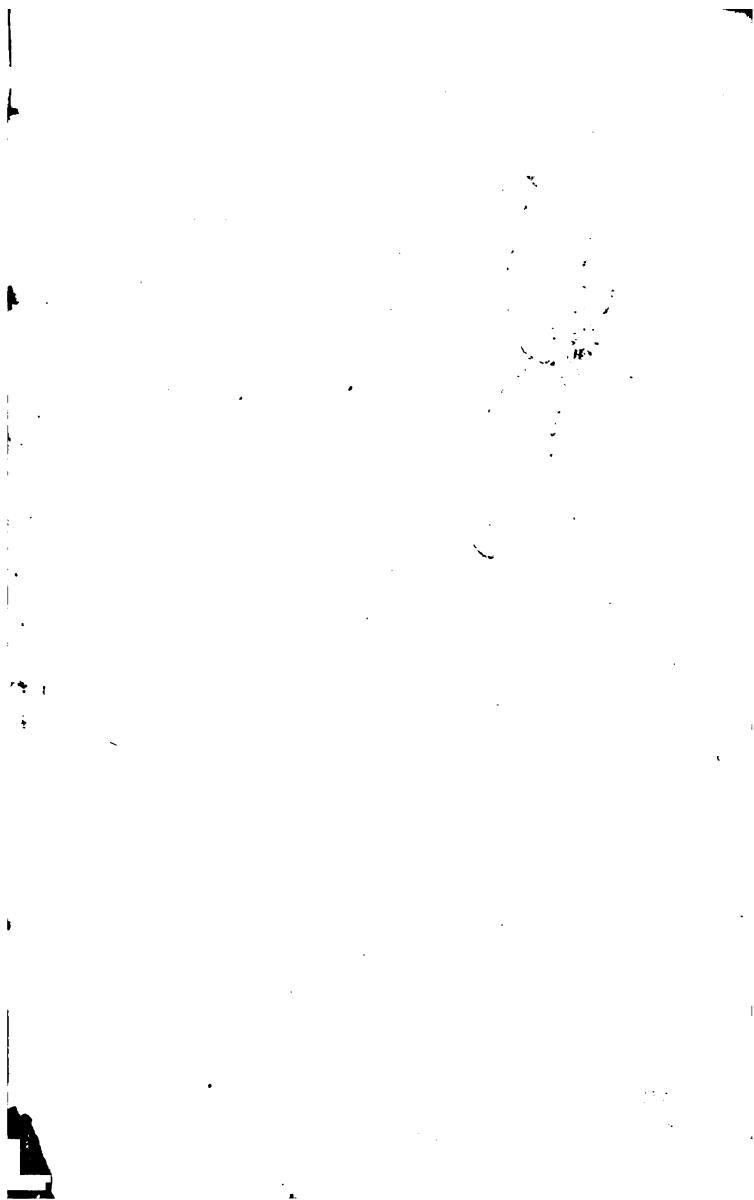
QUESTIONS,

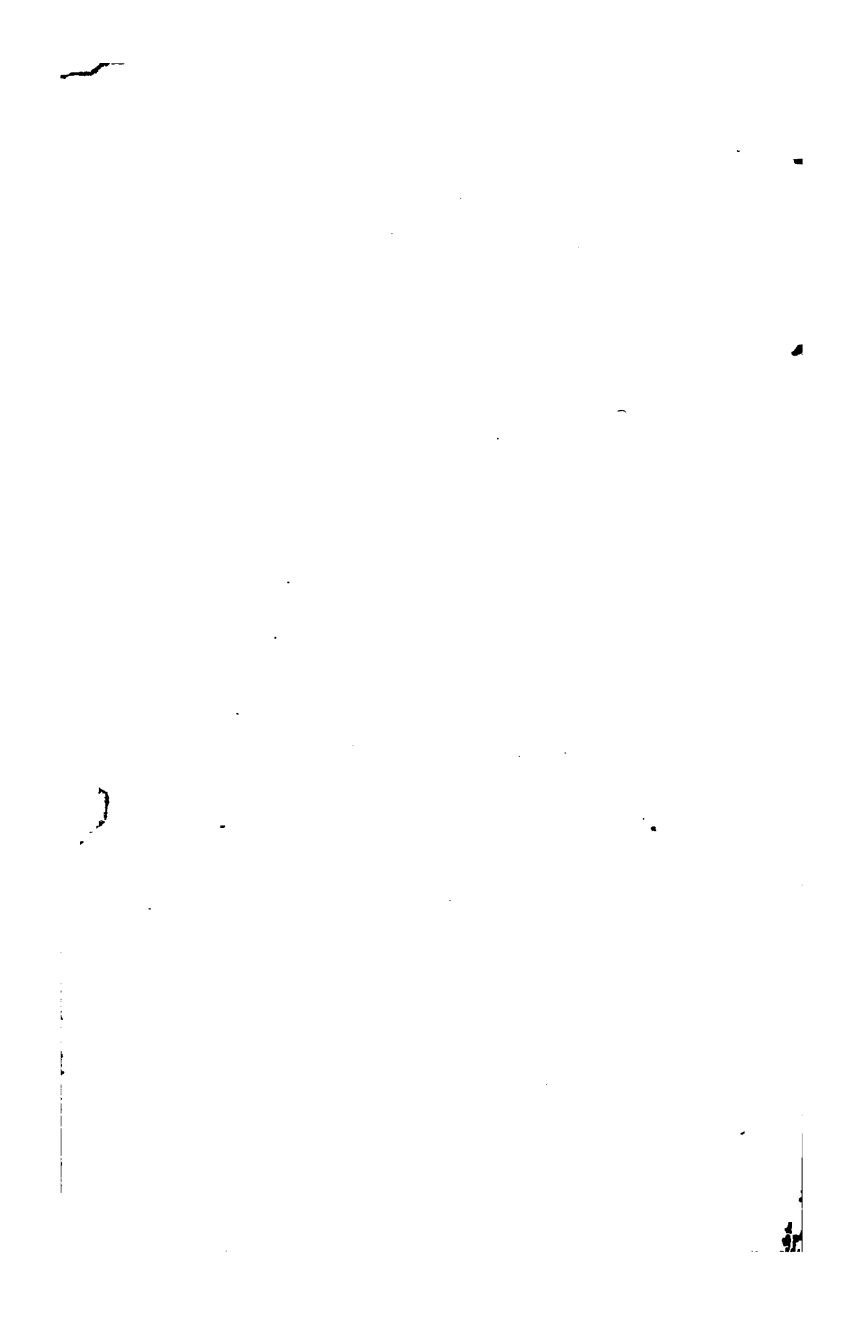
EXERCISING THE PROBLEMS ON THE TERRESTRIAL GLOBE.

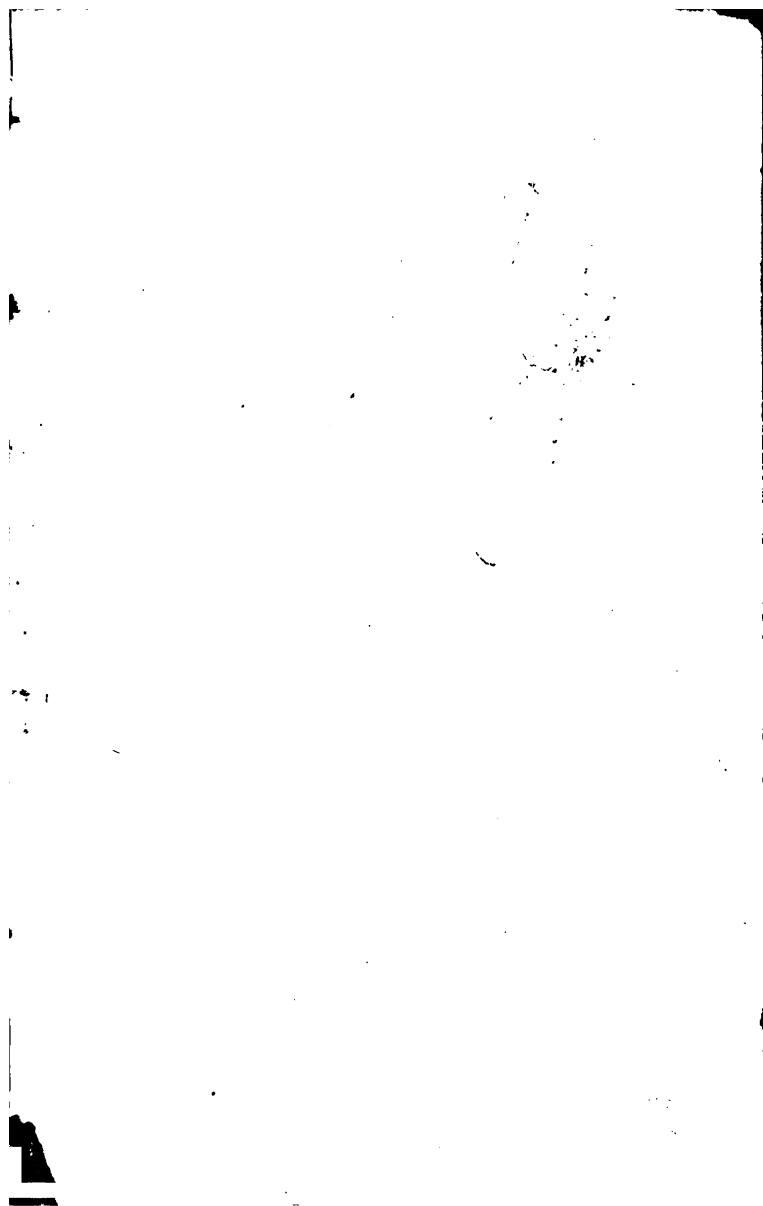
1. What inhabitants of the earth have the same length of days as those of Philadelphia?
2. What inhabitants of the earth have the same seasons of the year as those of London?
3. When it is 10 o'clock in the evening at Stockholm, what inhabitants have the same hour?
4. What is the nearest distance between New York and the Cape of Good Hope?
5. When it is noon at Philadelphia, what inhabitants of the earth have midnight?
6. When it is 10 o'clock in the morning at London, where is it 10 o'clock in the evening?
7. What is the sun's longitude (commonly called the sun's place in the ecliptic) on the 15th of April?
8. What day of the year is of the same length as the 15th of April?
9. How much longer is the 5th of May at New York than at Quito?
10. When it is noon at London, at what place is the sun rising and setting, and where is it midnight?
11. Are the clocks at Philadelphia faster or slower than those at London, and how much?
12. What is the difference of latitude between Cape North and Cape Matapan?
13. What is the difference of longitude between Philadelphia and Constantinople?
14. What is the difference between New York and London in English miles?
15. What hour is it at London when it is 4 in the evening at Calcutta?
16. At what time does the sun rise and set at Archangel on the 15th of March, and what is the length of the day and night?
17. If the sun set at 7 o'clock, at what time does it rise, and what is the length of the day and night?
18. How many English miles must I travel westward from London that my watch may be six hours too fast?
19. What place upon the globe has the greatest longitude, the least longitude, no longitude, and every longitude?
20. What inhabitants of the earth in the course of 12 hours will be in the same situation as their Antipodes?
21. At what places on the globe can two ships sail directly from each other, and still sail the same point of the compass?
22. How many English miles must I travel eastward from Philadelphia, that my watch may be 7 hours too slow?
23. Suppose a person could start from Philadelphia precisely at noon on Monday, and keep pace with the sun round the globe, at what place would he first be told it was Tuesday noon?
24. There is a town in Norway where the longest day is five times the length of the shortest night, what is its name?
25. When the sun is setting to the inhabitants of Hartford on the 4th of April, where is it rising, and where midnight?
26. As the sun never goes north of the tropic of Cancer,—or but 23 1-2 degrees north of the equator,—how can you account for its rising, in our latitude, during the summer months, nearly in the north-east, and setting nearly in the north-west?

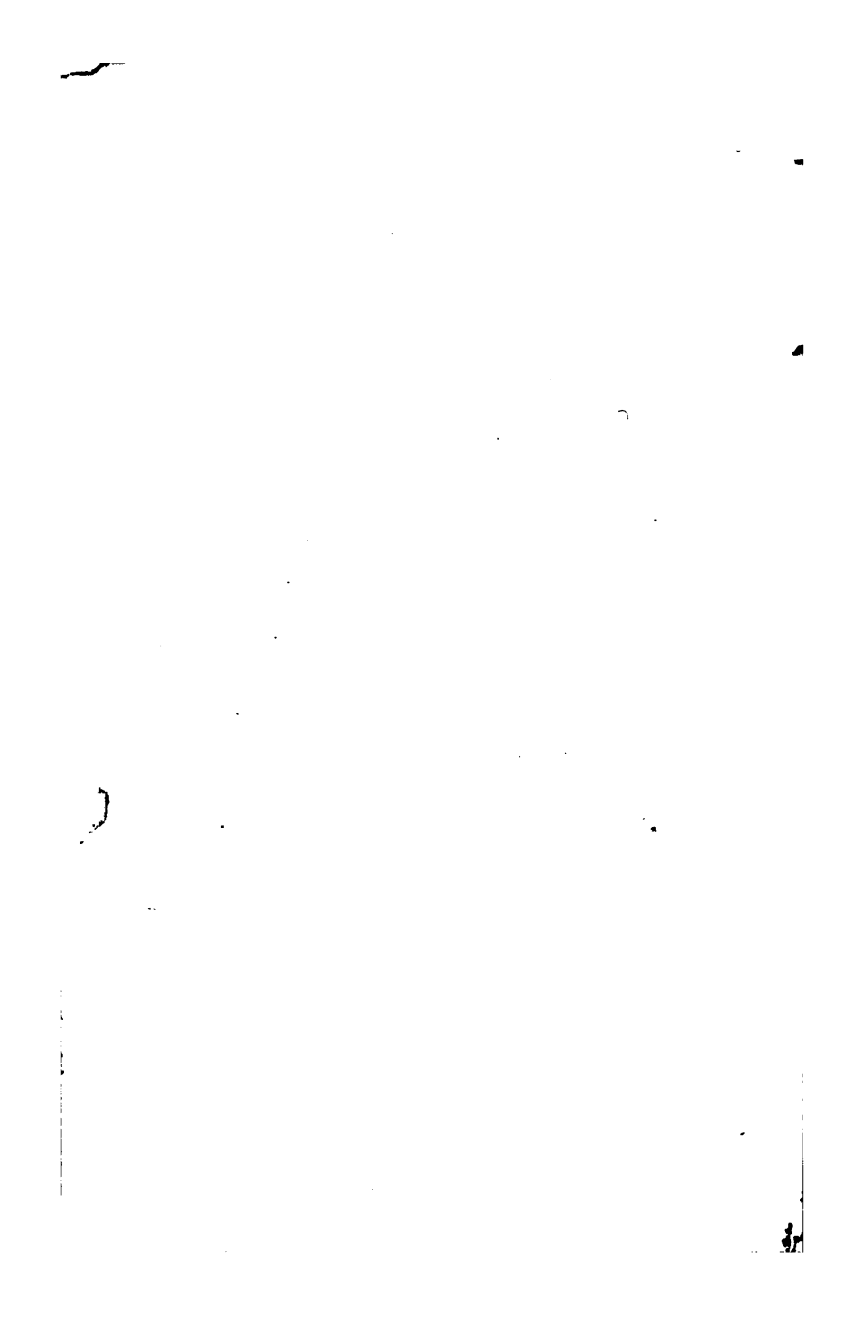


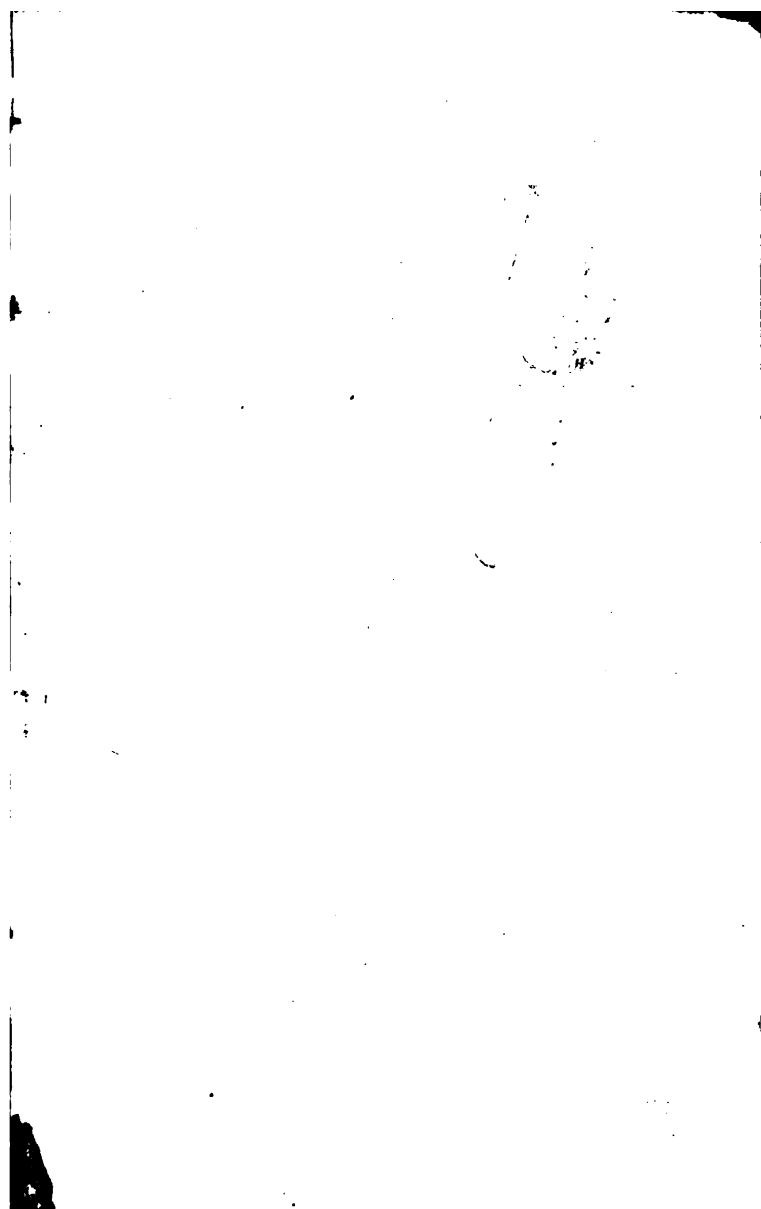


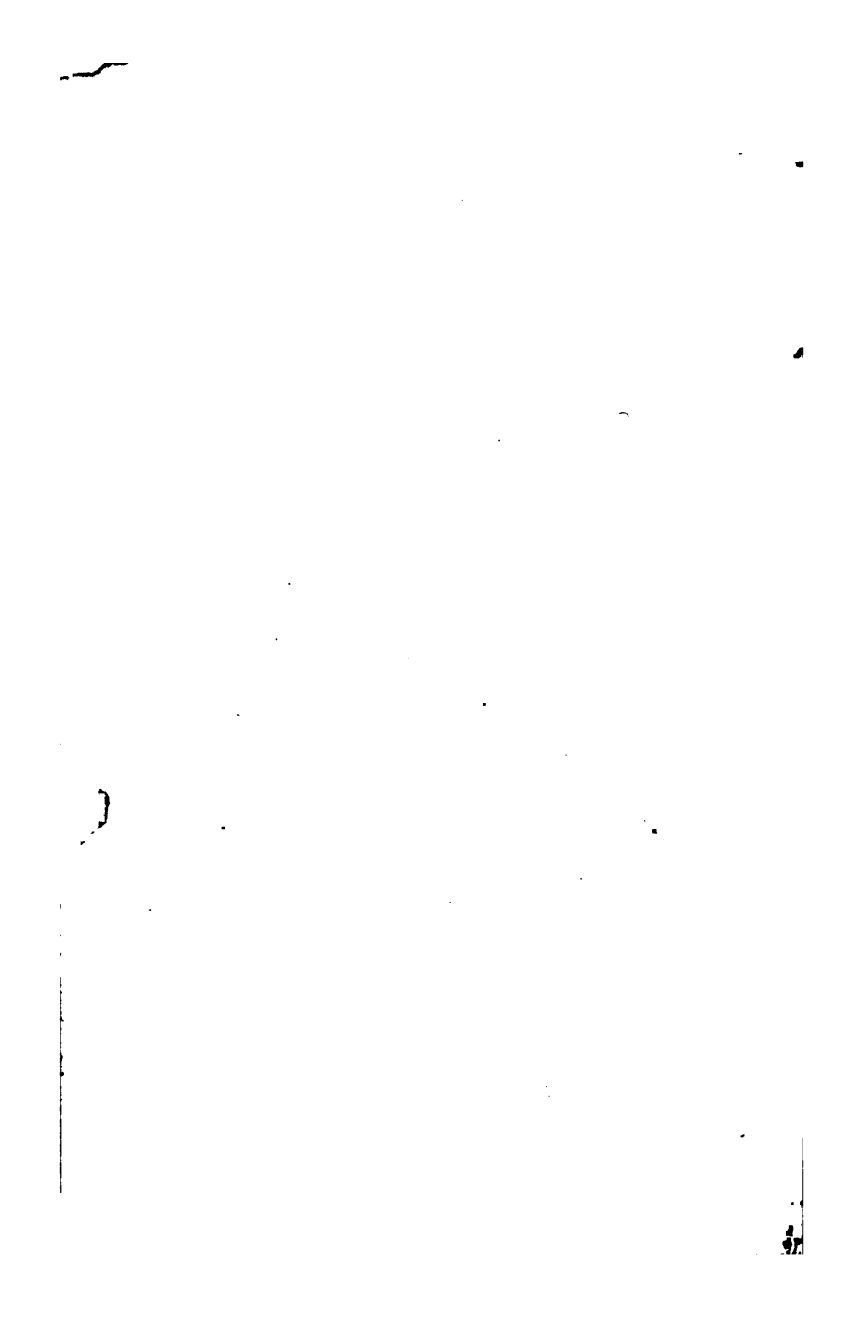


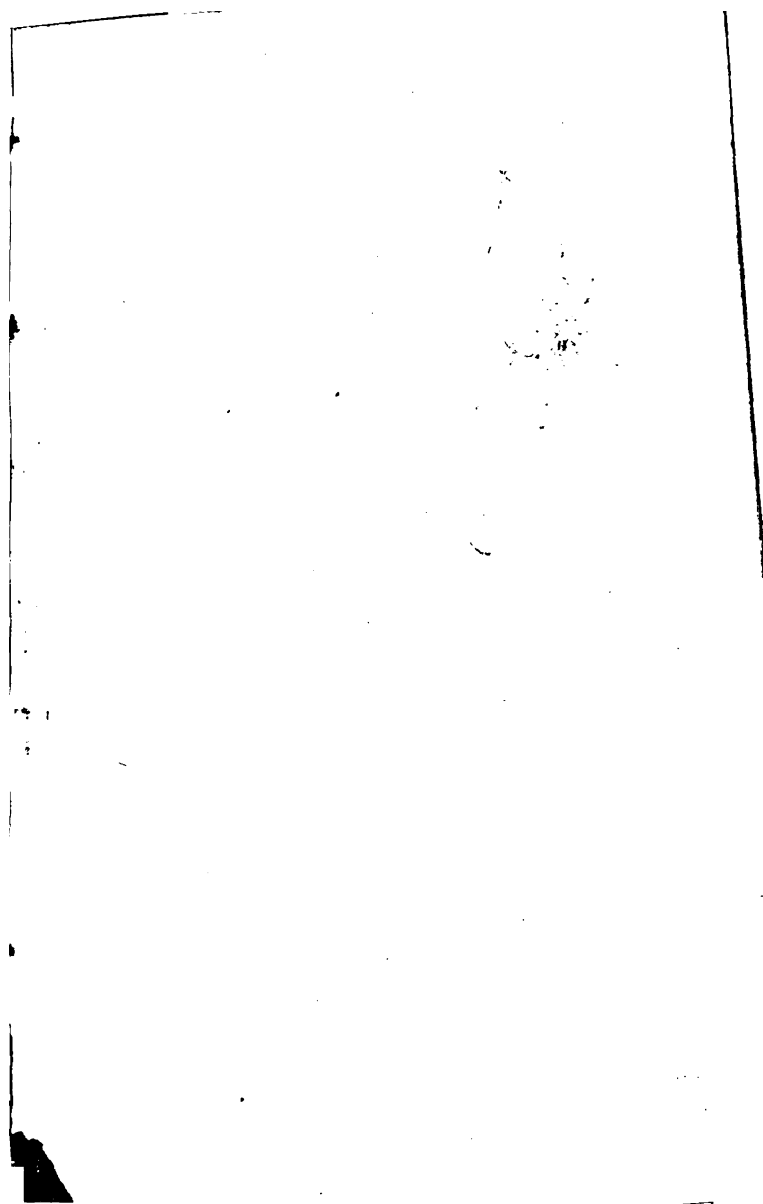


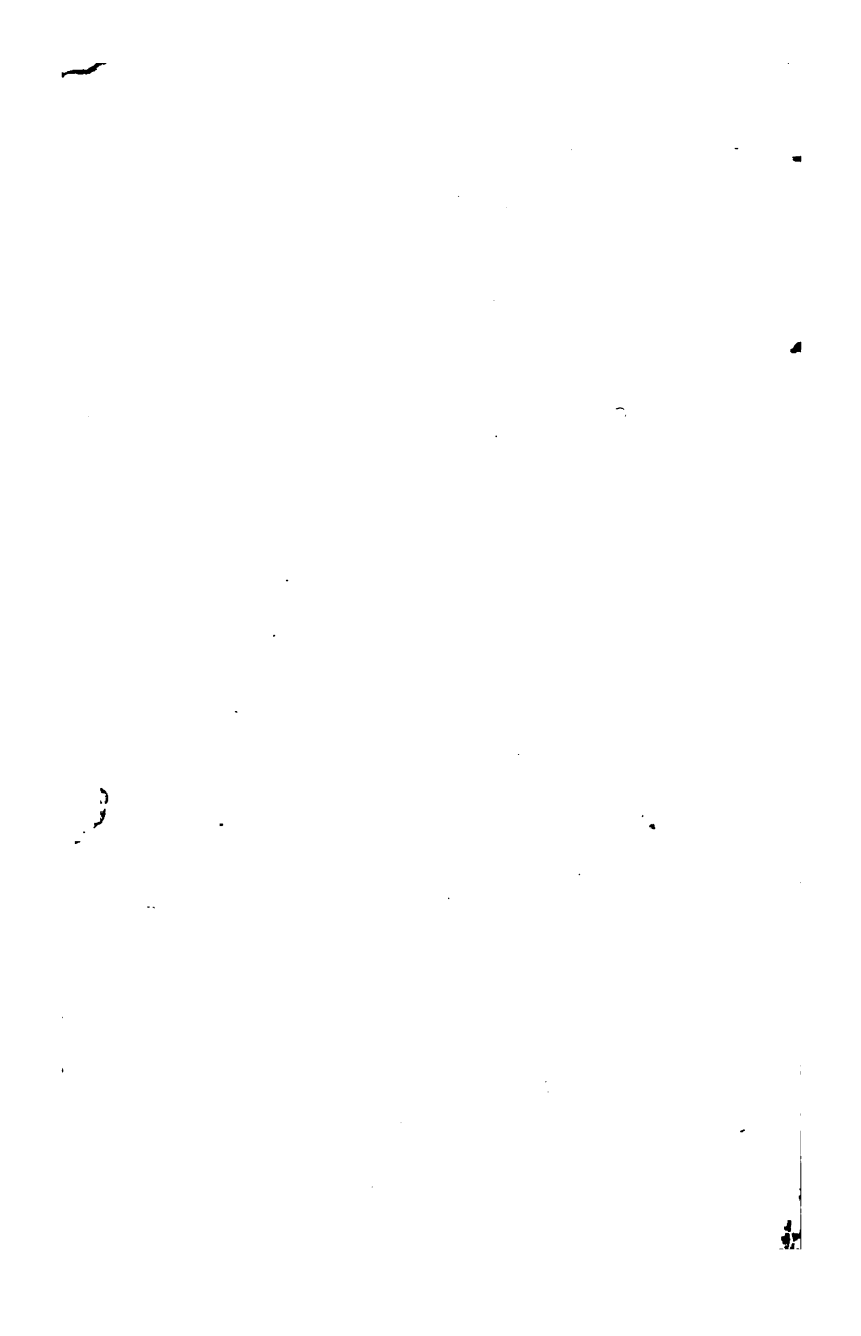


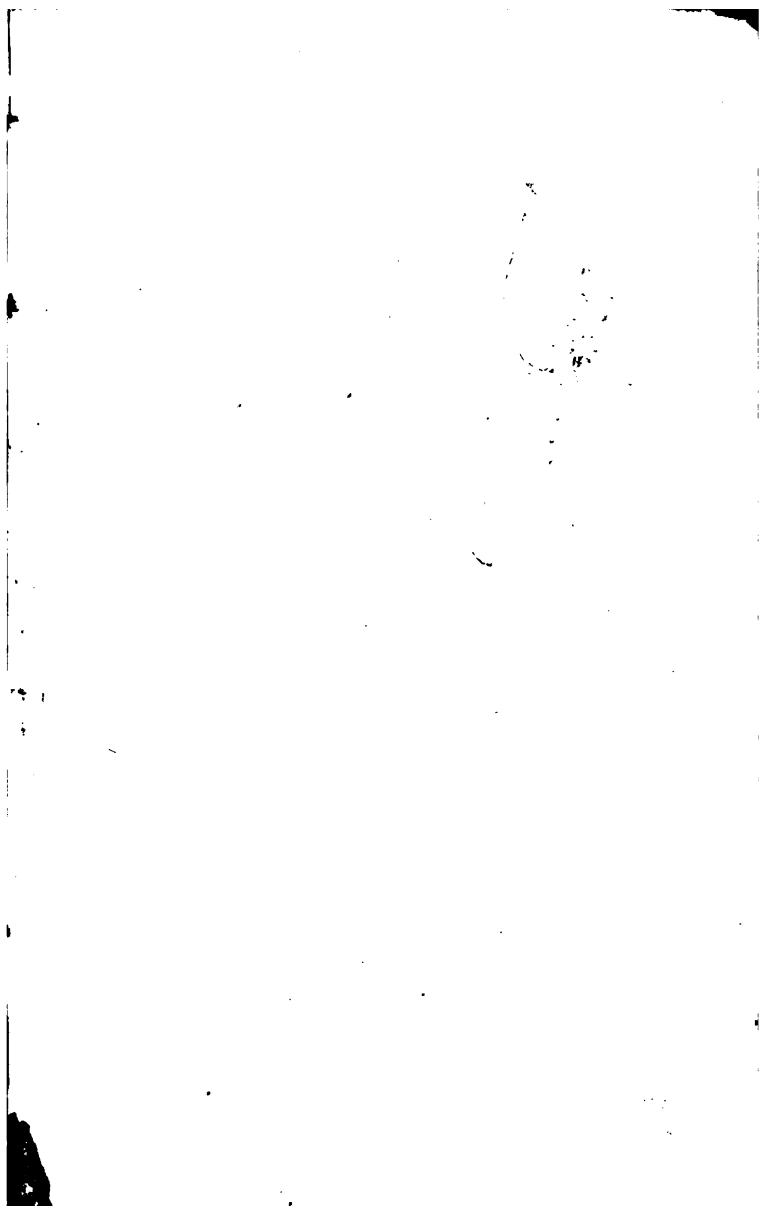


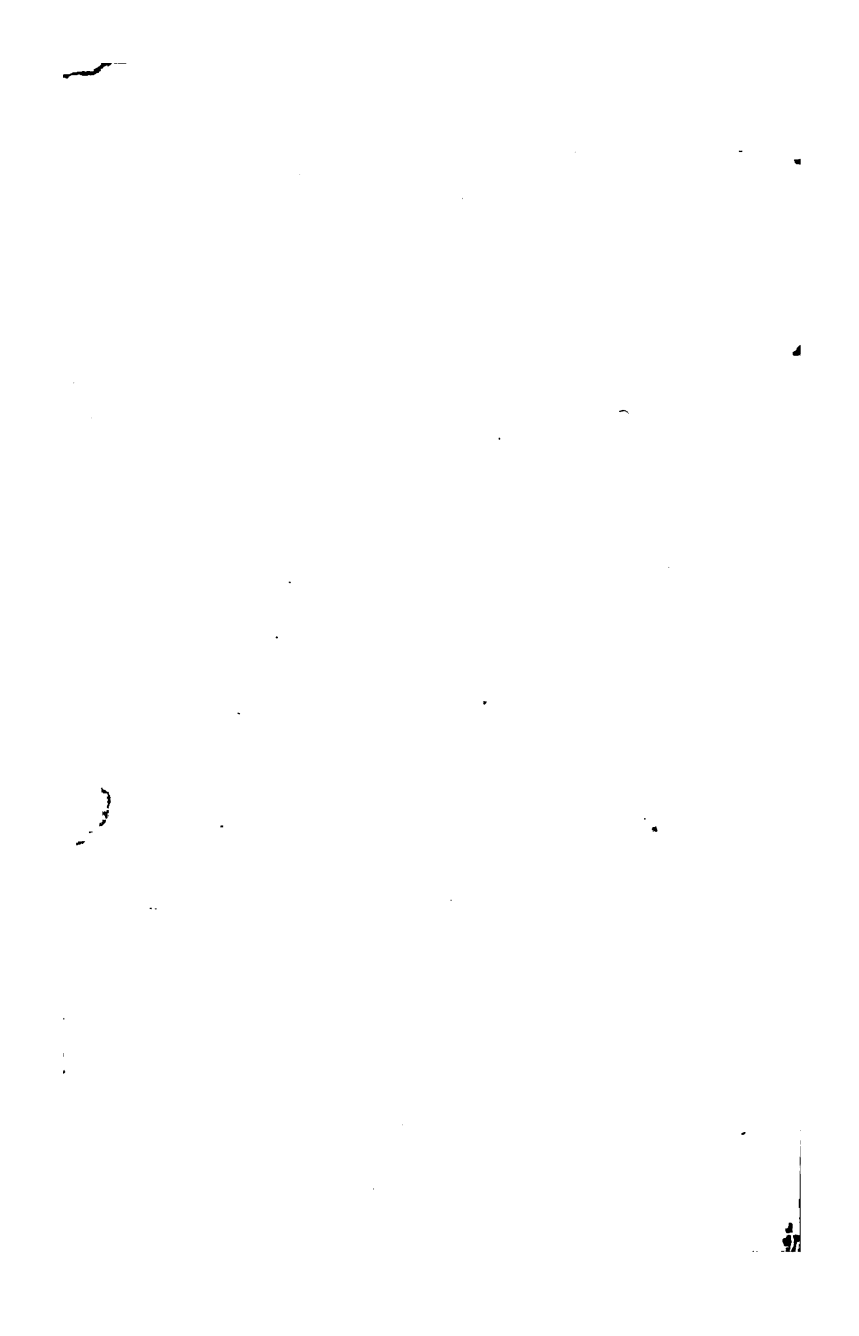


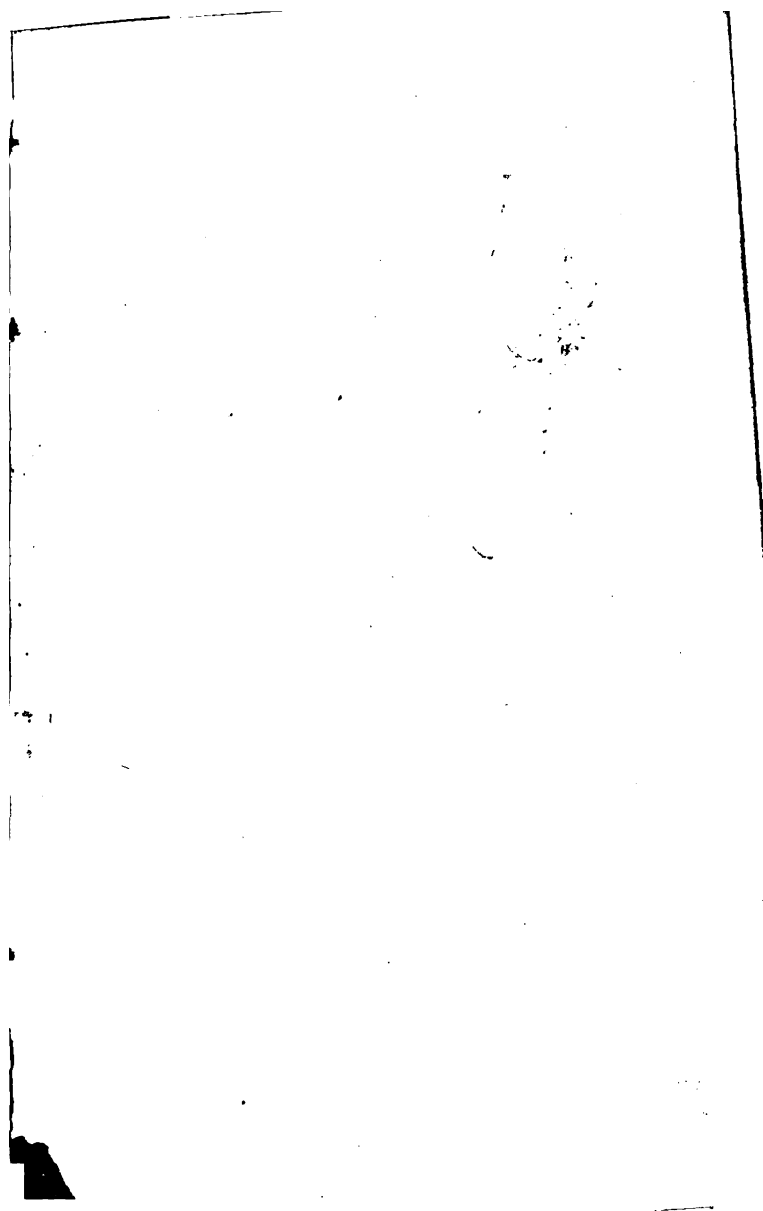


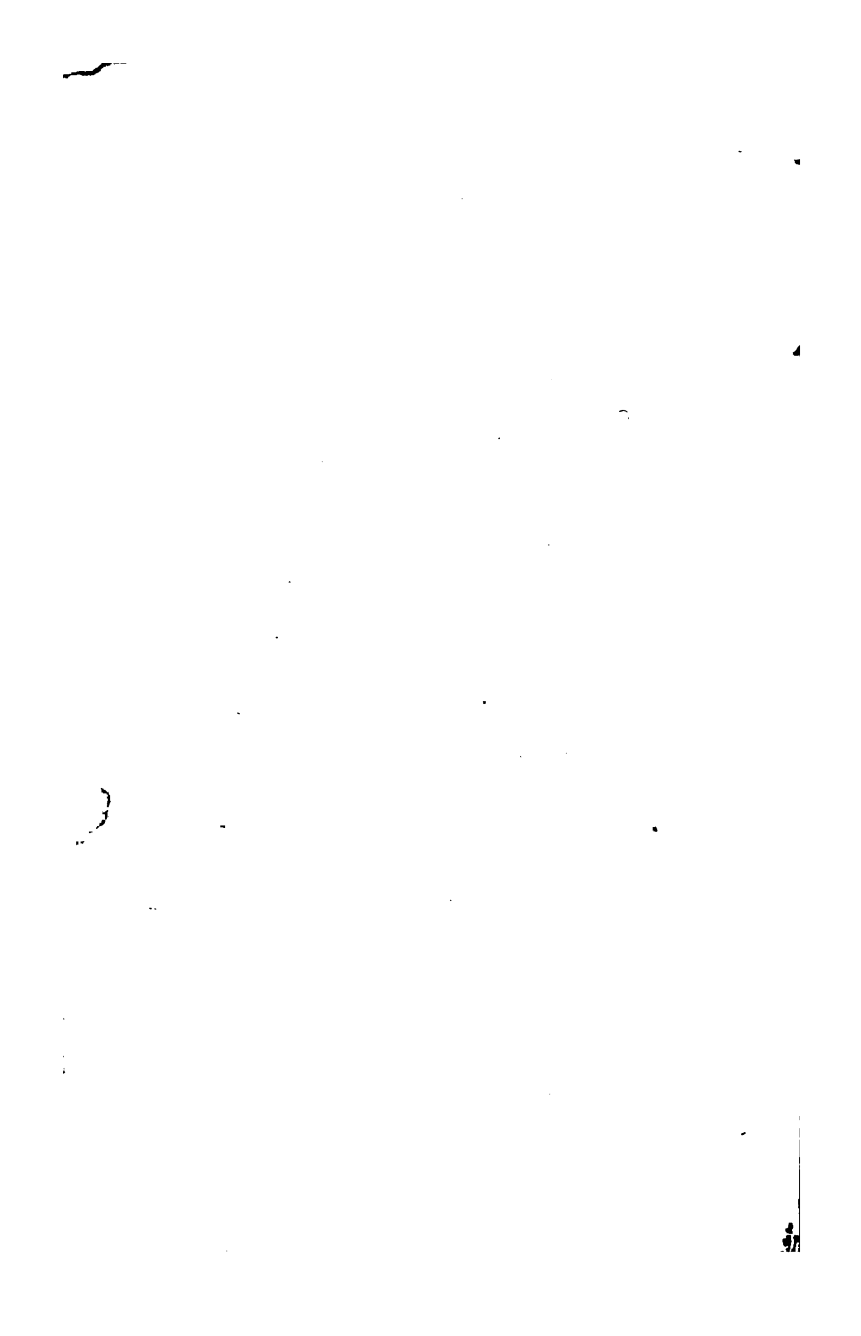


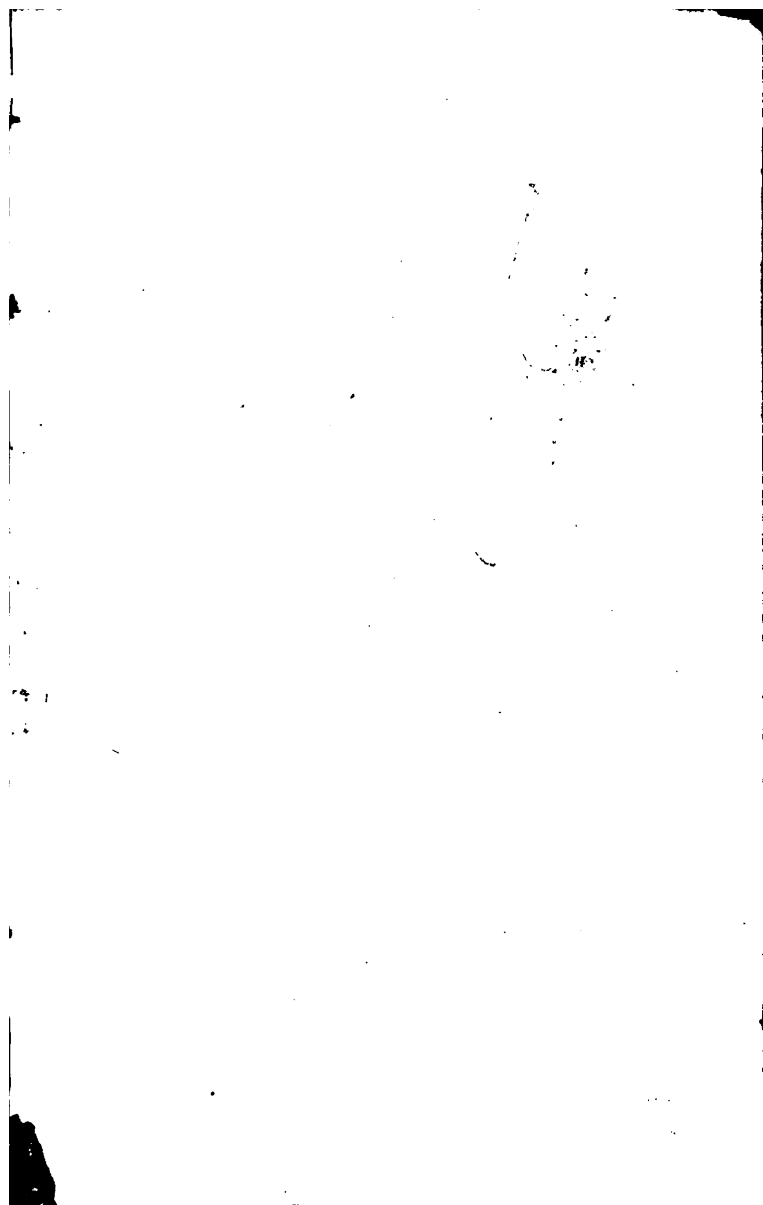


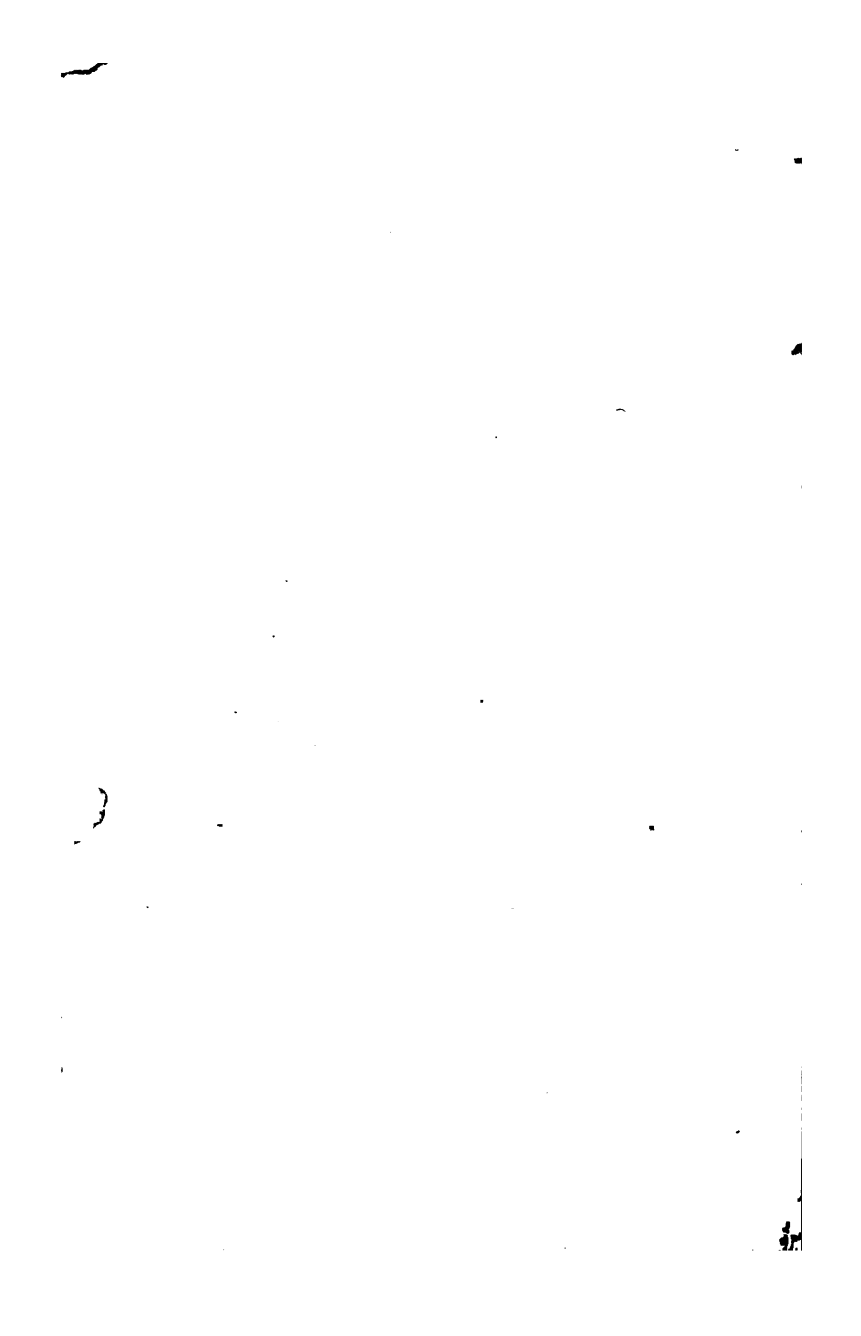


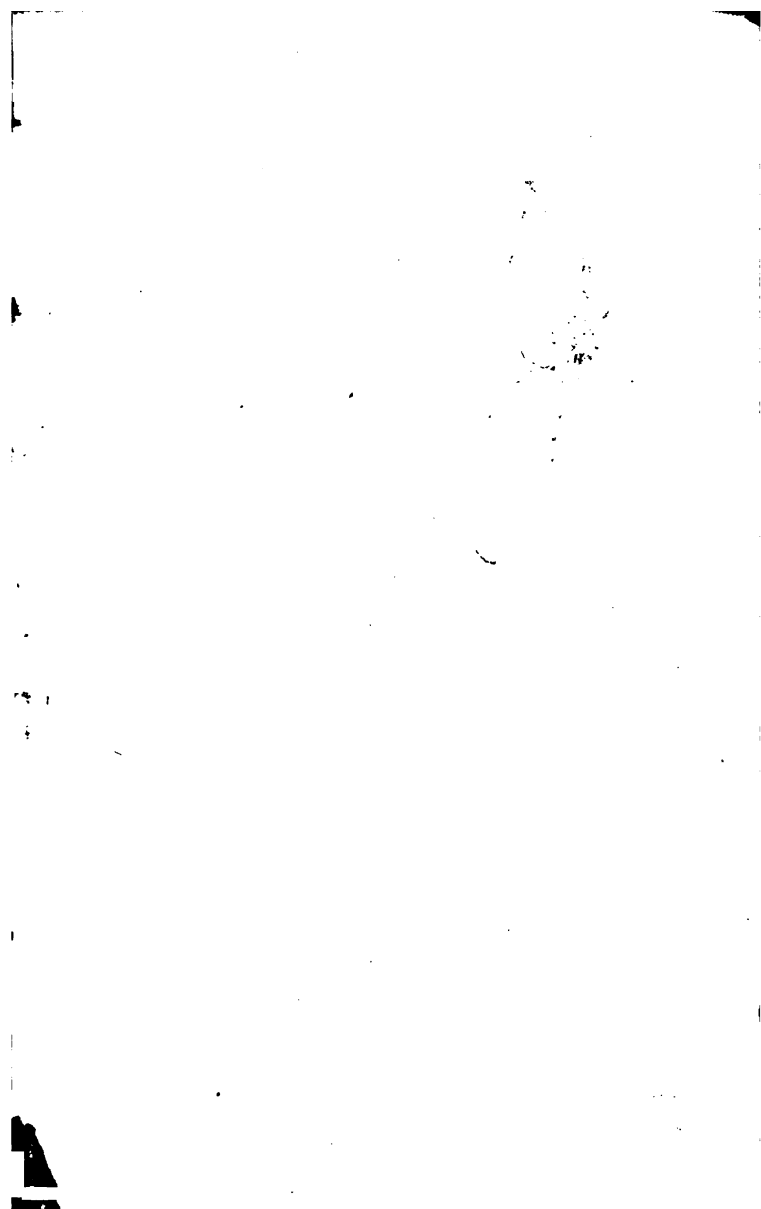


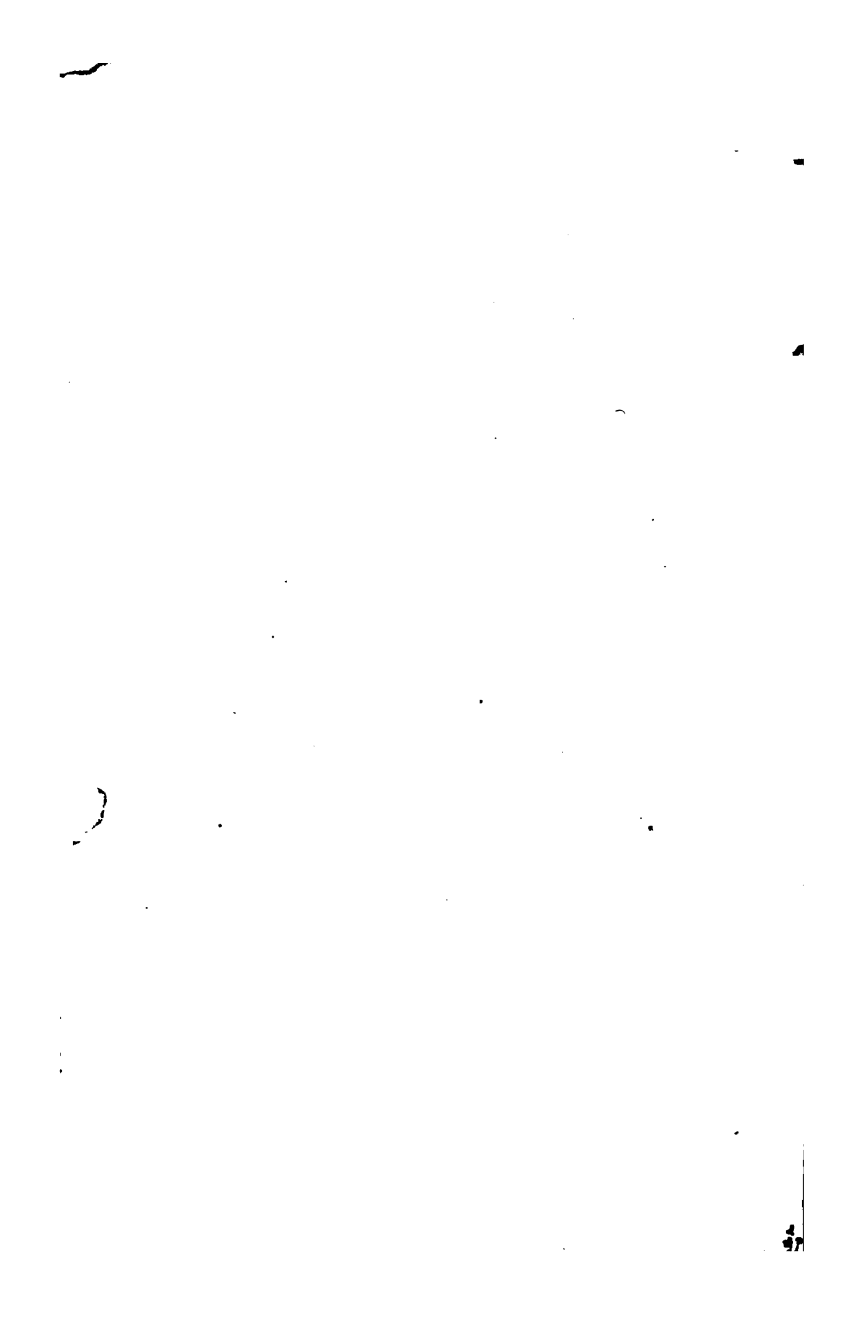


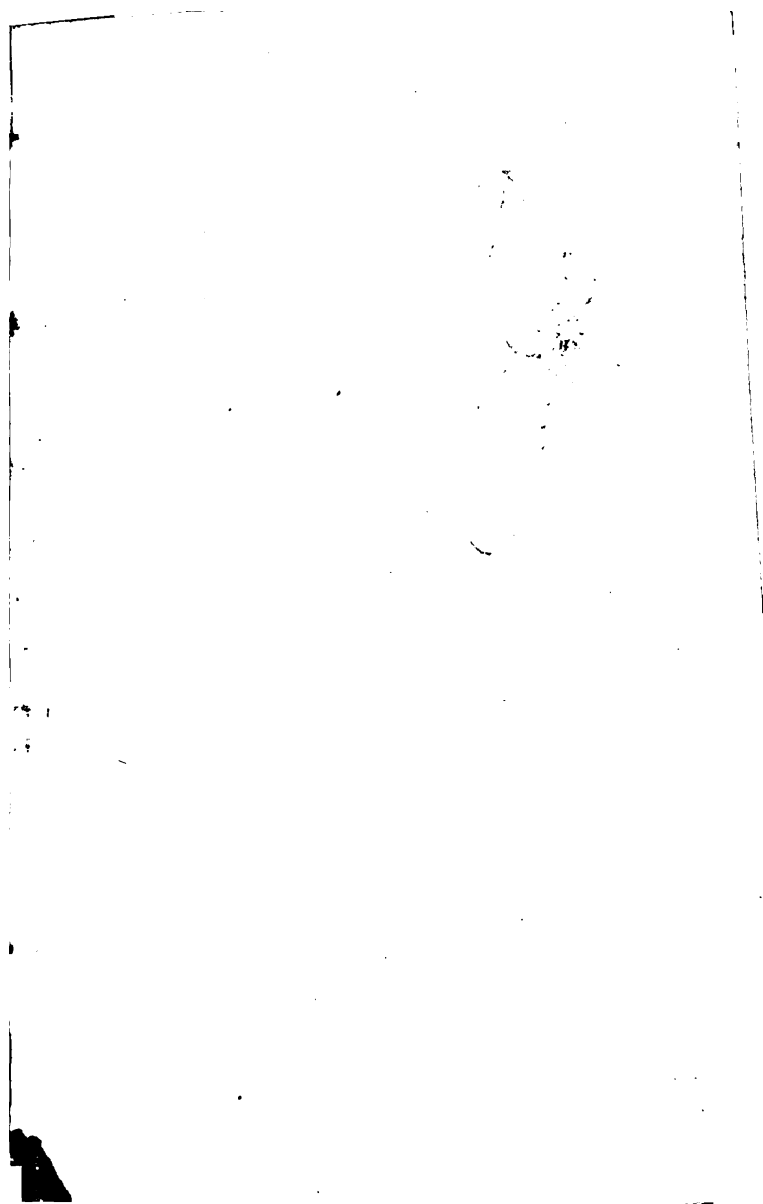


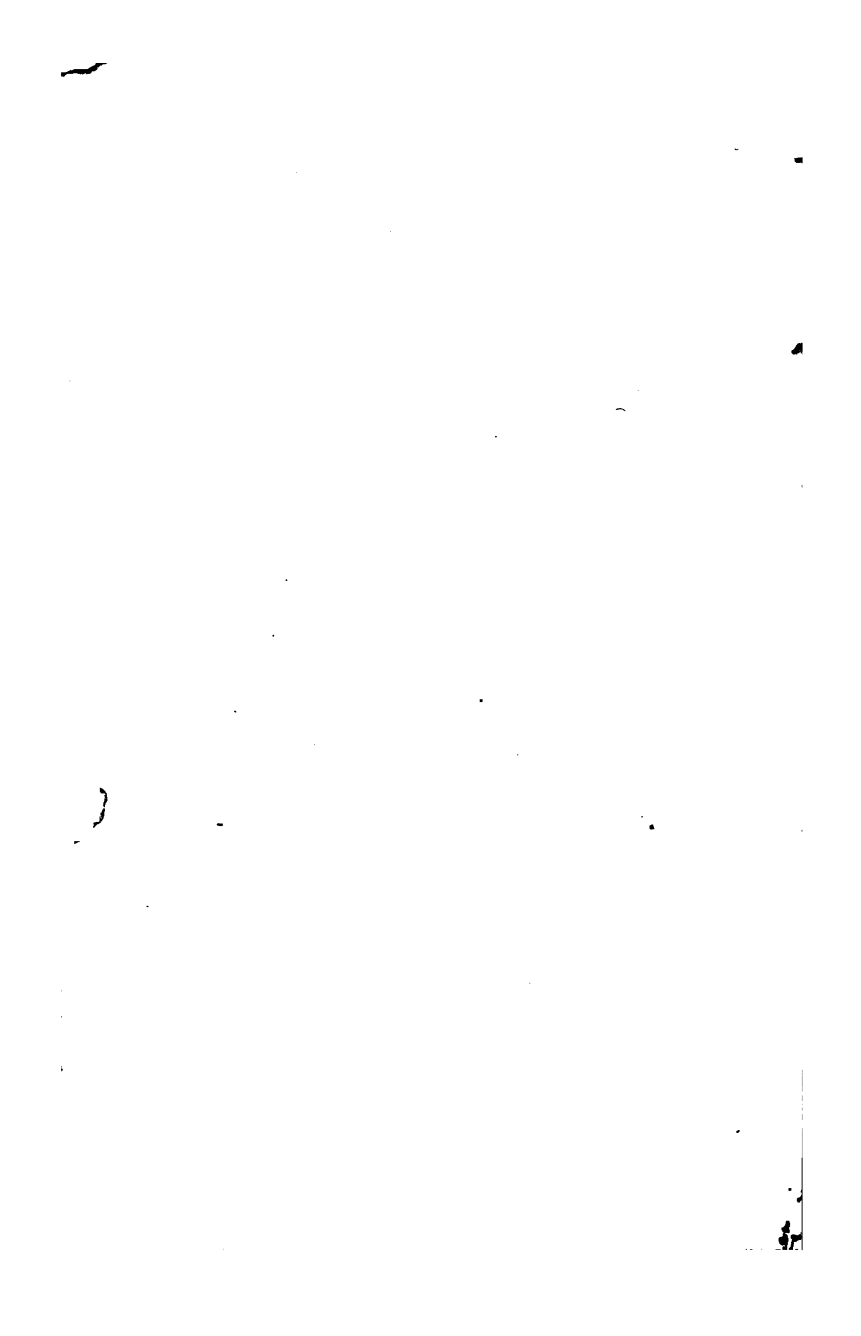


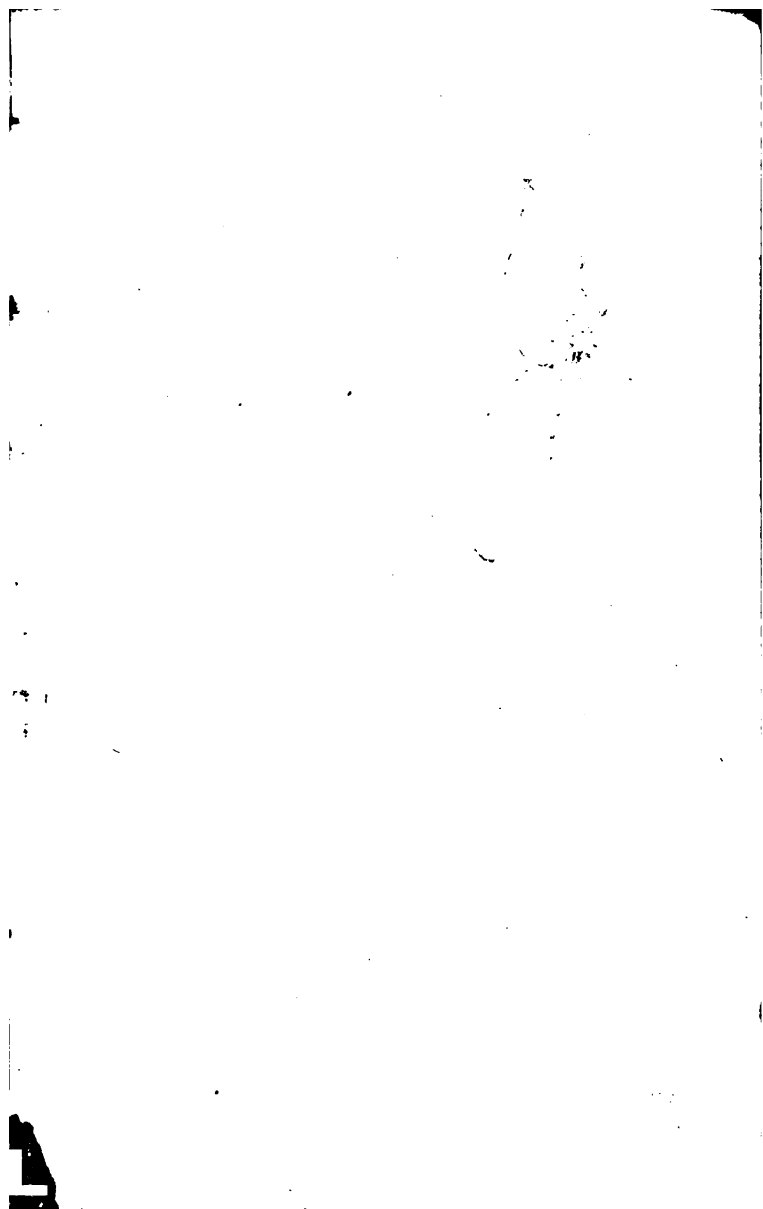


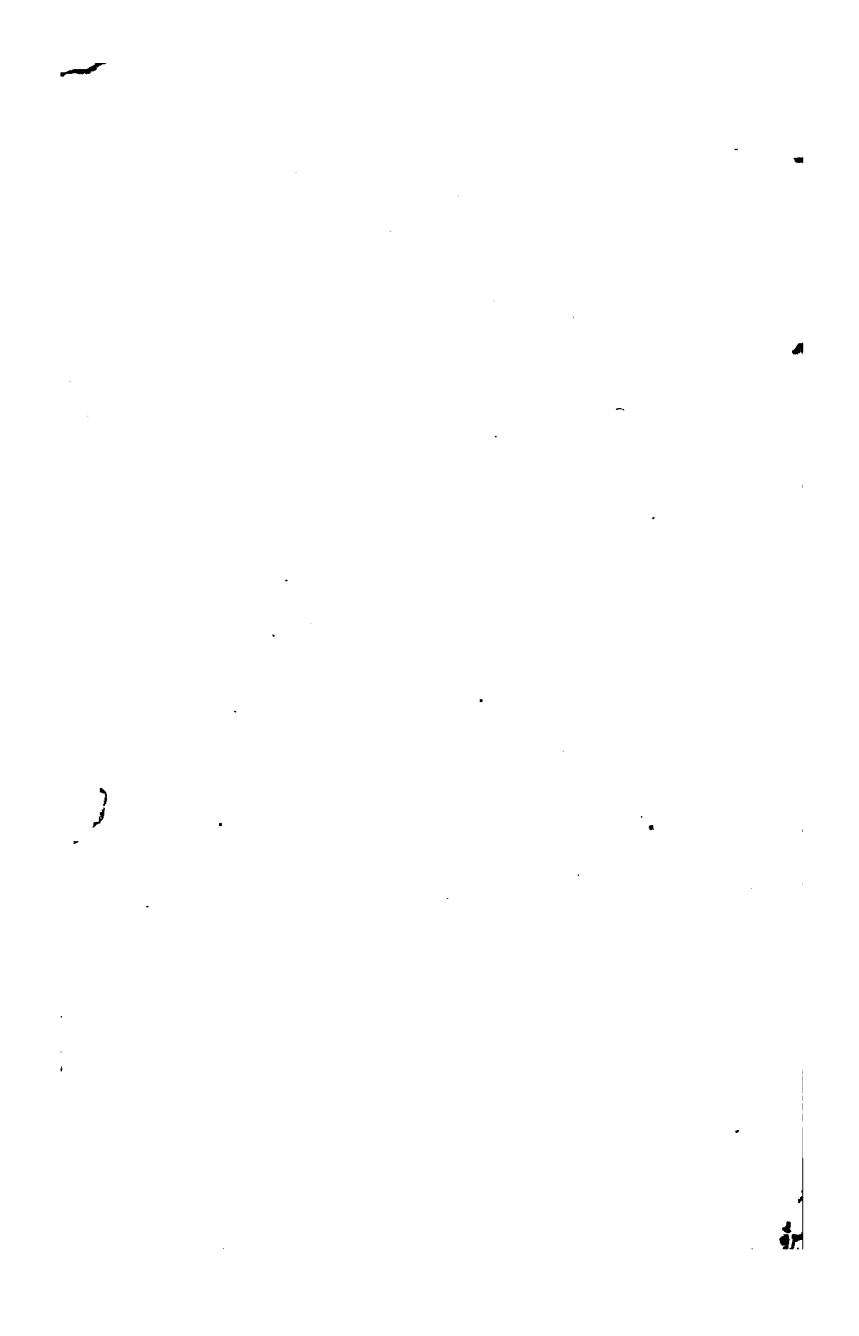


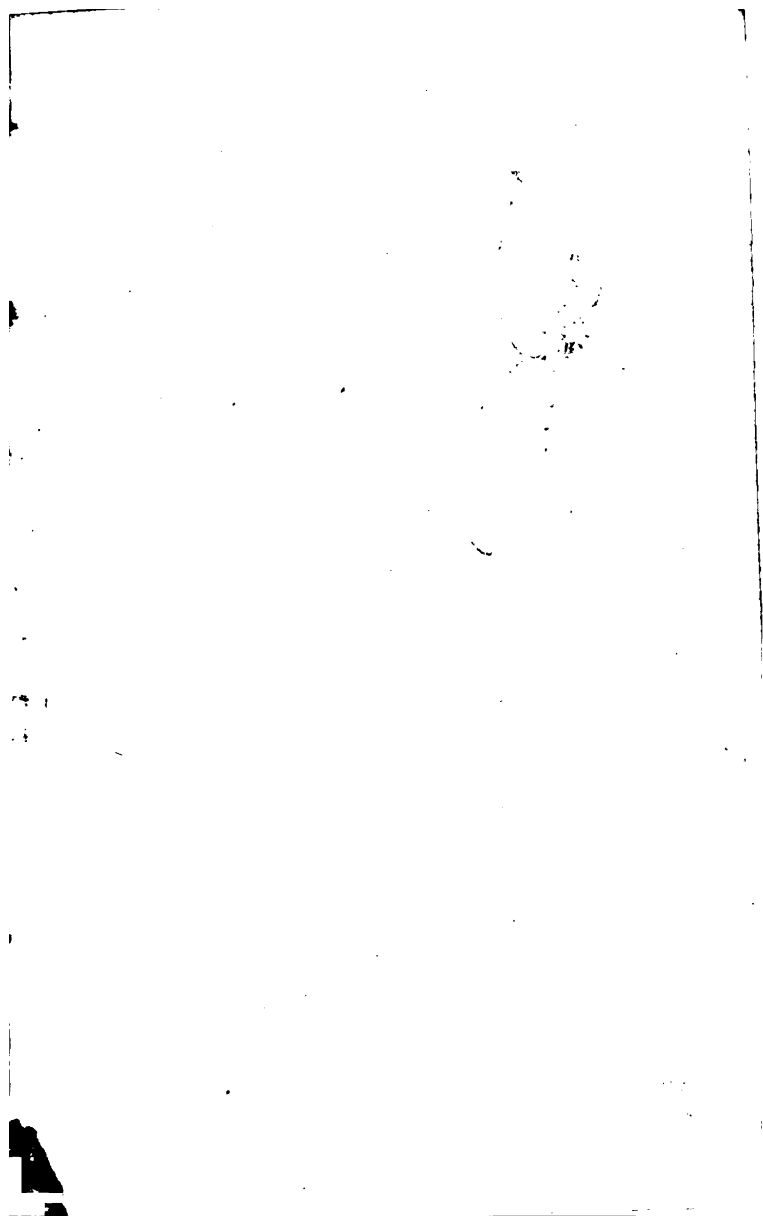


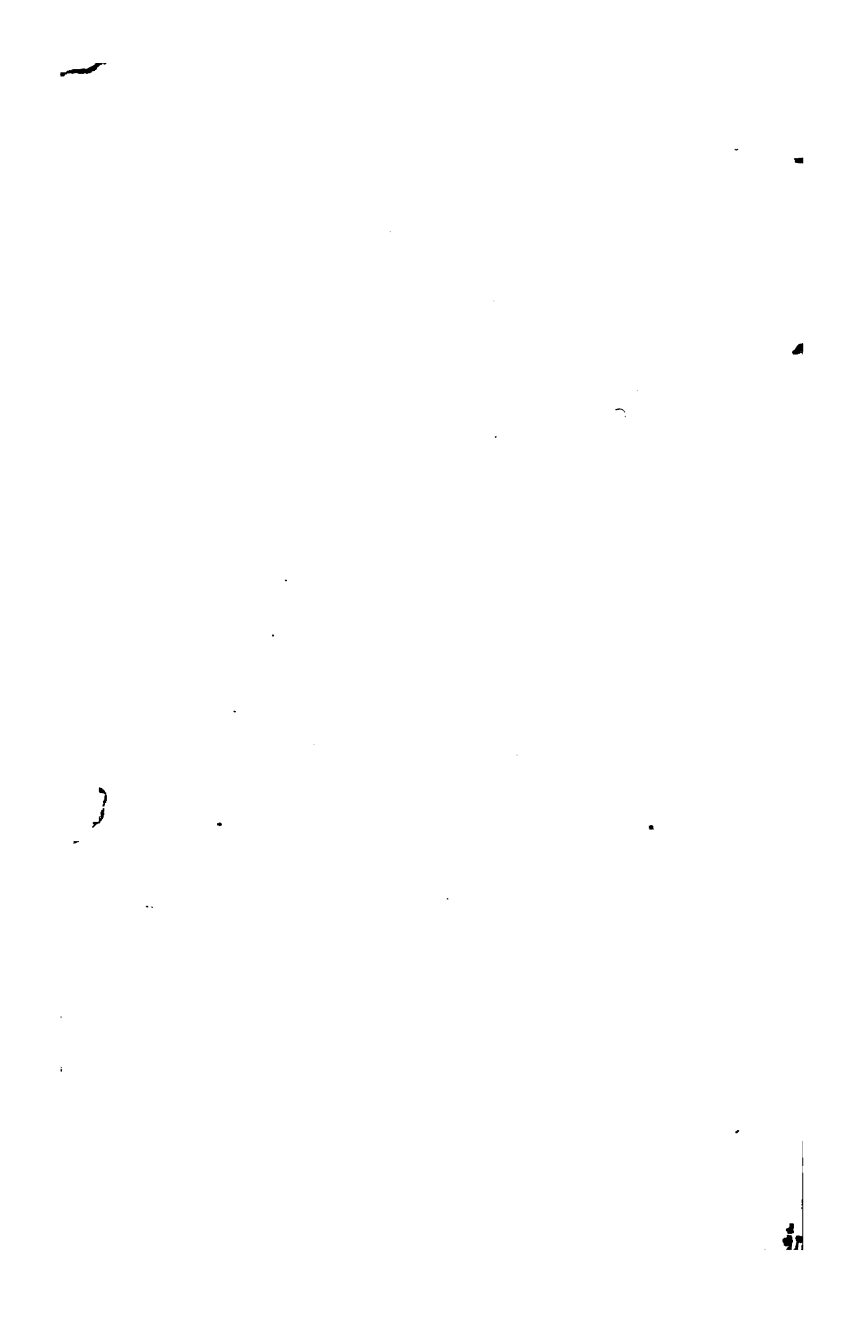


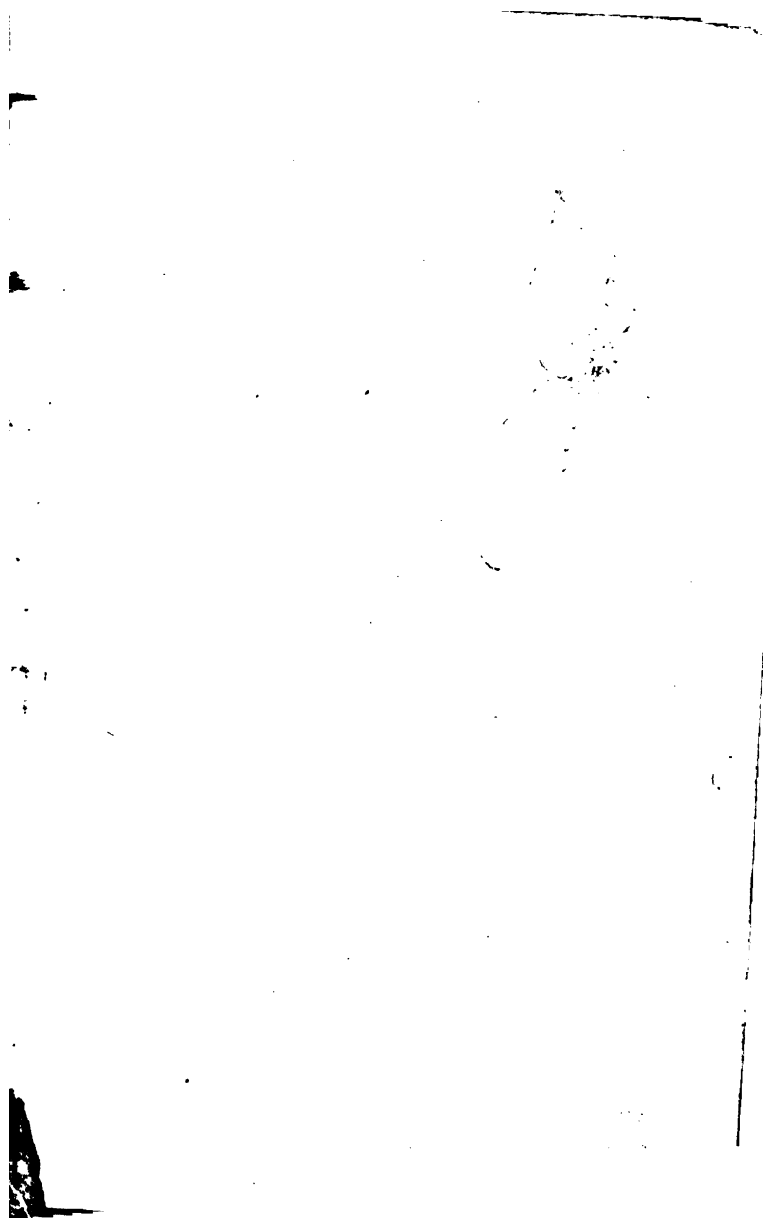


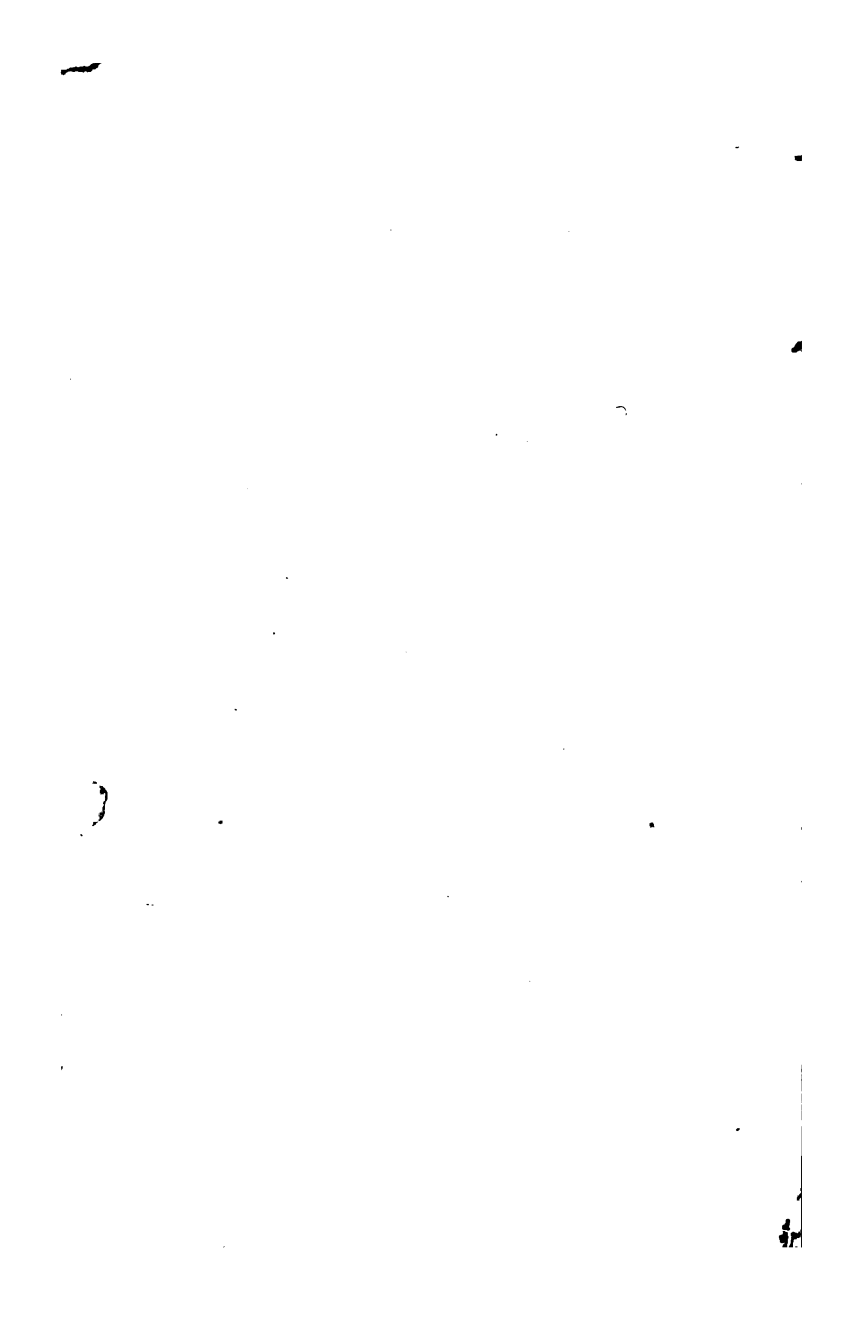


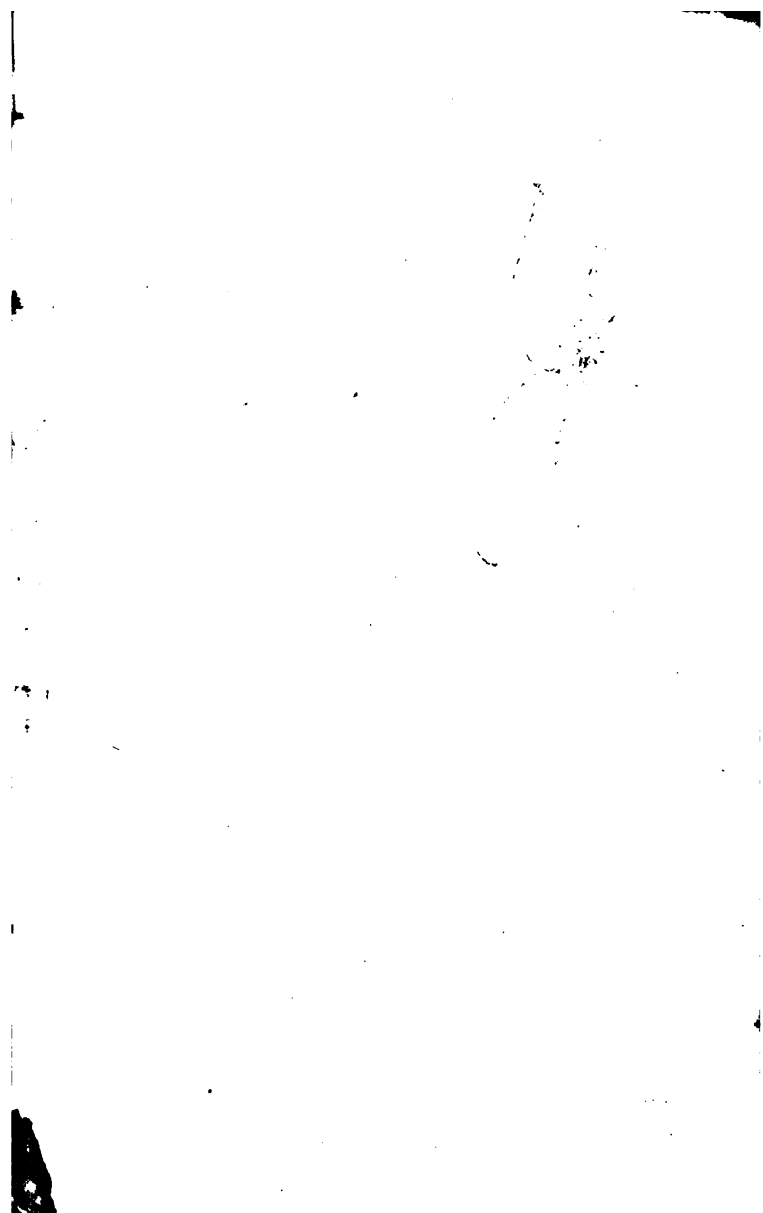


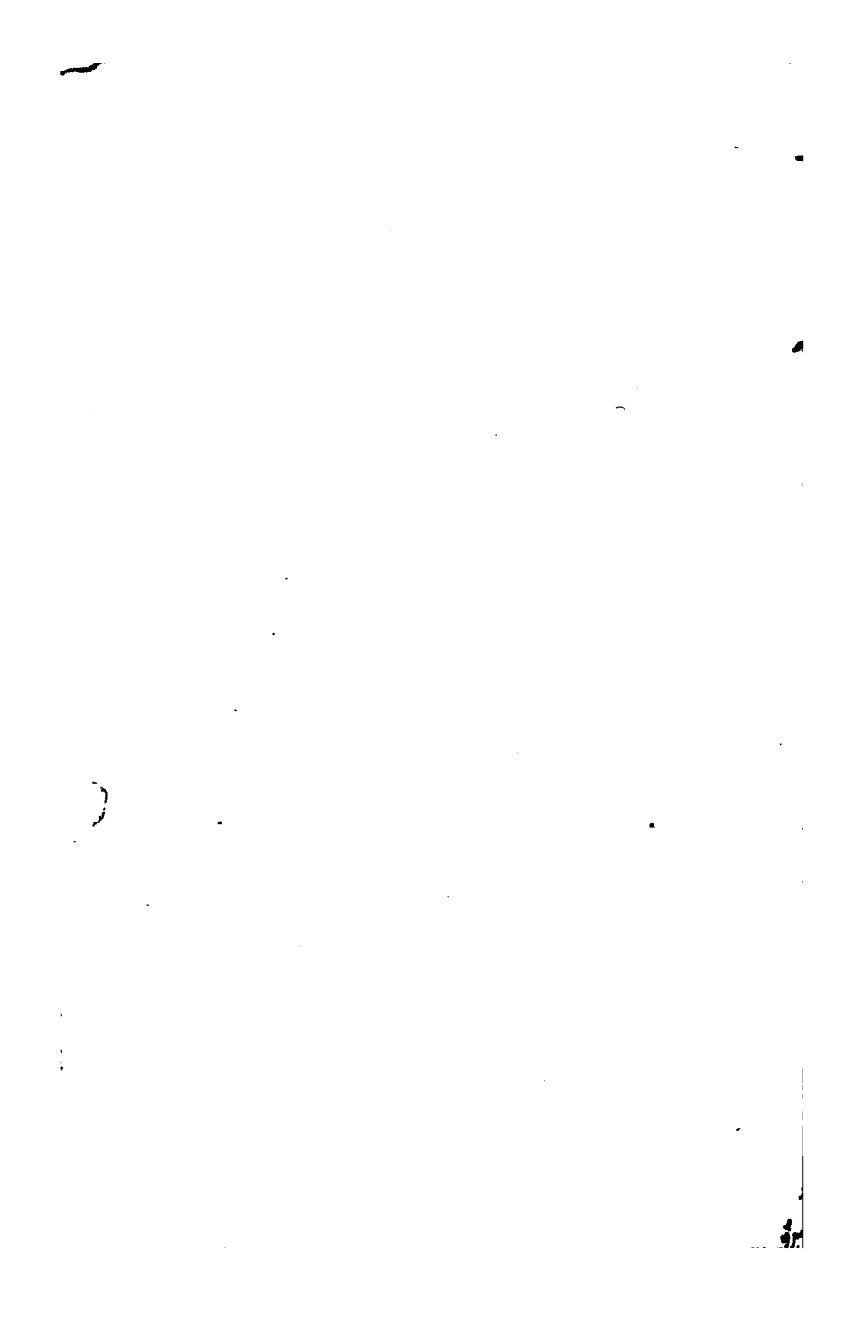


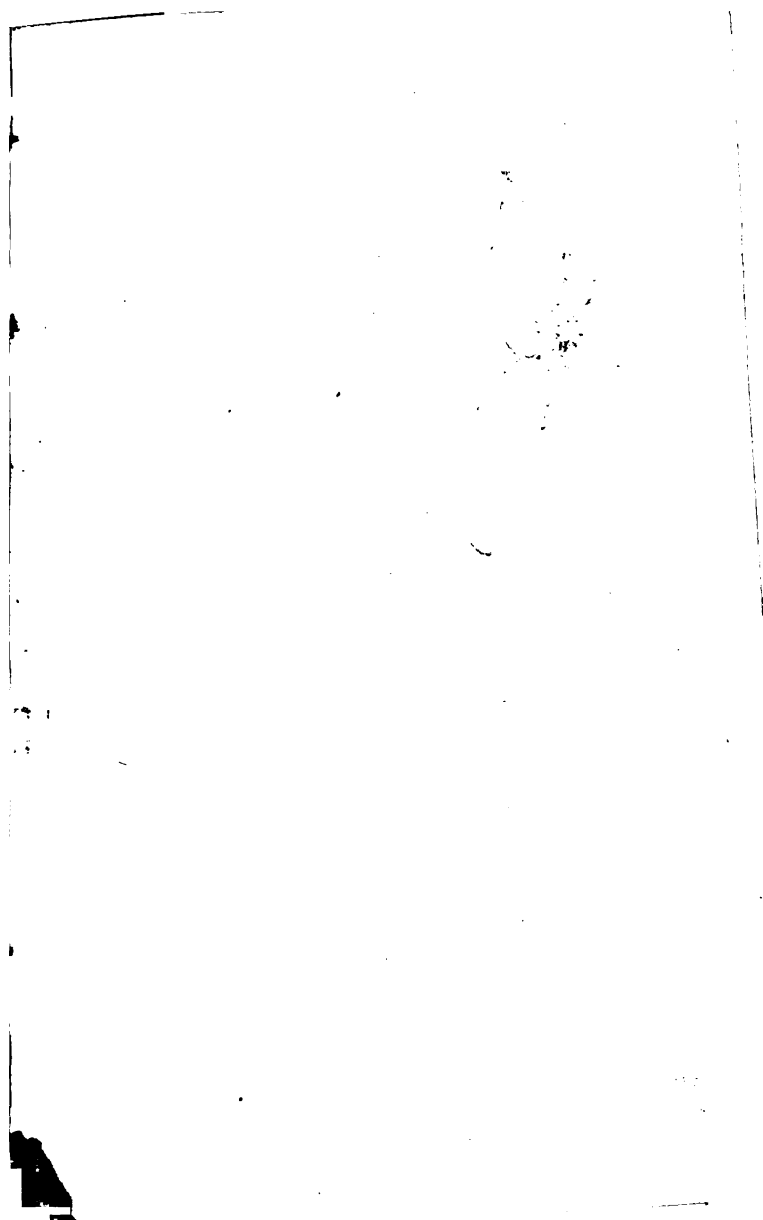


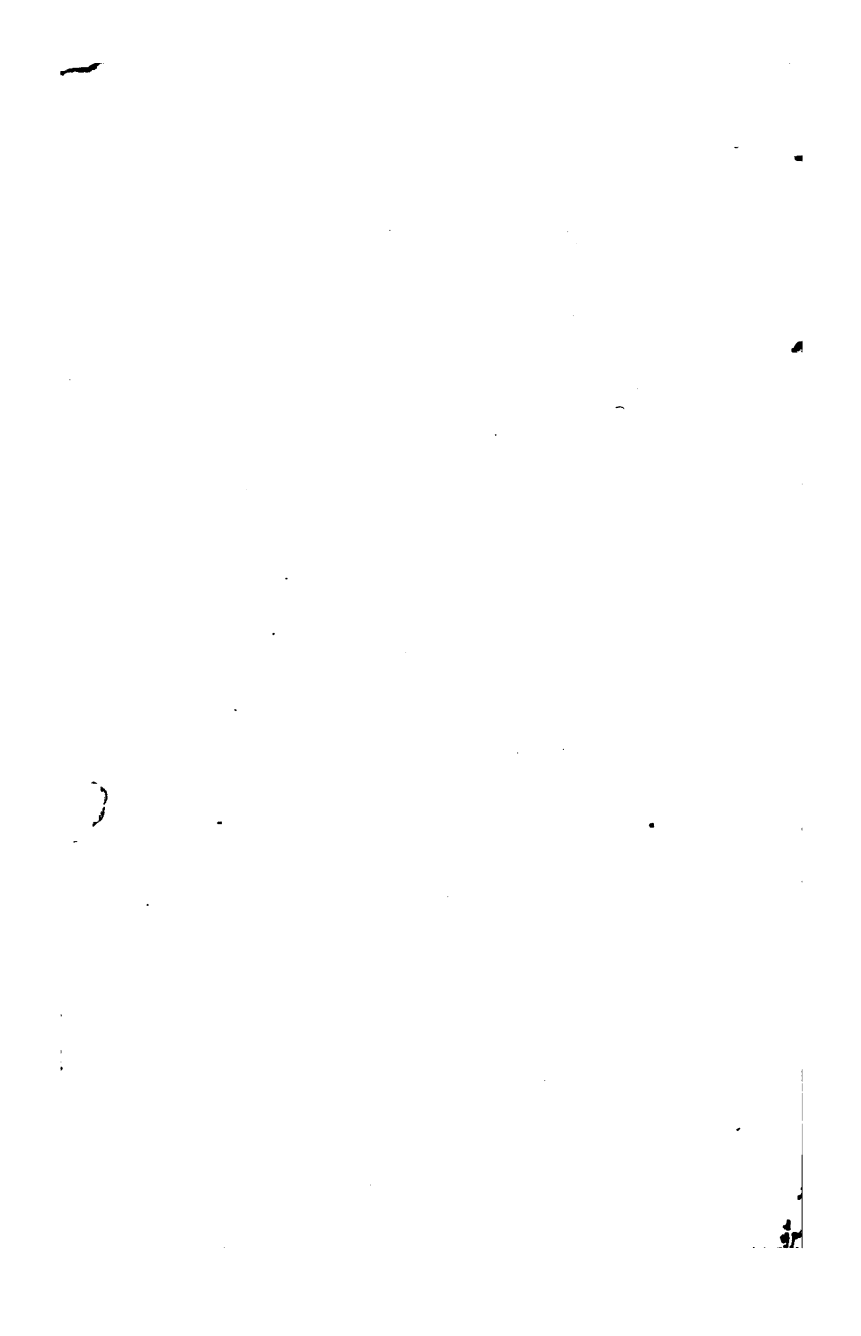


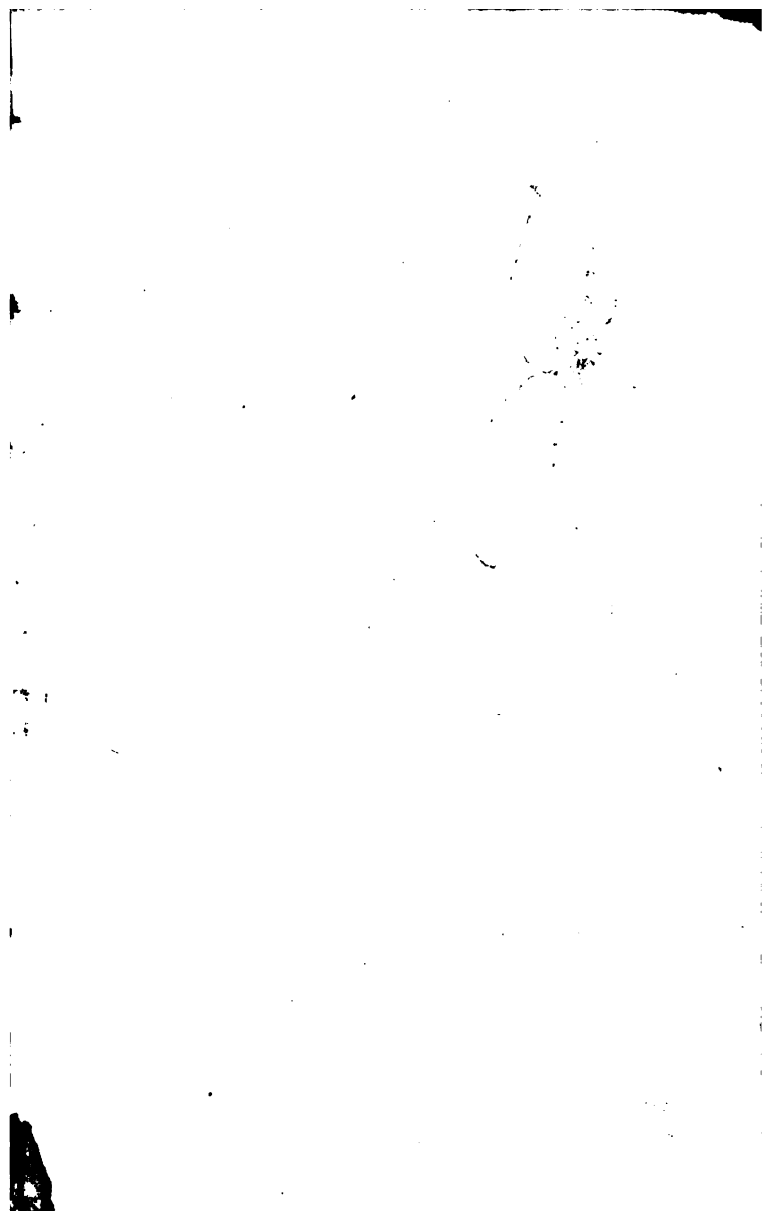


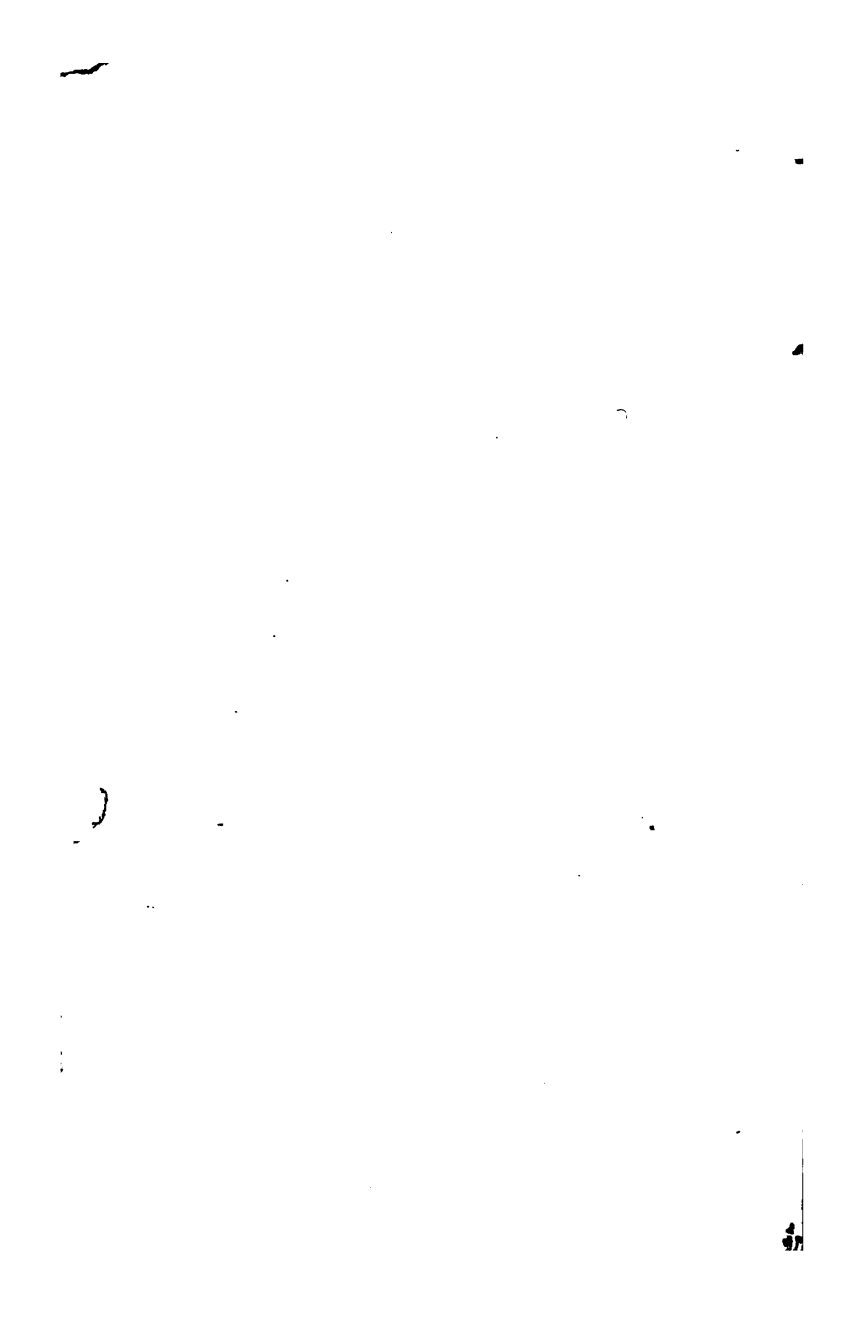


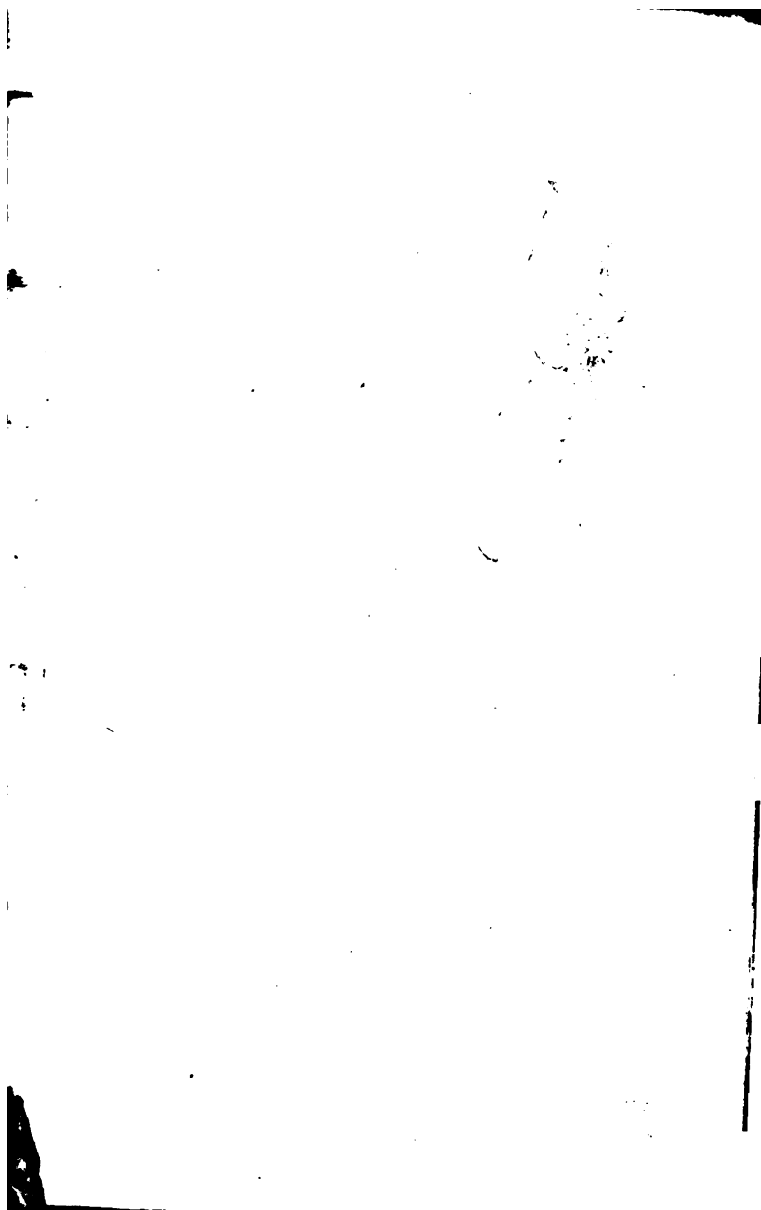


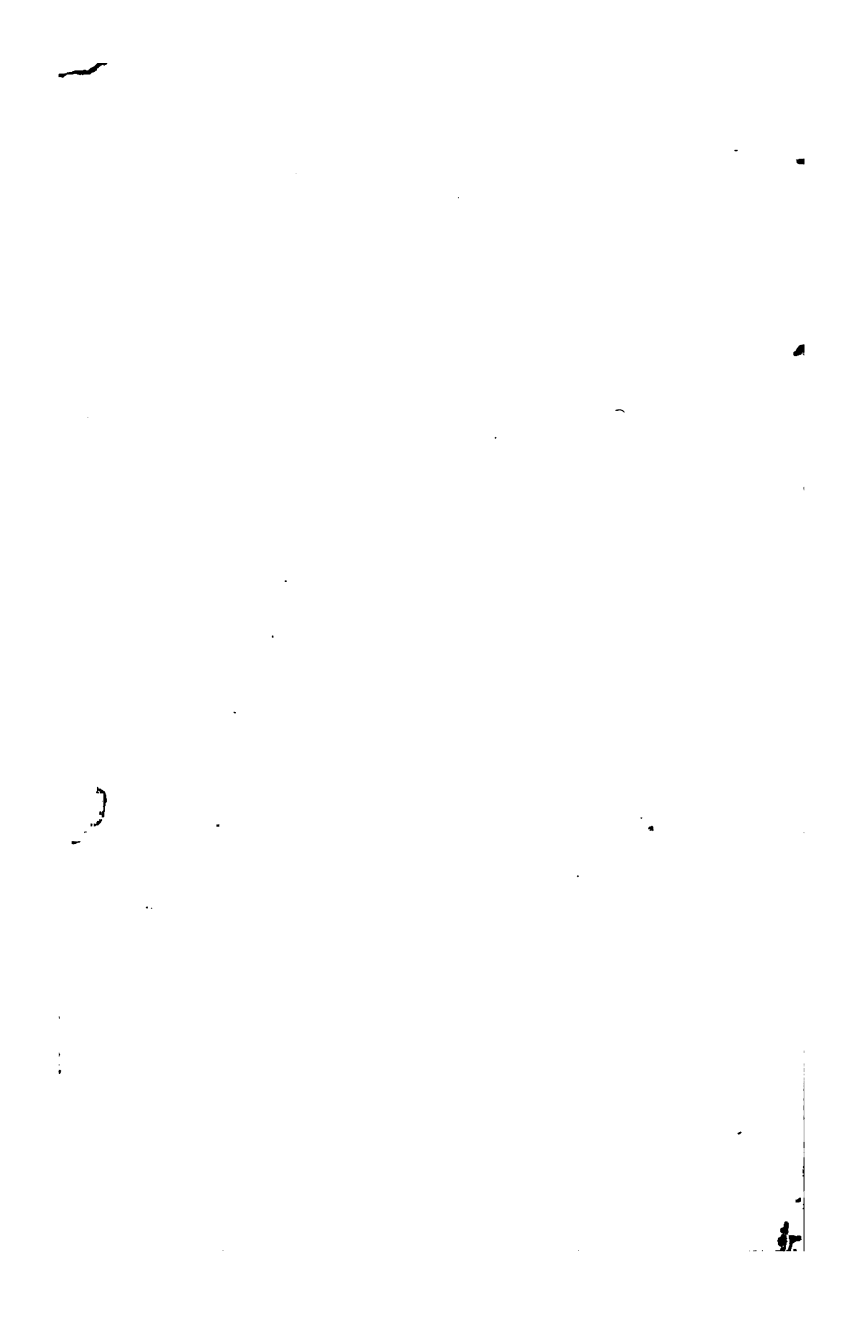


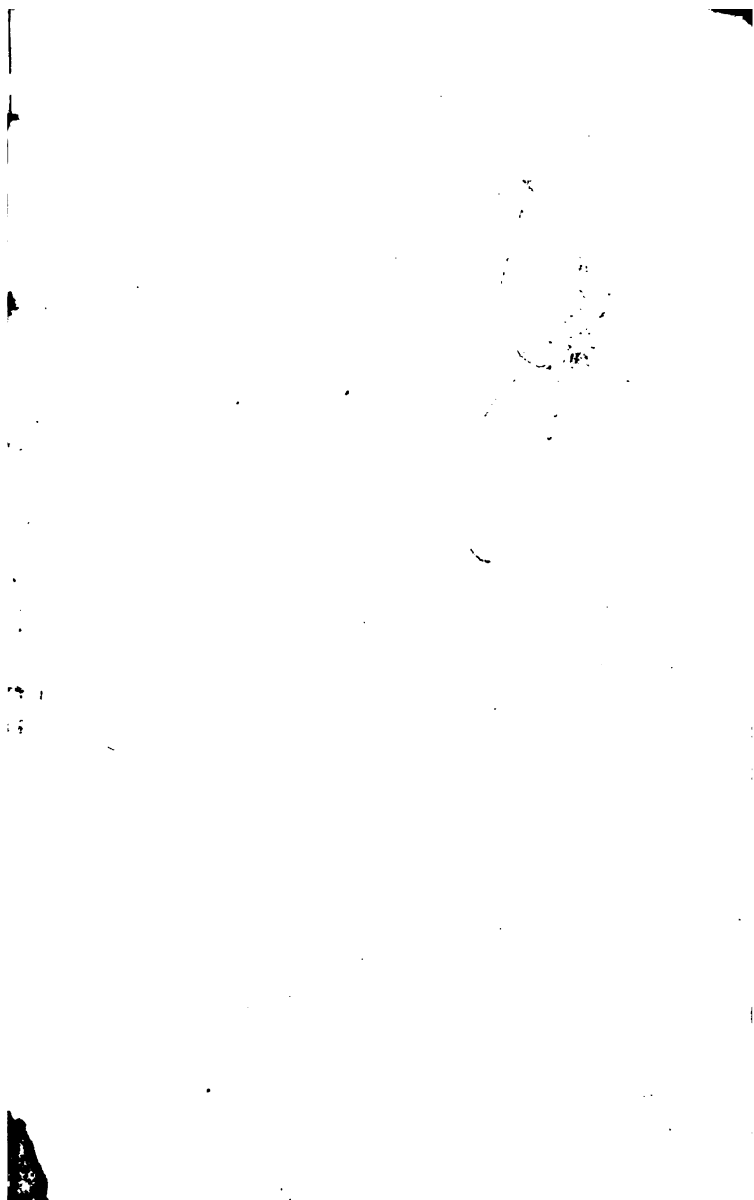


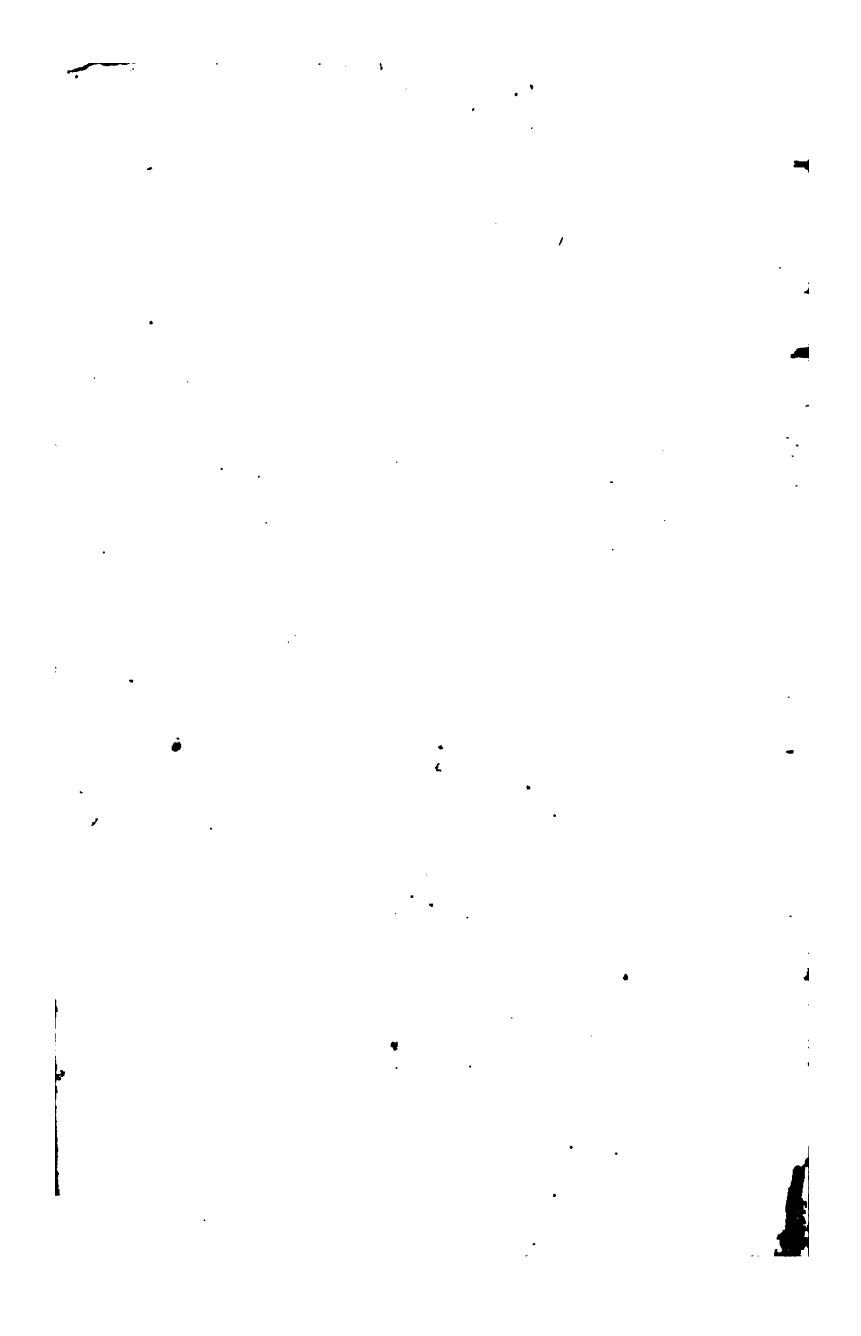




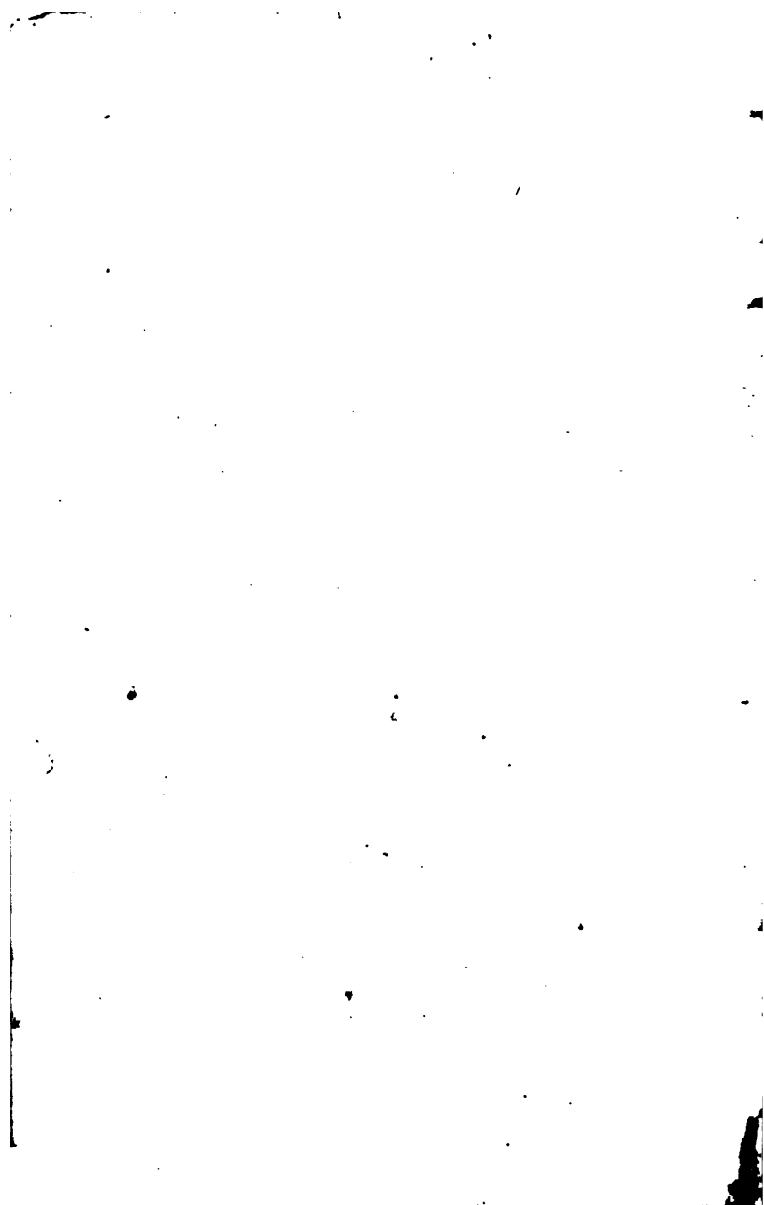


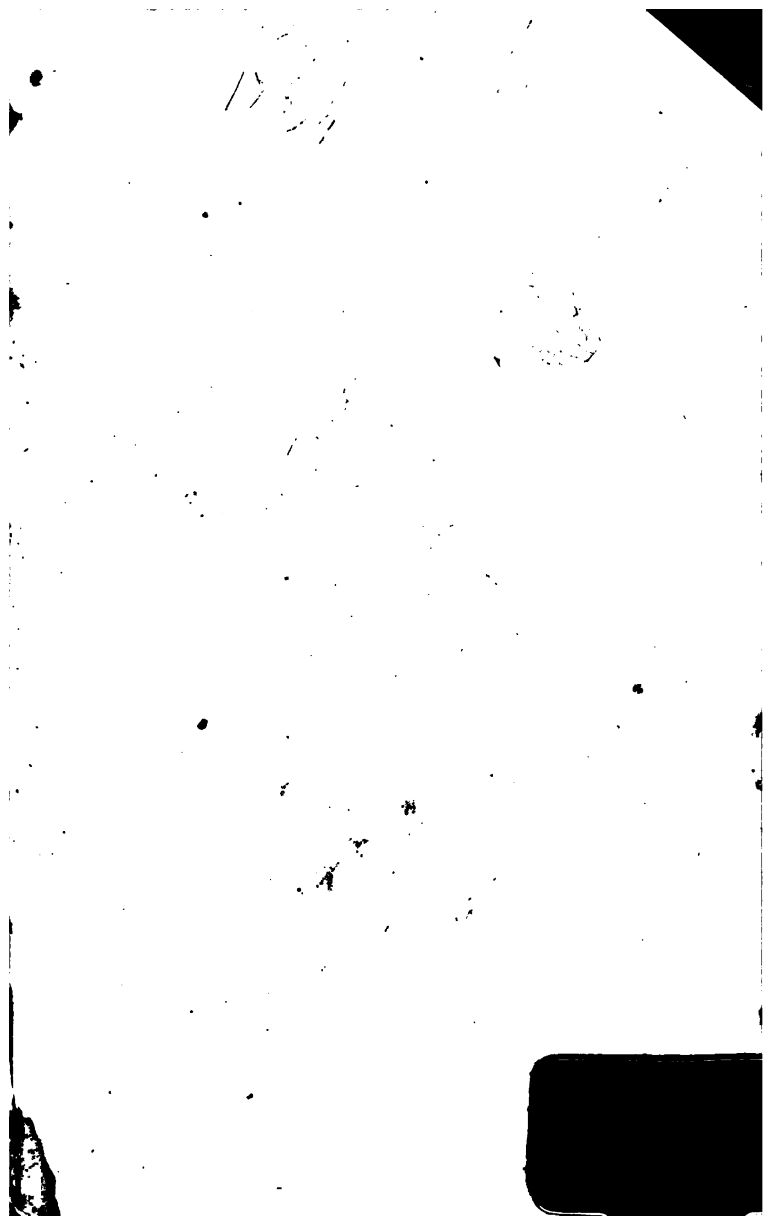




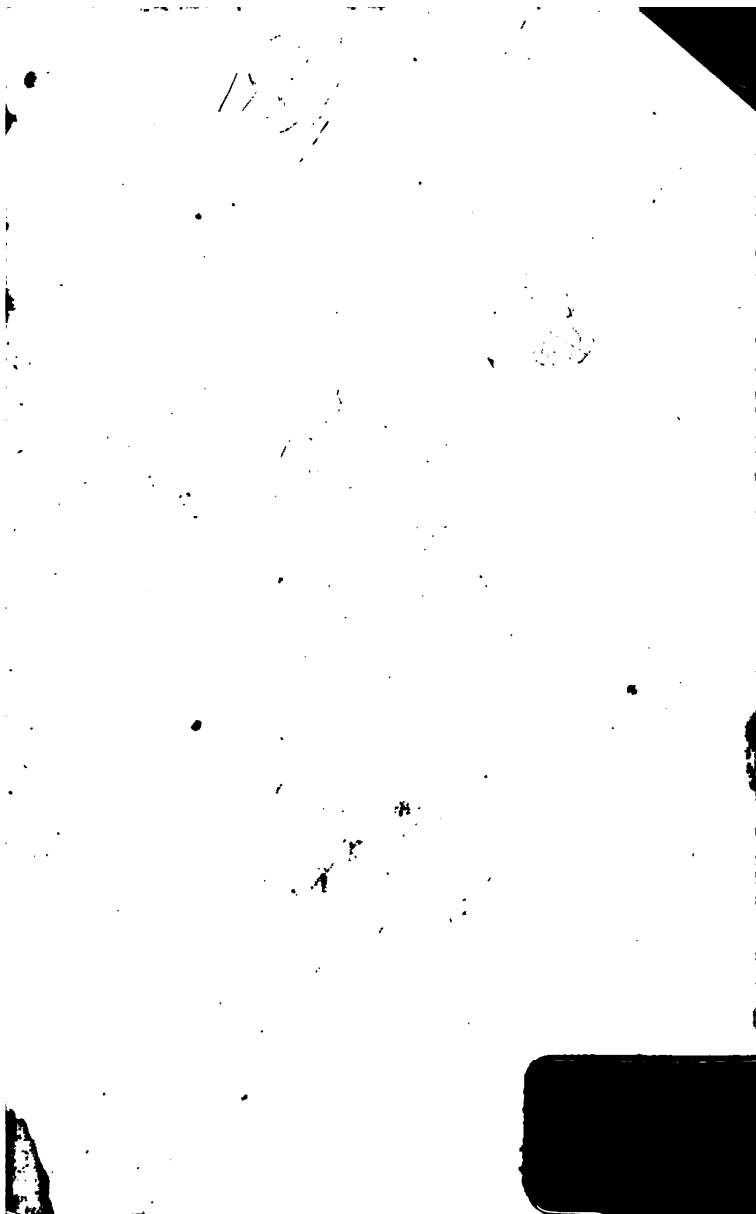


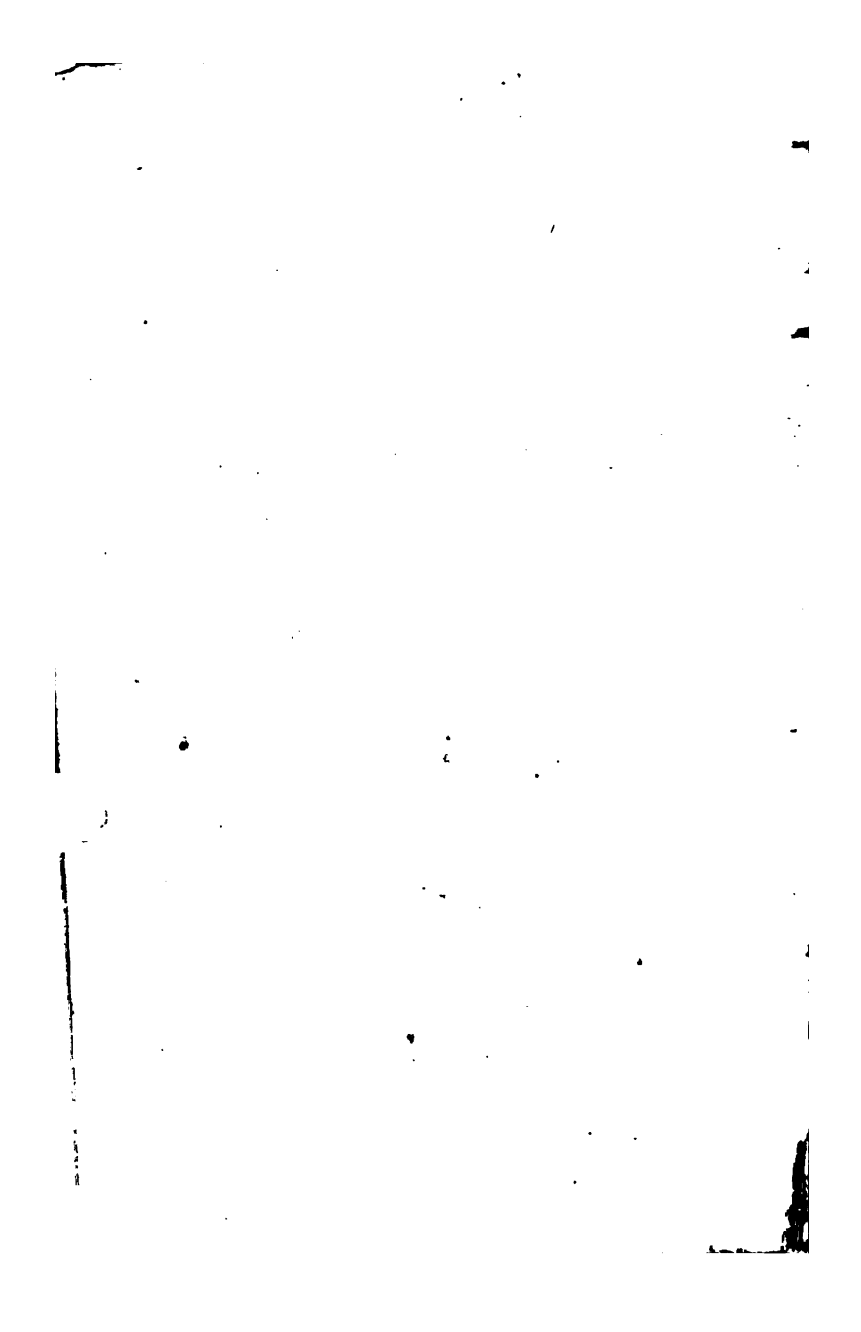
1937

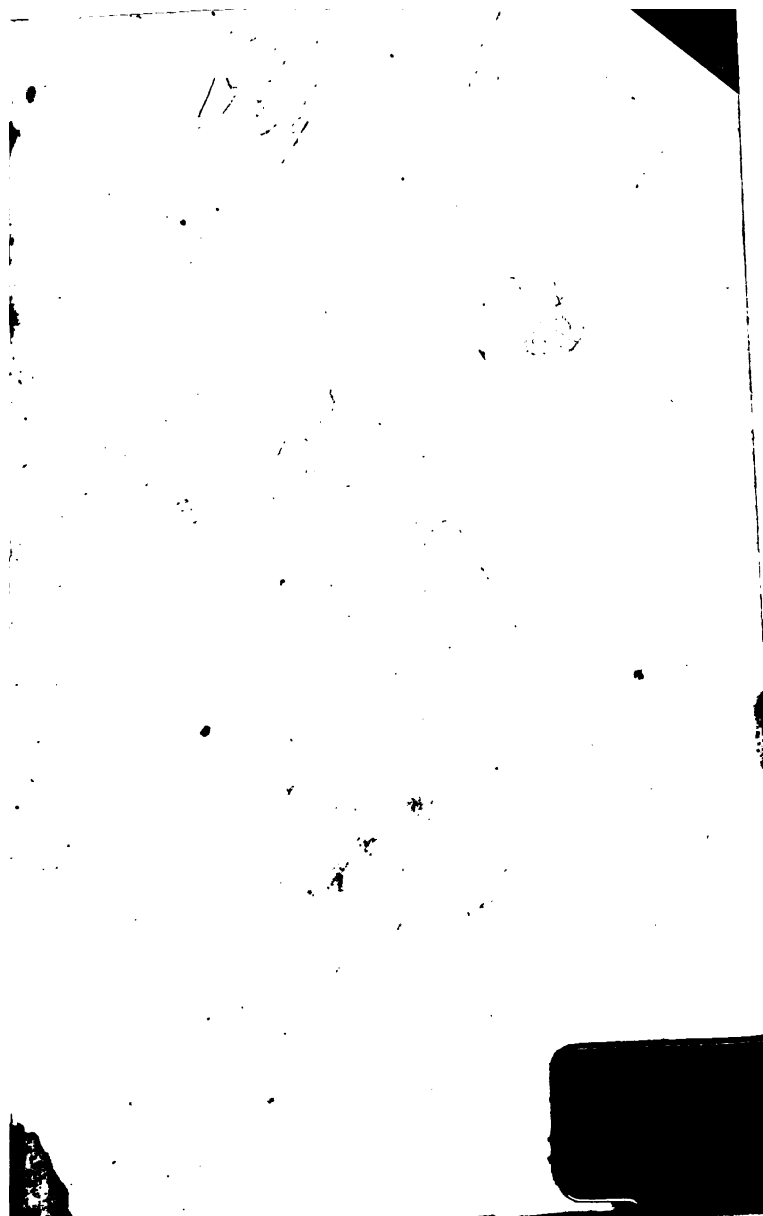












ROBINSON, PRATT & CO.

PUBLISH THE FOLLOWING BOOKS, FOR HIGHER SCHOOLS,
ACADEMIES, AND COMMON SCHOOLS:

COMSTOCK'S NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, in which the principles of Mechanics, Hydrostatics, Hydraulics, Pneumatics, Acoustics, Optics, Astronomy, Electricity, and Magnetism, are familiarly explained, and illustrated by more than two hundred Engravings. By J. L. Comstock, M. D.

COMSTOCK'S ELEMENTS OF CHEMISTRY, in which the recent discoveries in the science are included, and its doctrines familiarly explained. Illustrated by numerous Engravings. By J. L. Comstock, M. D.

COMSTOCK'S INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF BOTANY, in which the science is illustrated by examples of native and exotic Plants, and explained by numerous Engravings. By J. L. Comstock, M. D.

COMSTOCK'S GEOLOGY, for Schools and general readers.

COMSTOCK'S PHYSIOLOGY, " " "

COMSTOCK'S MINERALOGY, " " "

YOUNG BOTANIST, and

YOUNG CHEMIST; Both designed for persons just commencing these studies.

OLNEY'S INTRODUCTION TO GEOGRAPHY, for the Younger Classes in Schools; with Maps from steel plates, and numerous Engravings.

OLNEY'S NATIONAL PRECEPTOR, a Pleading Book; very popular.

CHILD'S BOOK OF GEOGRAPHY, with numerous Engravings. By S. R. Hall.

THE PICTORIAL SPELLING BOOK, illustrated by more than one hundred and sixty Engravings. By Rensselaer Huntley.

ROLLIN'S ANCIENT HISTORY, of the Egyptians, Carthaginians, Assyrians, Babylonians, Medes and Persians, Greeks and Macedonians; 8 vols. 12mo. For Common School Libraries and Families.

JOSEPHUS' WORKS, containing the Antiquities of the Jews, History of the Jewish Wars, the Destruction of Jerusalem, &c.; in 6 vols. For Common School Libraries.

COOPER'S VIRGIL, 8vo., with copious English Notes; designed for Colleges, Academies, and Schools. By Rev. J. G. Cooper, A. M.

FRESTON'S BOOK-KEEPING.

KIRKHAM'S ELOCUTION.

GREENLEAF'S GRAMMAR, Simplified.

The above valuable Books are most of them, in very extensive use in many of the first High Schools, Female Seminaries, and Academies in the United States.